1

SECOND EDITION

American ENGLISH FILE

Online Practice

Christina Latham-Koenig
Clive Oxenden
Paul Seligson

OXFORD

1

American ENGLISH FILE

Christina Latham-Koenig
Clive Oxenden
Paul Seligson

Paul Seligson and Clive Oxenden are the original co-authors of
English File 1 and *English File 2*

OXFORD
UNIVERSITY PRESS

Contents

		Grammar	Vocabulary	Pronunciation
	1			
4	**A My name's Hannah, not Anna**	verb *be* ⊞, subject pronouns: *I, you*, etc.	days of the week, numbers 0–20, greetings	vowel sounds, word stress
6	**B All over the world**	verb *be* ⊡ and ⊟	the world, numbers 21–100	/ə/, /tʃ/, /ʃ/, /dʒ/; sentence stress
8	**C Open your books, please**	possessive adjectives: *my, your*, etc.	classroom language	/oʊ/, /u/, /ar/; the alphabet
10	**PRACTICAL ENGLISH** Episode 1 Arriving in London			
	2			
12	**A A writer's room**	*a / an*, plurals; *this / that / these / those*	things	final *-s* and *-es*; *th*
14	**B Stars and Stripes**	adjectives	colors, adjectives, modifiers: *very / really*	long and short vowel sounds
16	**C After 300 metres, turn right**	imperatives, *let's*	feelings	understanding connected speech
18	**REVISE AND CHECK 1&2**			
	3			
20	**A Things I love about the US**	simple present ⊞ and ⊟	verb phrases	third person *-s*
22	**B Work and play**	simple present ⊡	jobs	/ər/
24	**C Meeting online**	word order in questions	question words	sentence stress
26	**PRACTICAL ENGLISH** Episode 2 At a coffee shop			
	4			
28	**A Is she his wife or his sister?**	*Whose...?*, possessive *'s*	family	/ʌ/, the letter *o*
30	**B What a life!**	prepositions of time (*at, in, on*) and place (*at, in, to*)	everyday activities	linking and sentence stress
32	**C Short life, long life?**	position of adverbs and expressions of frequency	adverbs and expressions of frequency	the letter *h*
34	**REVISE AND CHECK 3&4**			
	5			
36	**A Are you the next American Idol?**	*can / can't*	verb phrases: *buy a newspaper*, etc.	sentence stress
38	**B Love your neighbours**	present continuous	verb phrases	/ŋ/
40	**C Sun and the City**	simple present or present continuous?	the weather and seasons	places in New York City
42	**PRACTICAL ENGLISH** Episode 3 In a clothing store			
	6			
44	**A Reading in English**	object pronouns: *me, you, him*, etc.	phone language	/aɪ/, /i/, and /ɪ/
46	**B Times we love**	*like* + (verb + *-ing*)	the date; ordinal numbers	consonant clusters; saying the date
48	**C Music is changing their lives**	review: *be* or *do*?	music	/y/
50	**REVISE AND CHECK 5&6**			

		Grammar	Vocabulary	Pronunciation
	7			
52	**A At the National Portrait Gallery**	simple past of *be*: *was / were*	word formation: *paint* > *painter*	sentence stress
54	**B Chelsea girls**	simple past: regular verbs	past time expressions	*-ed* endings
56	**C A night to remember**	simple past: irregular verbs	*go, have, get*	sentence stress
58	**PRACTICAL ENGLISH** Episode 4 Getting lost			
	8			
60	**A A murder story**	simple past: regular and irregular	irregular verbs	simple past verbs
62	**B A house with a history**	*there is / there are, some / any* + plural nouns	the house	/ɛr/ and /ɪr/, sentence stress
64	**C A night in a haunted hotel**	*there was / there were*	prepositions: place and movement	silent letters
66	**REVISE AND CHECK 7&8**			
	9			
68	**A What I ate yesterday**	countable / uncountable nouns; *a / an, some / any*	food	the letters *ea*
70	**B White gold**	quantifiers: *how much / how many, a lot of*, etc.	food containers	/ʃ/ and /s/
72	**C Quiz night**	comparative adjectives	high numbers	/ər/, sentence stress
74	**PRACTICAL ENGLISH** Episode 5 At a restaurant			
	10			
76	**A The most dangerous road...**	superlative adjectives	places and buildings	consonant groups
78	**B CouchSurf round the world!**	*be going to* (plans), future time expressions	vacations	sentence stress
80	**C What's going to happen?**	*be going to* (predictions)	verb phrases	the letters *oo*
82	**REVISE AND CHECK 9&10**			
	11			
84	**A First impressions**	adverbs (manner and modifiers)	common adverbs	word stress
86	**B What do you want to do?**	verbs + infinitive	verbs that take the infinitive	sentence stress
88	**C Men, women, and the Internet**	articles	the Internet	word stress
90	**PRACTICAL ENGLISH** Episode 6 Going home			
	12			
92	**A Books and movies**	present perfect	irregular past participles	sentence stress
94	**B I've never been there!**	present perfect or simple past?	more irregular past participles	irregular past participles
96	**C The *American English File* questionnaire**	review: question formation	review: word groups	review: sounds
98	**REVISE AND CHECK 11&12**			

100 **Communication**
111 **Writing**
116 **Listening**
124 **Grammar Bank**
148 **Vocabulary Bank**
165 **Irregular verbs**
166 **Sound Bank**

G verb *be* ⊞, subject pronouns: *I*, *you*, etc.
V days of the week, numbers 0–20, greetings
P vowel sounds, word stress

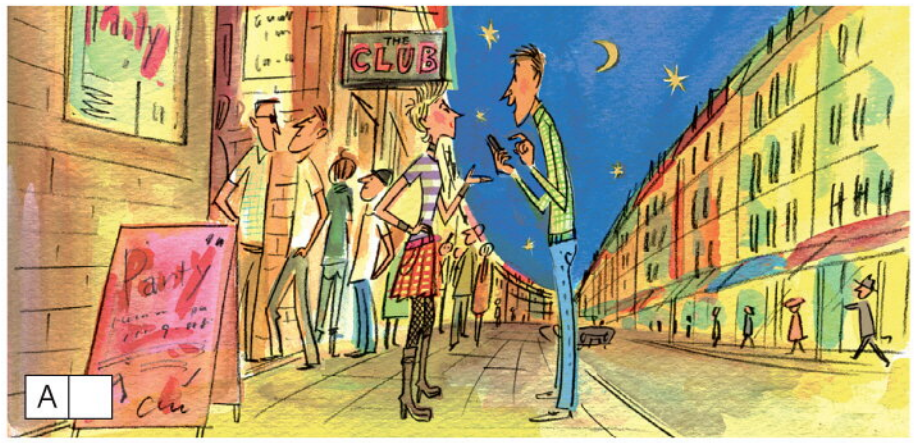
Hi, I'm Mike. What's your name?

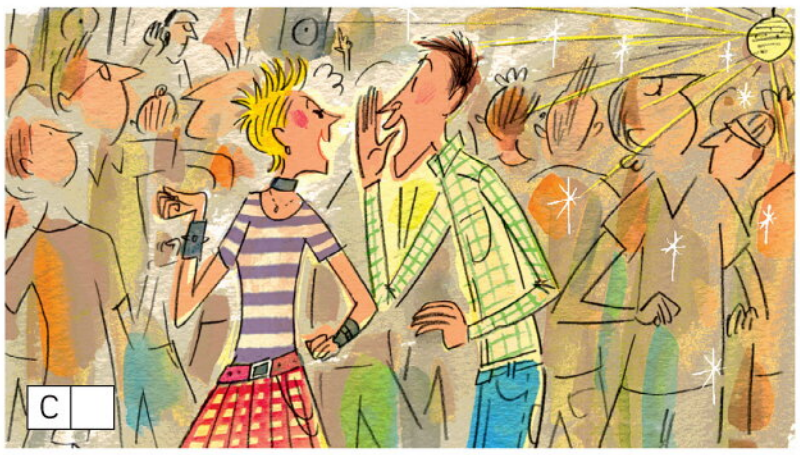
Hannah. Nice to meet you.

1A My name's Hannah, not Anna

1 LISTENING & SPEAKING

a 1 2 Look at the pictures. Listen and number them 1–4.





b Listen again and complete the blanks.

1 **A** Hi, I'm Mike. What's your [1]_____?
B Hannah.
A [2]_____?
B Hannah!

2 **A** What's your phone [3]_____?
B It's 212-555-7894.
A [4]_____. See you on Saturday. Bye.
B Goodbye.

3 **A** [5]_____, Mom. This is Hannah.
B [6]_____. Nice to meet you.
C Nice to [7]_____ you, Anna.
B [8]_____ name's Hannah.
C Sorry, Hannah.

4 **A** Hi, [9]_____. You're early!
B Hello, Mrs. Archer. How are [10]_____?
C I'm very well, [11]_____ you, Anna. And you?
B [12]_____, thanks.
A It's Hannah, Mom.

c Fill in the blanks with a word from the list.

Fine Hi I'm... Thanks Bye

Hello = _____
My name's... = _____
Very well = _____
Thank you = _____
Goodbye = _____

d 1 3 Listen and repeat some phrases from the dialogue. Copy the rhythm.

e 1 4 In groups of three, practice the dialogues with the sound effects. Change roles.

f Introduce yourself to other students.

Hello, I'm Antonio. What's your name?

Carla. Nice to meet you.

2 GRAMMAR verb *be* ⊞, subject pronouns

a Complete the sentences with *are*, *is*, or *am*.

I'm Mike.	=	I _____ Mike.
My name's Hannah.	=	My name _____ Hannah.
You're early.	=	You _____ early.
It's 212-555-7894.	=	It _____ 212-555-7894.

b ➤ **p.124 Grammar Bank 1A.** Learn more about the verb *be* ⊞ and subject pronouns, and practice them.

c 1 6 Listen and repeat the pronouns and contractions.

d 1 7 Listen. Say the contraction. *I am* *I'm*

e In pairs, try to remember the names in your class. Say *He's* / *She's* _____.

f Stand up and speak to other students.

Hi, Carla. How are you? *Fine, thanks. And you?*

3 PRONUNCIATION
vowel sounds, word stress

a 1 8 Listen and repeat the words and sounds.

fish	tree	cat	egg	train	bike
it this	he we meet	am thanks	very well	they name	I Hi Bye

b ➤ **p.166 Sound Bank.** Look at the example words and spellings for the sounds in **a**.

> **Word stress**
> Multi-syllable words have one stressed syllable.
> **sorr**|y good|**bye** **Sa**|tur|day

c 1 9 Listen and underline the stressed syllable in these words.

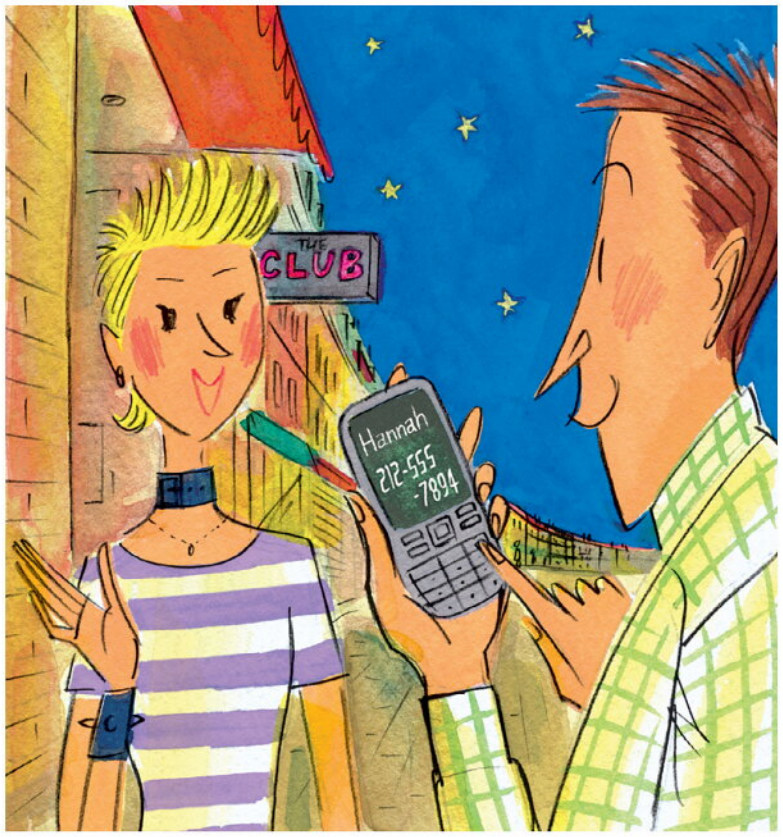
air|port com|pu|ter e|mail ka|ra|te
ho|tel mu|se|um sa|lad te|nnis
pas|ta In|ter|net bas|ket|ball sand|wich

d Write the words from **c** in the chart.

food	technology	sports	places

e In pairs, write more words that you know in each column. How do you pronounce them?

4 VOCABULARY
days of the week, numbers 0–20



a Look at the picture. Can you remember what Mike and Hannah say?

b ➤ **p.148 Vocabulary Bank** *Days and numbers.* Do parts 1 and 2.

c 1 12 Listen and say the next day or number.

Monday, Tuesday *Wednesday*

d What's your phone number? What day is it today? And tomorrow?

5 LISTENING & SPEAKING

a 1 13 Listen. Where are they? Write 1–6 in the boxes.

☐	**airport**	Gate number _____
☐	**sandwich bar**	_____ dollars _____ cents
☐	**hotel**	Room _____
☐	**museum**	Closed on _____
☐	**taxi**	_____ Manchester Road
☐	**school**	Classes on _____ and _____

b Listen again. Write a number or a day in each blank.

c 1 14 Listen and respond.

Hello. Nice to meet you. *Nice to meet you.*

G verb *be* ? and −
V the world, numbers 21–100
P /ə/, /tʃ/, /ʃ/, /dʒ/; sentence stress

Where are you from?

I'm from Brazil.

1B All over the world

1 VOCABULARY the world

a Can you name three countries in English?

b ➤ **p.149 Vocabulary Bank** *The world.*

c 1 17 Listen. Say the nationality.

Mexico — *Mexican*

d In pairs, do the quiz.

> **Useful phrases**
> ***I think*** *it's in Vietnam.*
> ***I think*** *it's Japanese, but* ***I'm not sure.***

THE WORLD QUIZ

1 Where are these capital cities?

a Lima _____
b Hanoi _____
c Dublin _____
d Ankara _____
e Tehran _____

2 What country is the money from?

a the dollar _____
b the yuan _____
c the rouble _____
d the pound _____
e the yen _____

3 What country is the food from?

a *tapas* _____
b *kimchi* _____
c *pasta* _____
d *tacos* _____

4 What nationality are the flags?

a _____
b _____
c _____
d _____

5 1 18 **What national anthem is it? Write the nationality.**

a _____ c _____
b _____ d _____

6 1 19 **What language is it? Write a–d in the boxes.**

☐ Turkish ☐ Russian
☐ Chinese ☐ Spanish

2 PRONUNCIATION /ə/, /tʃ/, /ʃ/, /dʒ/

> **The /ə/ sound**
> The /ə/ sound is the most common vowel sound in English. The /ə/ sound has many different spellings, e.g., *Hello*, *Canada*, *Britain*

a 1 20 Listen and repeat the words and sounds.

computer	American Argentinian Korea Peru

b 1 21 Listen and repeat the sound pictures and sentences. Practice with a partner.

1 chess — Charles is Chinese, not French.

2 shower — She's Turkish or Russian. I'm not sure.

3 jazz — We're German and they're Japanese.

c ➤ **p.166 Sound Bank.** Look at the example words and spellings for the sounds in **a** and **b**.

> **Languages**
> The word for a language is usually the same as the nationality adjective, e.g., in Japan the language is Japanese.

3 GRAMMAR verb *be* ? and −

a 1 22 Cover the dialogues. Listen to three interviews in New York City. Which countries are the people from?

b Read the dialogues. Complete them with *I'm*, *I'm not*, *are*, *aren't*, *is*, or *isn't*.

1 **A** Are you Mexican?
B No, _____ Mexican. _____ Argentinian.
A Where _____ you from in Argentina?
B _____ from Córdoba.

2 **A** Where _____ you from?
B _____ from Australia, from Darwin.
A Where's Darwin? _____ it near Sydney?
B No, it _____. It's in the north.
A _____ it nice?
B Yes, it _____. It's beautiful.

3 **A** Where _____ you from?
B We're from Columbus, Ohio, in the US.
A _____ you on vacation?
C No, we _____. We're students.

c Listen and check.

d ➤ **p.124 Grammar Bank 1B.** Learn more about the verb *be* ? and −, and practice it.

e 1 24 Listen and respond with a short answer.

Is Sydney the capital of Australia? *No, it isn't.*

f With a partner, write three questions beginning *Is…?* or *Are…?* Ask them to another pair.

4 PRONUNCIATION & SPEAKING
sentence stress

Sentence stress
In sentences, we stress the important words.
Where's she **from**? She's from **China**.

a 1 25 Listen and repeat. Copy the rhythm.

1 **A** **Where** are you **from**?
B I'm from **Boston**.
2 **A** Are you **American**?
B **No**, I'm **not**. I'm **Australian**.

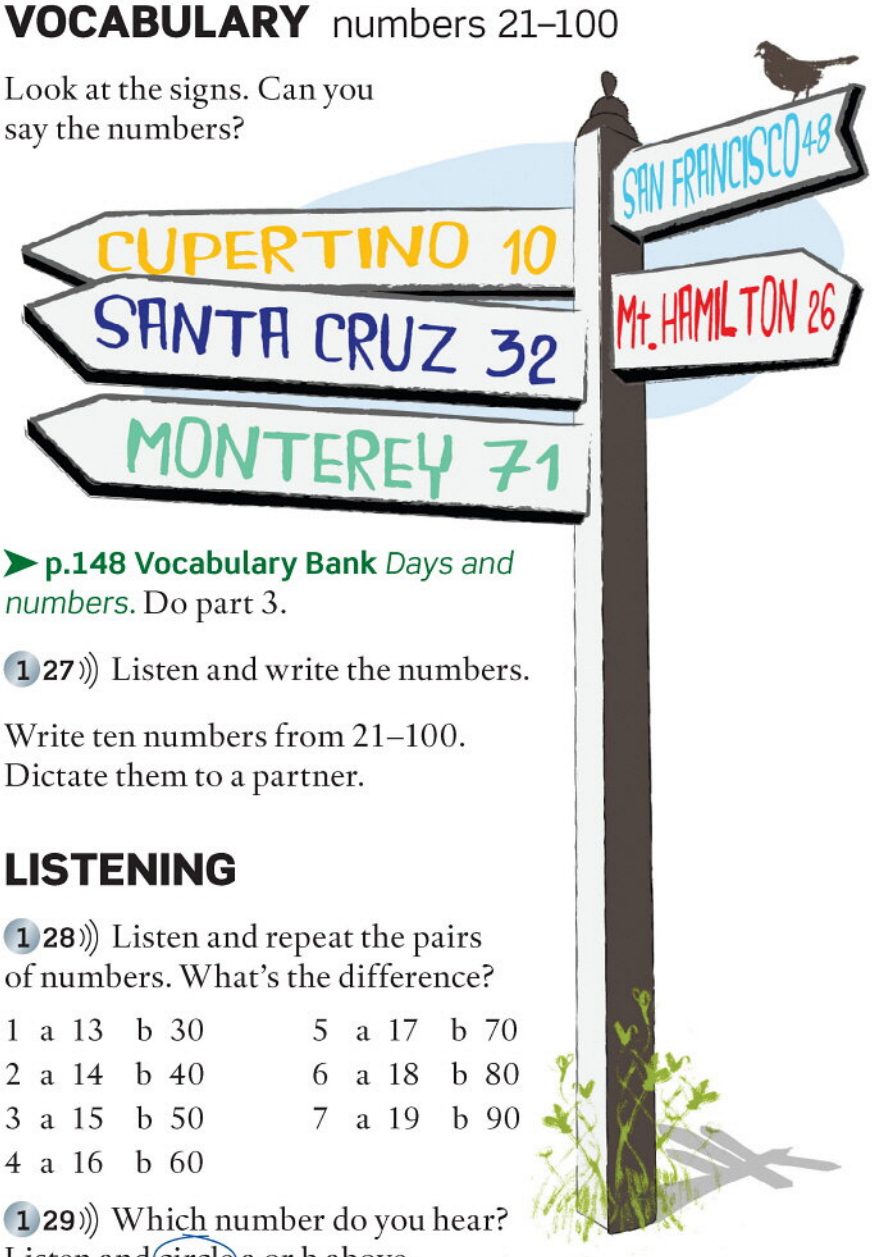
b Practice the dialogues in **3** with a partner.

c ➤ **Communication** *Where are they from?* **A** *p.100* **B** *p.103.*

d Ask people in the class *Where are you from?*

5 VOCABULARY numbers 21–100

a Look at the signs. Can you say the numbers?



b ➤ **p.148 Vocabulary Bank** *Days and numbers.* Do part 3.

c 1 27 Listen and write the numbers.

d Write ten numbers from 21–100. Dictate them to a partner.

6 LISTENING

a 1 28 Listen and repeat the pairs of numbers. What's the difference?

1	a 13	b 30	5	a 17	b 70
2	a 14	b 40	6	a 18	b 80
3	a 15	b 50	7	a 19	b 90
4	a 16	b 60			

b 1 29 Which number do you hear? Listen and circle a or b above.

c Play *Bingo*.

7 1 30 SONG *All Over the World* ♫

G possessive adjectives: *my, your*, etc.
V classroom language
P /oʊ/, /u/, /ar/; the alphabet

How do you spell your last name?

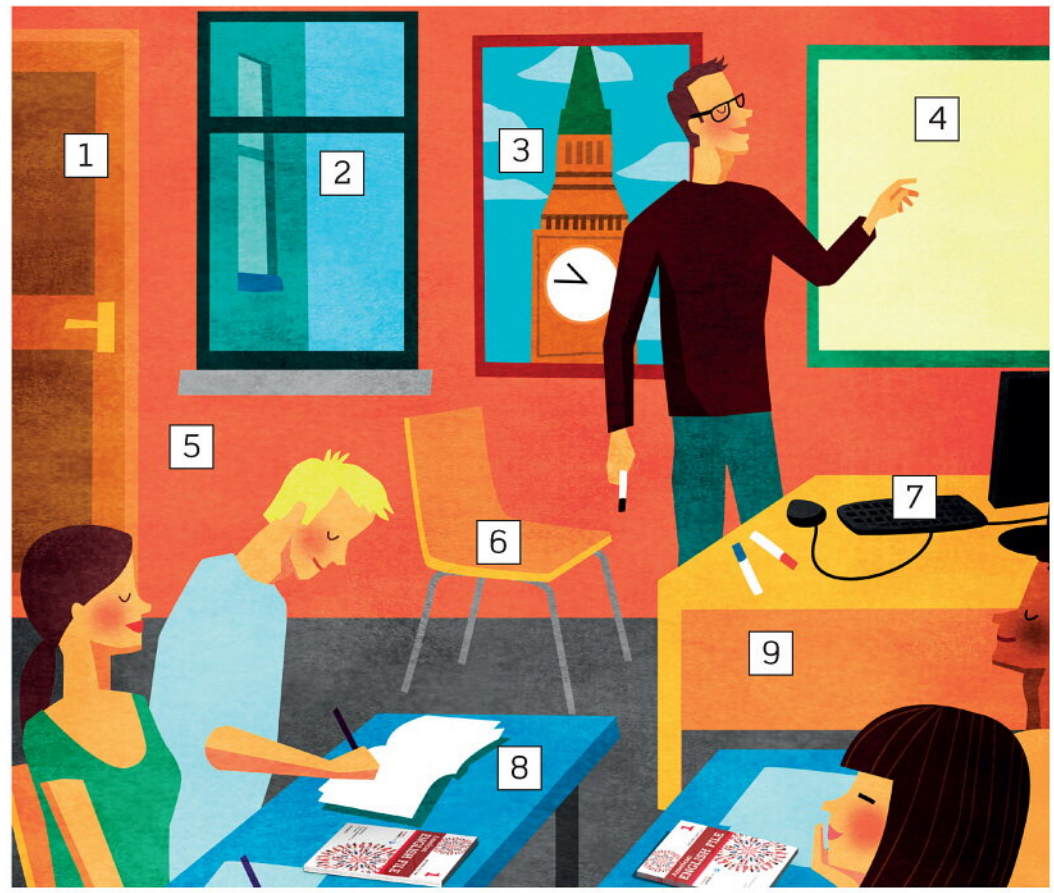
B-E-Z-E-R-R-A.

1C Open your books, please

1 VOCABULARY
classroom language

a Look at the picture of a classroom. Match the words and pictures.

- [ ] board /bɔrd/
- [ ] chair /tʃɛr/
- [ ] computer /kəm'pyutər/
- [ ] desk /dɛsk/
- [ ] door /dɔr/
- [ ] picture /'pɪktʃər/
- [8] table /'teɪbl/
- [ ] wall /wɔl/
- [ ] window /'wɪndoʊ/



b 1 31 Listen and check.

c ➤ p.150 Vocabulary Bank
Classroom language.

d 1 34 Listen and follow the instructions.

2 PRONUNCIATION
/oʊ/, /u/, /ar/; the alphabet

a 1 35 Listen and repeat the words and sounds.

oʊ	phone	close know
u	boot	school do
ar	car	partner are

b 1 36 Look at these common abbreviations. Can you say any of them in English? Listen and check.

OK **CNN** MTV
BBC USB **DVD**
BMW **ATM**

c 1 37 Complete the alphabet chart with B, C, D, K, M, N, O, S, T, U, V, W. Listen and check.

eɪ train	i tree	ɛ egg	aɪ bike	oʊ phone	u boot	ar car
A	___	F	I	___	Q	R
H	___	L	Y		___	
J	___	___			___	
___	E	___				
	G	___				
	P	X				
	___					
	___					
	Z					

d 1 38 Listen and circle the letter you hear.

1 E A I 2 G J 3 K Q 4 C S
5 V P B 6 M N 7 V W 8 U Y

e Practice saying the phrases below with abbreviations.

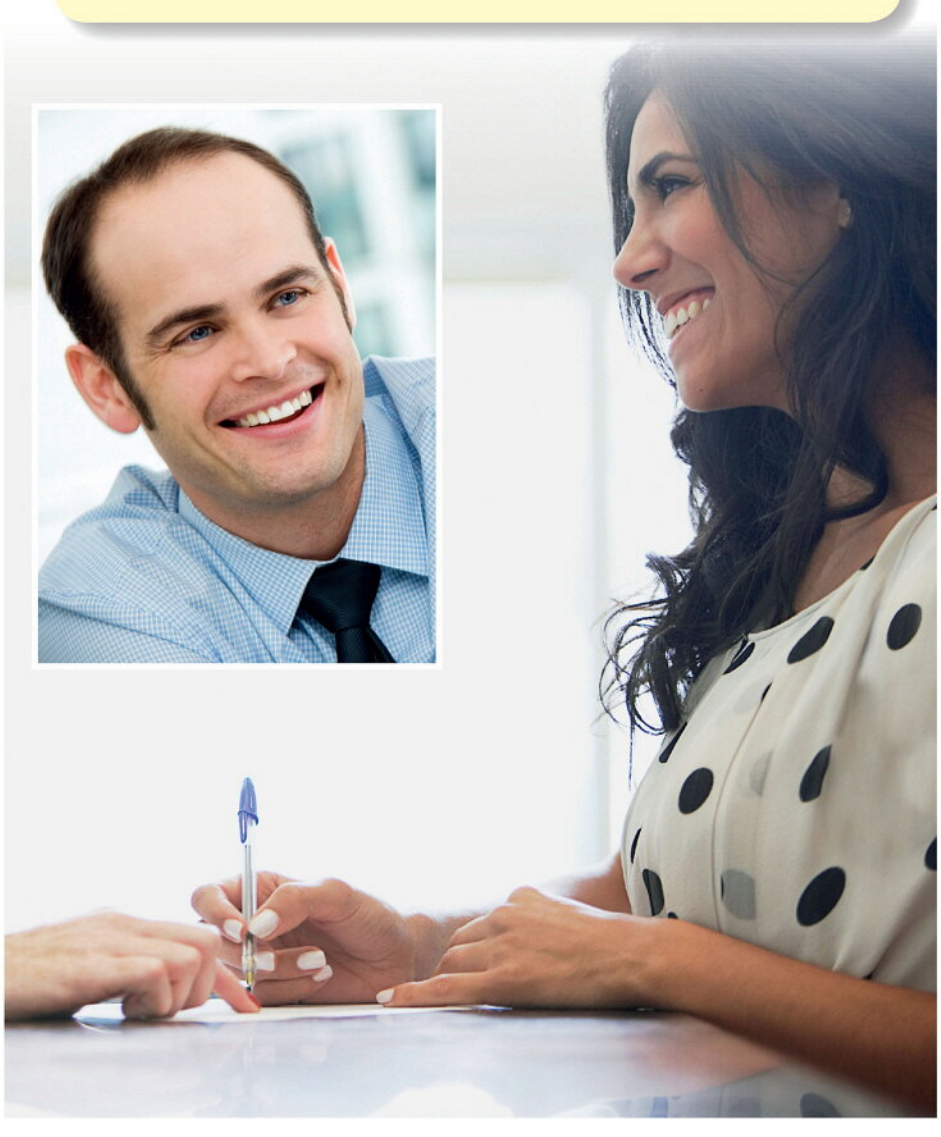
a PC

a **P**ersonal **C**omputer
the **U**nited **K**ingdom
a **S**port **U**tility **V**ehicle
a **D**isc **J**ockey
a **V**ery **I**mportant **P**erson
the **U**nited **S**tates
a **P**ortable **D**ocument **F**ormat
the **N**ational **B**asketball **A**ssociation

3 LISTENING & SPEAKING

a 1 39 A student goes to the US to study English. Listen to the interview and complete her form.

First name	D _ _ _ _
Last name	B _ _ _ rr _
Country	
City	
Age	
Address	Avenida Princesa Isabel
Zip code	
Email	dbezerra@mail.com
Phone number	55
Cell phone number	



b 1 40 Listen. Complete the receptionist's questions.

1 What's your _____ name?
2 _____ your last name?
3 _____ do you spell it?
4 Where are you _____?
5 _____ old are you?
6 _____ your address?
7 _____ your zip code?
8 What's your _____ address?
9 What's your _____ _____?

c Listen again and repeat the questions. Copy the rhythm.

d Ask your partner the questions. Write down his or her answers.

Spelling: email addresses
@ = at . = dot

4 GRAMMAR possessive adjectives: *my, your,* etc.

a Complete the sentences with *I, you, my,* or *your.*

1 Where are _____ from?
_____'m from Rio.
2 What's _____ name?
_____ name's Darly.

b ➤ p.124 Grammar Bank 1C. Learn more about possessive adjectives and practice them.

c 1 42 Listen. Change the sentences.

I'm Richard. *My name's Richard.*

5 SPEAKING

➤ **Communication** *What's his / her real name?* **A** *p.100* **B** *p.103.* Find out if some actors' and singers' names are their real names or not.

6 WRITING

➤ **p.111 Writing** *Completing a form.* Complete an application for a student visa and write a paragraph about you.

Practical English Arriving in London

EPISODE 1

1 VOCABULARY in a hotel

a Match the words and symbols.

- ☐ reception /rɪˈsɛpʃn/
- ☐ the elevator /ˈɛləveɪtər/
- ☐ a single room /ˈsɪŋgl rʊm/
- ☐ a double room /ˈdʌbl rʊm/
- ☐ the first floor /fərst flɔr/ (second, third, etc.)

b 1 43 Listen and check.

2 VIDEO INTRODUCTION

a 1 44 Watch or listen to Jenny and Rob. Mark the sentences **T** (true) or **F** (false).

1 Rob lives and works in London.
2 He's a writer for a magazine.
3 The name of his magazine is *London 20seven*.
4 Jenny is British.
5 She's an assistant editor.
6 It's her second time in the UK.

b Watch or listen again. Say why the **F** sentences are false.

3 VIDEO CHECKING IN

a 1 45 Watch or listen to Jenny checking into a hotel room. Answer the questions.

1 Complete Jenny's last name: ZI__LI__SK__.
2 What's her room number?

b Watch or listen again. Complete the **You Hear** phrases.

You Hear	You Say
Good evening, madam.	Hello. I have a reservation. My name's Jennifer Zielinski.
Can you _____ that, please?	Z-I-E-L-I-N-S-K-I.
For five nights?	Yes, that's right.
Can I have your passport, please?	Just a second...Here you are.
Thank you. Can you sign here, _____? Thank you.	
Here's your _____. It's room 306, on the third floor.	
The _____ is over there.	The lift? Oh, the elevator.
Yes. Enjoy your stay, Ms. Zielinski.	Thank you.

American and British English
elevator = American English *lift* = British English
z = /zi/ in American English, /zɛd/ in British English

Greetings
Good morning = > 12:00 p.m. *Good afternoon* = 12:00 p.m. > 6:00 p.m.
Good evening = 6:00 p.m. > *Good night* = Goodbye (when you go to bed)
Madam = a polite way to greet a woman
Sir = a polite way to greet a man

c 1 46 Watch or listen and repeat the **You Say** phrases. Copy the rhythm.

d Practice the dialogue with a partner.

e Work in pairs. Read your role and look at the dialogue in **3b**. What do you need to change?

A (book open) You are the receptionist. It's 11:00 a.m. **B**'s room is 207 on the second floor. Begin with *Good morning sir / madam*.

B (book closed) You arrive at the hotel. Use your first name and last name.

f Role-play the dialogue. Then change roles.

g 1 47 Look at the information in the box. Listen and repeat the *Can…?* phrases.

> ***Can you…?*** = Please do it
> *Can you sign here?*
> *Can you spell that?*
>
> ***Can I have…?*** = Please give me (your passport, etc.)
> *Can I have your passport, please?*
> *Can I have my key, please?*

h You are in a hotel. How do you ask the receptionist to give you…?

- your key
- your passport
- a map of London
- a pen

4 VIDEO JENNY TALKS TO ROB

a 1 48 Watch or listen and mark the sentences **T** (true) or **F** (false).

1 Jenny has a coffee.
2 She is in London on business.
3 The waitress is German.
4 Jenny calls Rob Walker.
5 Jenny is tired.
6 Their meeting is at 10:00.

b Watch or listen again. Say why the **F** sentences are false.

c 1 49 Read the information in the box. Listen and repeat the *Would you like…?* phrases and the responses. Practice offering drinks and responding.

> ***Would you like…?***
> *Would you like a coffee?* — *Yes, please.*
> *Would you like another tea?* — *No, thanks.*
>
> We use *Would you like…?* to offer somebody something.
> We respond *Yes, please* or *No, thanks*.

d Look at the **Social English phrases**. Who says them: **J**enny, **R**ob, or the **w**aitress?

> **Social English phrases**
> I'm here [on business].
> I'm from [New York]. What about you?
> No problem.
> Is that [Jennifer]?
> This is [Rob. Rob Walker].
> That's perfect.
> It's time for bed.

e 1 50 Watch or listen and check. Do you know what they are in your language?

f Watch or listen again and repeat the phrases.

> **Can you…?**
> - ☐ check into a hotel and spell your name
> - ☐ ask somebody to do something / to give you something
> - ☐ offer somebody a drink, and accept or refuse

G *a / an*, plurals; *this / that / these / those*
V things
P final *-s* and *-es*; *th*

What's this in English?

It's a key.

2A A writer's room

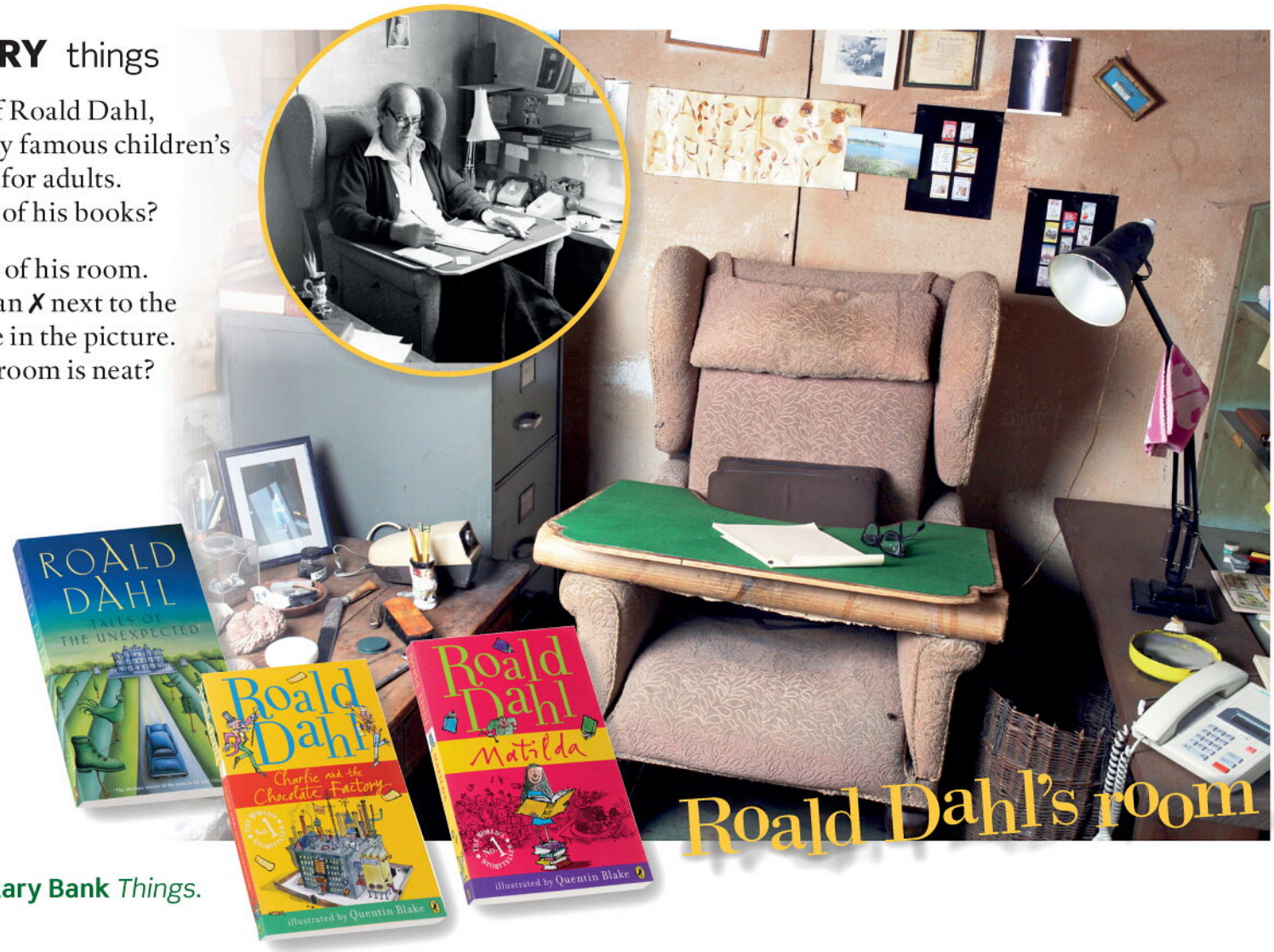
1 VOCABULARY things

a Look at a photo of Roald Dahl, the author of many famous children's books and stories for adults. Do you know any of his books?

b Look at the photo of his room. Check (✓) or put an ✗ next to the things you can see in the picture. Do you think the room is neat?

- ☐ a table
- ☐ a lamp
- ☐ a computer
- ☐ a chair
- ☐ pencils
- ☐ photos
- ☐ a window
- ☐ a printer
- ☐ a phone
- ☐ pieces of paper

c ➤ **p.151 Vocabulary Bank** *Things.*



2 GRAMMAR *a / an*, plurals

a Complete the chart.

Singular	Plural
a pen	pens
____ umbrella	_____
____ _____	watches
____ _____	dictionaries

b ➤ **p.126 Grammar Bank 2A part 1.**
Learn more about *a / an* and plurals, and practice them.

3 PRONUNCIATION final *-s* and *-es*

a 1 53 Listen and repeat the words and sounds.

S snake	books lamps tickets
Z zebra	photos keys pens
/ɪz/	glasses watches purses

b 1 54 Read the rule. Circle the words where *-es* is pronounced /ɪz/. Listen and check.

> **Final *-es***
> Final *-es* after *ce, ch, sh, s, ge,* and *x* = /ɪz/, e.g., *watches, glasses, change purses*

1 classes 2 files 3 headphones 4 boxes 5 pieces 6 tissues 7 pages 8 chairs

4 LISTENING & SPEAKING

a ➤ **Communication** *What's on the table?* *p.100.*

b 1 55 Listen to three people say what things they have on the table or desk where they work. Are their tables neat?

c Listen again and check (✓) the things they have.

	1	2	3
a computer / a laptop	☐	☐	☐
a printer	☐	☐	☐
a lamp	☐	☐	☐
a phone	☐	☐	☐
books	☐	☐	☐
a dictionary	☐	☐	☐
a calendar	☐	☐	☐
photos	☐	☐	☐
pieces of paper	☐	☐	☐
pens	☐	☐	☐
DVDs	☐	☐	☐
tissues	☐	☐	☐

d Talk to a partner about the table where you work or study. Say what things you have. Say if the table is neat or not.

I have a laptop and a printer. I have... It isn't neat.

e Play *What is it?* with your partner. **A** close your eyes. **B** give things to your partner and ask *What is it? What are they?*

5 GRAMMAR

this / that / these / those

a 1 56 Look at pictures 1–4 and complete the dialogues. Listen and check. Practice the dialogues.

b Read the dialogues again. What's the difference between...?

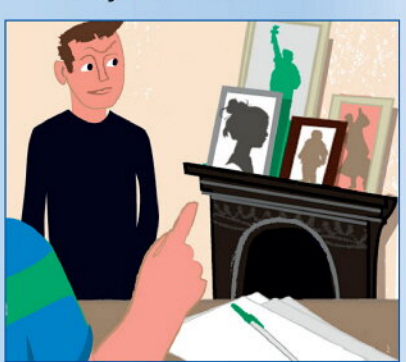
1 *this* and *these*
2 *this* and *that*
3 *these* and *those*

c ➤ **p.126 Grammar Bank 2A part 2.**
Learn more about *this | that | these | those* and practice them.

1 What's this?
It's _____ _____ _____.

2 What are these?
They're _____.

3 What's that?
It's _____ _____.



4 What are those?
They're _____.

6 PRONUNCIATION *th*

a 1 58 Listen and repeat the words and sounds.

ð	mother	this that these the they
θ	thumb	thanks thing thirty three Thursday

b 1 59 Listen and repeat the phrases. Practice saying them.

1 this Thursday
2 thirty-three
3 those things
4 Thanks for that.
5 These are the keys.
6 What are those things there?
7 I'm thirty-three this Thursday.

c Work in pairs. Put four of your things on your table (singular or plural). Ask your partner.

For the things on your table:

What's this in English? *It's a watch.*

For things in the classroom (point):

What are those in English? *They're pictures.*

G adjectives
V colors, adjectives, modifiers: *very / really*
P long and short vowel sounds

Is she attractive?

Yes. She's very tall, with red hair.

2B Stars and Stripes

1 VOCABULARY colors, adjectives, part 1

a What color is the American flag? Write the missing letters.

It's r__d, wh__t__, and bl__ __.

b Complete the other colors.

bl__ck y__ll__w gr__y p__nk
__r__ng__ br__wn gr__ __n

c Practice with the flags. Ask and answer.

What color is it?

d What color is *your* flag?

e ➤ **p.152 Vocabulary Bank** *Adjectives.* Do part 1.

2 GRAMMAR adjectives

a What are they? Label the pictures in the US quiz using an adjective and a noun from each circle.

Adjectives	Nouns
nice yellow	food House
~~American~~ New	school ~~Airlines~~
fast White	taxis jeans
blue high	day York

b 1 62 Listen and check. Circle the correct rule.

- Adjectives go *before / after* a noun.
- Adjectives *change / don't change* before a plural noun.

c ➤ **p.126 Grammar Bank 2B.** Learn more about adjectives and practice them.

d Cover the the pictures. Can you remember the eight phrases?

3 PRONUNCIATION
long and short vowel sounds

a 1 64 Listen and repeat the words and sounds.

fish	tree	clock
saw	bull	boot

b Match an adjective from circle **A** with an adjective from circle **B** with the same vowel sound. Write them in the chart.

A
blue full
easy rich
small hot

B
cheap big
calm wrong
new good

c 1 65 Listen and check.

d ➤ **p.166 Sound Bank.** Look at the typical spellings for these sounds.

e **Adjective race** In pairs, in three minutes make phrases with an adjective and a noun with the same vowel sound. Use *a / an* with singular nouns.

Adjectives
old new
gray long
black good
big cheap

Nouns
book boots
jeans photo
day fish
song cat

An old photo

f 1 66 Listen and check. Practice saying the phrases.

4 VOCABULARY adjectives part 2

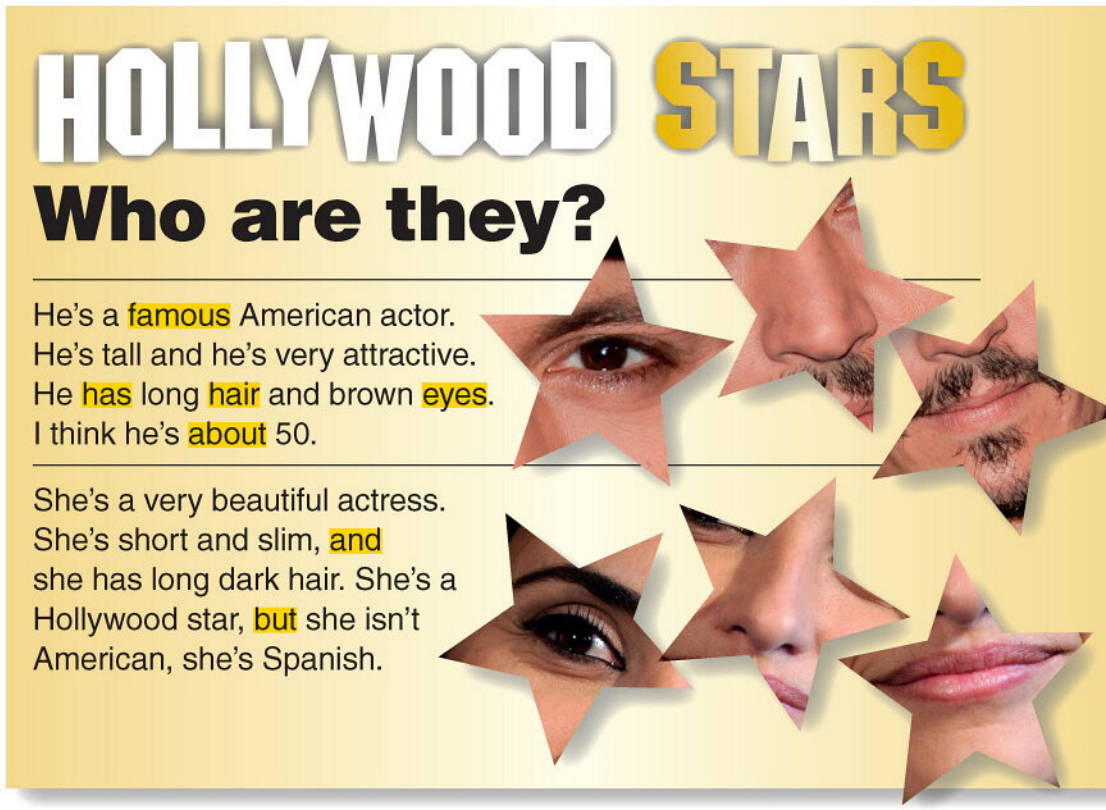
a ➤ **p.152 Vocabulary Bank** *Adjectives.* Do part 2.

b Work in pairs. **A** say an adjective. **B** say a famous person.

short *Tom Cruise*

5 READING

a Read the descriptions and look at the photos. Who are the two people?



b Read them again. Guess the meaning of the highlighted words.

6 WRITING & SPEAKING

a Think of a famous person from any country in the world. Use the jobs in the box to help you.

actor / actress musician politician
singer sportsman / sportswoman TV host

b Write a short description of the person. Give it to your partner. Can he / she guess who it is?

c Play *Guess the famous person.*

A think of a famous actor / actress.
B ask ten questions using *Is…?* Try to guess the actor / actress.

Is it a man or a woman? *A woman.*

Is she American? *Yes, she is.*

G imperatives, *let's*
V feelings
P understanding connected speech

Please slow down!

Don't worry.

2C After 300 feet, turn right

1 VOCABULARY feelings

a Match the words and pictures.

☐ hungry	☐ sad	☐ bored
☐ hot	☐ thirsty	☐ happy
☐ angry	☐ cold	☐ stressed
☐ tired	[1] worried	

Collocation
Use *be* + *hungry, thirsty, hot*, etc.,
e.g., *I'm very hungry.*
NOT ~~*I have very hungry.*~~

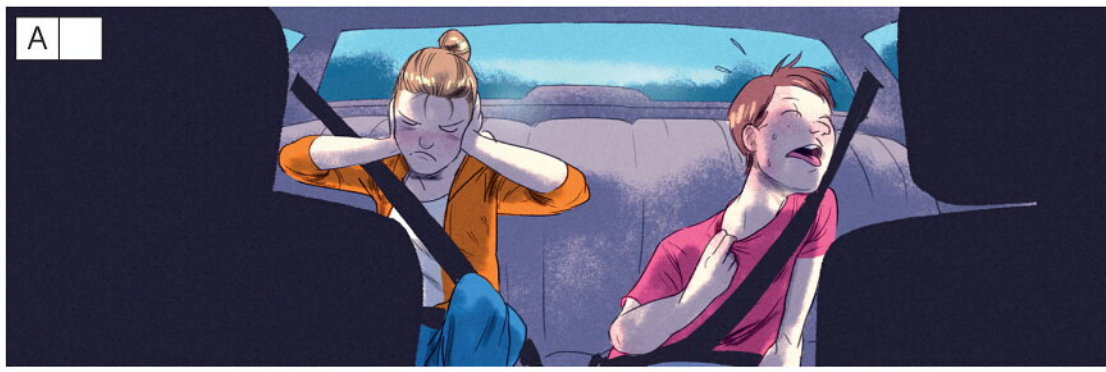
b 1 68 Listen and check. Repeat the phrases.

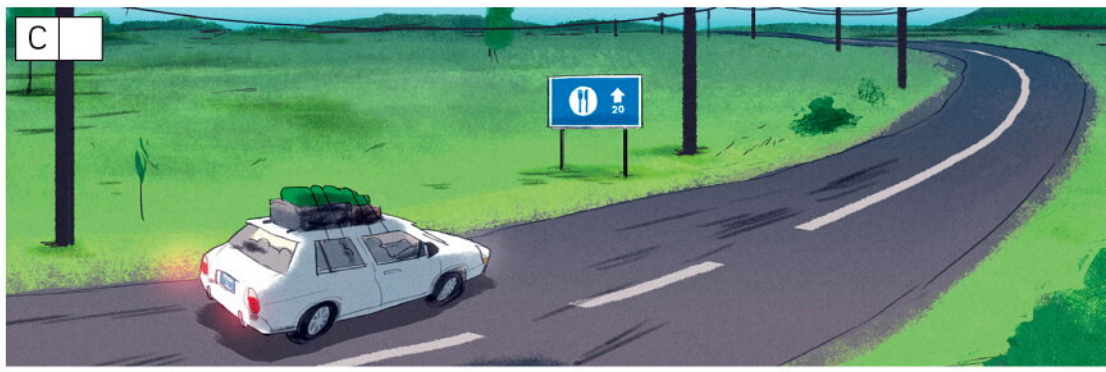
c Cover the words and look at the pictures. Make ⊞ and ⊟ sentences about how you feel and tell your partner.

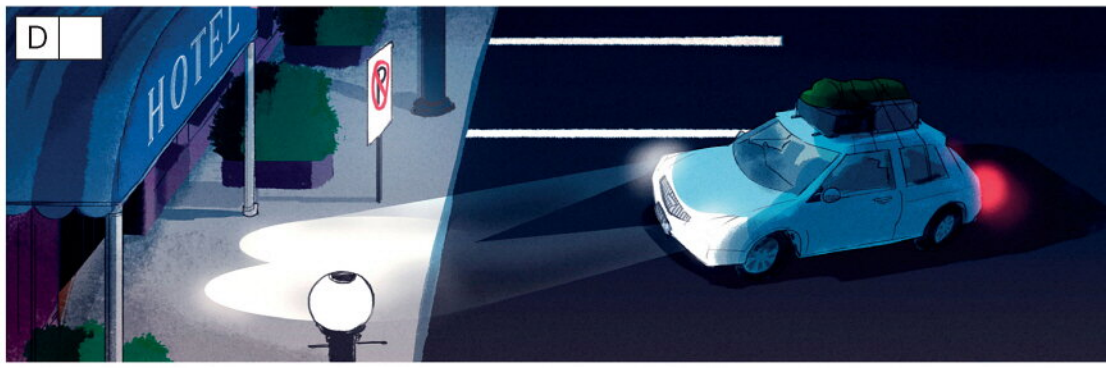
I'm really hungry.
I'm very tired.
I'm not hot.

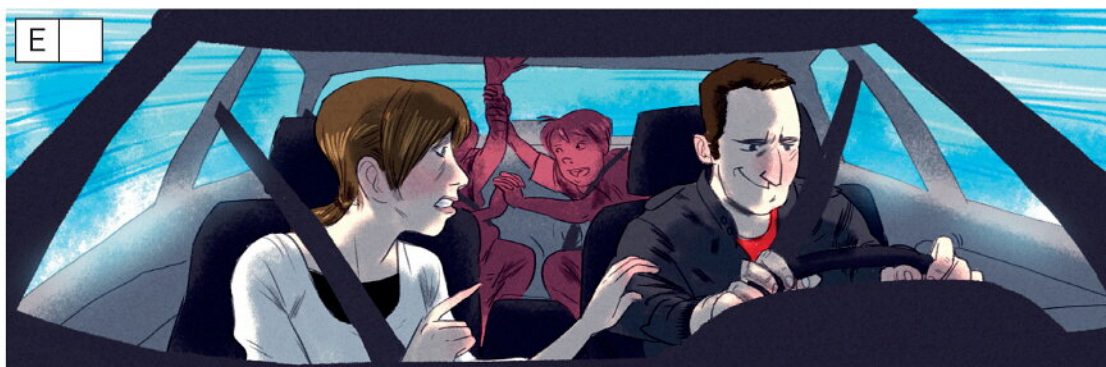
2 LISTENING & READING

a 1 69 The Carter family is on vacation. Look at the pictures. Listen and number them 1–5.









b Listen again and read. Try to guess what the highlighted phrases mean.

1 **GPS** After 100 feet, turn right. Turn right.
Mom Please slow down! This road is very dangerous.
Dad Don't worry. You know I'm a good driver.
Mom Be careful!

2 **Suzy** Dad, this music is terrible. Can you turn it off?
Dad OK.
Tim Dad, I'm really hot. Turn the air conditioning on, please.
Dad Are you hot, Suzy?
Suzy No, I'm cold.
Mom Open your window, Tim.

3 **Suzy** I'm thirsty. Where's the water?
Mom Here you are.
Tim I'm hungry. Can we stop soon?
Mom Let's stop at that service station.
Dad OK.

4 **Tim** Give me my iPod.
Suzy This is my iPod!
Dad Be quiet!
Tim Are we there yet? I'm bored.
Dad It's not far now. Only 15 miles.
Tim Can you turn the radio on please, Mom?
Mom OK.
Dad Oh, no!

5 **Suzy** Where are we?
Dad We're here. At the hotel.
Tim Great!
Mom Don't park here. Look at that sign. No parking.
Dad Don't worry. It's OK. Come on. Let's go.

c 1 70 Listen to the end of the story. What are the two problems the family has?

3 GRAMMAR imperatives, *let's*

a Look at the highlighted phrases in **2b**. Then complete the chart.

Imperatives		
+	Turn right!	_____ here!
−	_____ _____ right!	Don't park here!
Suggestions		
_____ stop at that service station.		
Come on. Let's _____.		

b ➤ **p.126 Grammar Bank 2C.** Learn more about imperatives and *let's*, and practice them.

c Look at the pictures in **2** and cover the dialogues. Can you remember the imperatives and suggestions with each picture?

d What do the signs mean? Use a verb phrase from the list in a + or − imperative.

be careful	cross the road now	go in here
smoke here	listen to music here	take photos
turn left	turn off your phone	eat or drink here

e Cover the list and look at the pictures. Can you remember the phrases?

4 PRONUNCIATION
understanding connected speech

Connected speech
When people speak, they don't usually separate all the words. For example, if a word ends with a consonant and the next word begins with a vowel, they join them together, e.g., Turn‿off the music.

a 1 72 Listen and write six sentences.

b Practice saying the sentences.

5 SPEAKING

➤ **Communication** *What's the matter?* **A** *p.101* **B** *p.106.* Role-play dialogues.

6 1 73 SONG *Please Don't Go* ♫

1&2 Review and Check

GRAMMAR

Circle a, b, or c.

1 Hello. _____ your name?
a What b What are c What's

2 Maria is Mexican. _____ a student.
a She's b He's c It's

3 **A** Where _____ from?
B He's from Turkey.
a he is b is c is he

4 They _____ South Korean. They're Vietnamese.
a isn't b aren't c not are

5 **A** Are you from Paris?
B Yes, _____.
a I am b I'm c I are

6 She's Brazilian. _____ name's Daniela.
a His b Her c Your

7 We're from the US. _____ last name is Preston.
a Your b Their c Our

8 **A** What are they?
B They're _____.
a watches b a watch c watchs

9 **A** What is it?
B It's _____.
a a umbrella
b an umbrella
c umbrella

10 Look at those _____.
a womans b women c womens

11 **A** What are _____ in English?
B They're keys.
a that b this c these

12 These are very _____.
a difficult exercises
b exercises difficult
c difficults exercises

13 _____ careful! That dog's dangerous.
a Are b Be you c Be

14 Please _____ in the library.
a not eat b don't eat c no eat

15 I'm hungry. _____ stop at the cafe.
a Let's b We c Don't

VOCABULARY

a Complete with *at*, *from*, *in*, *off*, or *to*.

1 I'm _____ Japan.
2 Nice _____ meet you.
3 What's *bonjour* _____ English?
4 Look _____ the board.
5 Please turn _____ your cell phone.

b Complete the phrases with these verbs.

Answer Stand Open Read Work

1 _____ the text.
2 _____ in pairs.
3 _____ up.
4 _____ the door.
5 _____ the questions.

c Circle the word that is different.

	one	three	book	five
1	eight	two	seven	file
2	Brazil	Chinese	Peru	Iran
3	Spanish	Italian	Japanese	France
4	Africa	Asia	Ireland	Europe
5	sixteen	forty	ninety	eighty
6	Wednesday	Italy	Friday	Monday
7	glasses	change purse	headphones	scissors
8	door	window	wall	school
9	wallet	newspaper	book	magazine
10	happy	tired	angry	stressed

d Write the opposite adjective.

1 good _____
2 expensive _____
3 dirty _____
4 tall _____
5 empty _____

PRONUNCIATION

a Circle the word with a different sound.

1	/ɪ/	A	B	C	D
2	/aɪ/	Hi	day	my	nice
3	/ɪz/	watches	boxes	files	glasses
4	/dʒ/	Japan	German	good	page
5	/æ/	dangerous	stamps	bad	laptop

b Underline the stressed syllable.

1 a|ddress 2 I|ta|ly 3 ex|pen|sive 4 news|pa|per 5 thir|teen

CAN YOU UNDERSTAND THIS TEXT?

a Read the article once. Do you know any more words that are British English, not American English?

American and British English—

the same, but different

American and British people speak the same language—English, but with some small differences.

VOCABULARY

Some words are different in British English, for example, British people say *postcode*, not *zip code*, *holiday*, not *vacation*, and *mobile phone*, not *cell phone*. Some words have different meanings, for example in American English, a *purse* is a woman's bag. In British English, a *purse* is a small thing (like a wallet) where women have their money and credit cards.

SPELLING

Color, *favor*, and other words that end in *-or* in American English end with *-our* in British English, e.g., *colour*, *favour*. *Center*, *theater*, and other words that end in *-ter* in American English end with *-tre* in British English, e.g., *centre*, *theatre*.

GRAMMAR

British grammar is very similar to American grammar, but with some small differences, especially prepositions. For example, British people say *See you on Friday*, but Americans say *See you Friday*.

PRONUNCIATION

The most important difference between American and British English is pronunciation. American accents and British accents are very different, and when a British person starts speaking, American people know he or she is British, and vice versa.

b Look at the highlighted words in the text and guess their meaning.

c Read the article again. Mark the sentences **T** (true) or **F** (false).

1 American English and British English are very different.
2 *Holiday* and *postcode* are the same in British and American English.
3 *Purse* has different meanings in American and British English.
4 *Neighbor* is British spelling.
5 British and American grammar are not very different.
6 It's difficult to know from their accent if a person is British or American.

CAN YOU UNDERSTAND THESE PEOPLE?

1 74 **On the street** Watch or listen to five people and answer the questions.

1 Her name is _____.
a Jenna b Jeana c Jeanna
2 Andy's from Newcastle in the _____ of England.
a northeast b northwest c southeast
3 David is _____.
a Canadian b French c Spanish
4 Her name is _____.
a Elisa b Ellie c Elise
5 Tiffany is _____.
a German b Brazilian c Russian

CAN YOU SAY THIS IN ENGLISH?

Do the tasks with a partner. Check (✓) the box if you can do them.

Can you...?

1 ☐ count from 0–20
2 ☐ count from 20–100 (20, 30, etc.)
3 ☐ say the days of the week
4 ☐ give three instructions: two ⊞ and one ⊟
5 ☐ introduce yourself and another person
6 ☐ answer the questions below
- What's your first name / last name?
- How do you spell it?
- Where are you from?

Short movies Hollywood, Los Angeles
Watch and enjoy the movie.

G simple present ⊞ and ⊟
V verb phrases
P third person -s

They live in an apartment.

He doesn't drink coffee.

3A Things I love about the US

1 VOCABULARY verb phrases

a Complete the phrases with a verb from the list.

go read work have listen

1 _____ a newspaper
2 _____ to the radio
3 _____ children
4 _____ to the movies
5 _____ in an office

b ➤ **p.153 Vocabulary Bank** *Verb phrases.*

c 2 3 Listen. Say the phrase. *TV* *watch TV*

2 GRAMMAR simple present ⊞ and ⊟

a Look at four things people say about the US and Americans. Do you think they are true or not true? Then read the text and check your answers.

Four foreigners who live in the US talk about the things people say about Americans...

Americans eat fast food every day. Pei from China
It's true that Americans eat a lot of fast food, but they don't eat fast food every day. I share an apartment with an American woman, and she cooks all the time. She only eats fast food on some days–with me!

The sun shines a lot in Southern California. Alberto from Mexico
The weather changes quickly in many places in the US, but not in Southern California. The sun shines a lot there. It doesn't shine every day, but be careful when it shines. It gets very hot! I always wear sunglasses when I go out.

Americans like animals. Naomi from Japan
I have a lot of friends here and many of them have a dog, a cat, or a bird. One American family that I know has a dog, a cat, and two birds. American people love animals!

Americans are always loud. Gianni from Italy
Some Americans are very loud, but I work with an American man at a coffee shop, and he's really quiet and polite. He doesn't talk very much. But he's a very nice guy!

b Answer the questions with a partner.

1 Look at the highlighted verbs. Why do some verbs end in *-s*?
2 Write the *he / she / it* form of these verbs.

change _____ have _____
talk _____ go _____
cook _____ eat _____

3 Find two negative ⊟ verbs. How are they different from affirmative ⊞ verbs a) for *he / she / it* b) for all other persons?

c ➤ **p.128 Grammar Bank 3A.**
Learn more about simple present ⊞ and ⊟, and practice it.

3 PRONUNCIATION third person -s

a How do you pronounce these plural nouns?

books keys watches

b 2 5 Listen and repeat the third person verb forms.

/s/ She speaks Spanish.
He drinks coffee.
She cooks every day.

/z/ It rains a lot.
He has a cat.
She does homework.
He goes to the movies on Friday night.

/ɪz/ He watches TV.
The movie finishes in a minute.
The weather changes a lot.

c 2 6 Listen. Change the sentence.

I live in an apartment. She.
She lives in an apartment.

d Tell your partner six true things about you: three ⊞ and three ⊟. Choose verb phrases from **p.153 Vocabulary Bank** *Verb phrases*.

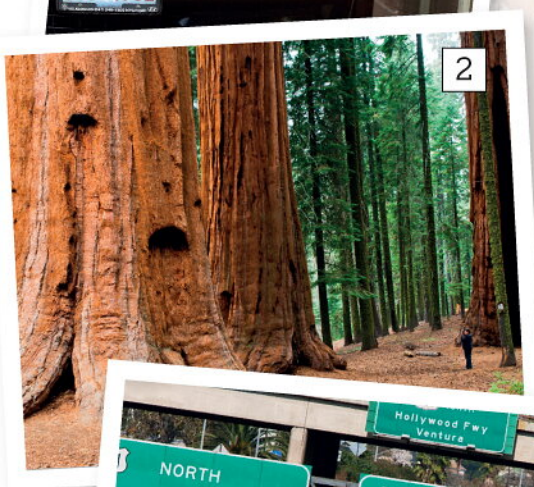
I play the guitar. I don't wear glasses.

e Change partners. Tell your new partner the six things about your old partner.

Eva plays the guitar. She doesn't wear glasses.

State Parks, freeways,
and other things I love about the US

Jenny Clark, an Australian mom and college student who lives in California, says the US isn't just OK—it's paradise.
These are some of her reasons…



Coffee
American cups of coffee are very big! A small cup of coffee in the US is like a large cup of coffee in Australia. If you're in a hurry, you go to a drive-through and buy coffee from your car. It's so easy!

State Parks
California has 278 state parks, and they are beautiful. On the weekends, I bring my family to a state park in my area. We explore the forest, find small animals, and enjoy the tall redwood trees.

Malls
I love shopping, and in the US, the malls are very big. People walk around and shop for hours. US malls have many different stores, and the salespeople are friendly and help you find things.

Fall
I love the fall weather in the US. A good fall day in California is cool, but not too cold. I also love the trees. They change from green to yellow, red, and brown.

Freeways
I prefer the roads in the US. The freeways are very fast, and in California they have a lot of car lanes. It's really easy to drive from one place to another.

Theme Parks
Theme parks are very popular in the US, and we live near the Great America Theme Park. My children like the rides and water slides. Sometimes the lines for the rides are long, but that's OK. We need rest!

Red Robin
Red Robin is a restaurant that has great hamburgers. I don't eat meat, but I like the french fries and lemonade at Red Robin. I think the fried cheese sticks are fantastic, but sometimes they aren't on the menu. Maybe that's because they aren't very healthy!

4 READING & SPEAKING

a Look at the photos. In which one can you see…?

- ☐ a drive-through
- ☐ a ride
- ☐ a theme park
- ☐ a car lane
- ☐ a redwood forest
- ☐ a hamburger
- ☐ a cup of coffee
- ☐ a driver

b 2 7 Read and listen to the article. Mark the sentence **T** (true) or **F** (false). Say why the **F** ones are false.

1. A large cup of coffee in Australia is the same as a small cup of coffee in the US.
2. California doesn't have a lot of state parks.
3. Jenny doesn't like the salespeople in shopping malls.
4. The fall is very cold in California.
5. It's easy to drive in the US.
6. Jenny doesn't like the long lines for rides at theme parks.
7. Jenny eats hamburgers and French fries at Red Robin.

c Underline these verbs in the text. What do they mean? Compare your ideas with a partner.

buy bring explore find enjoy walk
help prefer drive need think

d Look at each paragraph again. Say if it's the same or different in your country or city.

The coffee in Brazil is very good. We have drive-throughs and good coffee shops.

Useful words: *Why?* and *because*
Use *because* to answer the question *Why?*
Why are the freeways good?
Because they are very fast.

G simple present ?
V jobs
P /ər/

3B Work and play

What do you do?

I'm a nurse.

1 VOCABULARY jobs

a Order the letters to make words for jobs.

1 ACTEHRE T_____
2 ROCAT A_____
3 TRIEWA W_____
4 AXTI RREDIV T_____ D_____
5 PTIREONICEST R_____

b ➤ **p.154 Vocabulary Bank** *Jobs.*

c What do you do? Ask five other students in the class.

His job, her job

2 LISTENING

a 2 10, 11 Listen to a game show called *His job, her job.* A team of three people ask Wayne questions about his job and his wife Tanya's job. Write **W** next to the questions they ask Wayne about his job, and **T** next to the questions they ask about Tanya's job.

b Listen again. What are Wayne's answers? Write ✓ (yes), ✗ (no), or **D** (it depends) after each question.

c Look at the answers. What do you think his job is? What do you think her job is?

d 2 12 Listen to the end of the game show. What do Wayne and his wife do?

Where?	**work**	outside ☐
		on the street ☐
		inside ☐
		in an office ☐
When?	**work**	in the evening ☐
		at night ☐
		on the weekend ☐
How?	**work**	with computers ☐
		with other people ☐
		long hours ☐
	have special qualifications ☐	
	speak foreign languages ☐	
	travel ☐	
	drive ☐	
	make things ☐	
	wear a uniform or special clothes ☐	
	earn a lot of money ☐	

3 GRAMMAR simple present ?

a 2 13 Complete the questions. Listen and check. Why are questions 3 and 4 different?

1 _____ **you work with other people?**
Yes, I _____.
2 _____ **you work in an office?**
No, I _____.
3 _____ **she work with computers?**
No, she _____.
4 _____ **she work on the weekend?**
Yes, she _____.

b ➤ **p.128 Grammar Bank 3B.** Learn more about the simple present ? and practice it.

c In groups of four, play *His job, her job.* Choose jobs from **p.154 Vocabulary Bank** *Jobs.* Ask questions to guess the jobs.

4 PRONUNCIATION /ər/

a 2 15 Listen and repeat the words and sounds.

bird	nurse thirty her work journalist

/ər/
ur, ir, and *er* usually = /ər/ when they are stressed.

b 2 16 Listen. Which word *doesn't* have the /ər/ sound?

1 thirsty dirty thirteen tired
2 earn here prefer service
3 Thursday sure turn Turkey

c Practice saying the sentences.

I prefer Turkish coffee.
Journalists work all over the world.
Shirley is thirty on Thursday.

5 SPEAKING

a Complete the phrases with a verb from the list.

do (x3) eat go listen read use ~~walk~~ watch

During the week
walk to work / school
_____ a computer at work / school
_____ in English
_____ in a cafe or restaurant
_____ housework

On the weekend
_____ TV in the morning
_____ to music
_____ housework
_____ homework
_____ to the movies

b Work in pairs. Ask and answer questions. Then change roles.

A Ask **B** the questions.
B Answer the questions. Give more information if you can.

A *Do you walk to school?* **B** *No, I don't. I go by bus.*

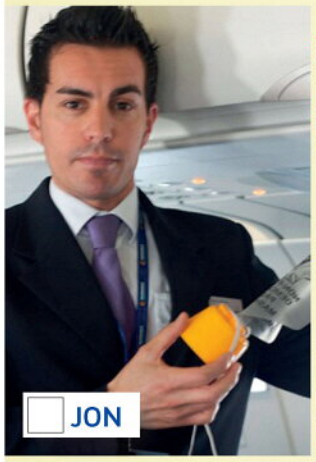
c Change pairs. Ask your new partner about his / her old partner.

C *Does Akito walk to school?* **A** *No, he doesn't. He goes by bus.*

6 READING

a Read the article. Match each text to a photo. What do the three people do?

UNIFORMS – FOR OR AGAINST?


☐ JON

☐ MARIE

☐ SARAH

Three people say what they think...

1 Our uniform is OK. I like the colors, gray and red. The only things I don't like are the tie, because it's difficult to put on, and the skirt, because I prefer pants. I think uniforms are a good idea. Everybody looks the same, and it's easy to get dressed in the morning – I don't need to think about what to wear.

2 Our uniform is dark pants and a white nylon top, kind of like a nurse's uniform. We can't wear anything over the uniform, so it's cold in the winter, and it gets dirty very easily because it's white. I'm not against uniforms, but my uniform just isn't practical!

3 Our uniform is very simple – a dark blue jacket and pants and a white shirt and tie. I like it, it's nice and comfortable, so I'm happy to wear it. And I think it's important that people can see where we are when they need help.

b With a partner, say what the highlighted words mean. Check with your teacher or a dictionary.

c Read the article again. Who...?

1 thinks uniforms are a good idea, but doesn't like his / her uniform?
2 likes his / her uniform, but doesn't say anything about uniforms in general?
3 thinks uniforms are a good idea and likes his / her uniform?

d Do you wear a uniform at work / school? Do you like it? Why (not)? Do you think uniforms are a good idea?

G word order in questions
V question words
P sentence stress

What kind of movies do you like?

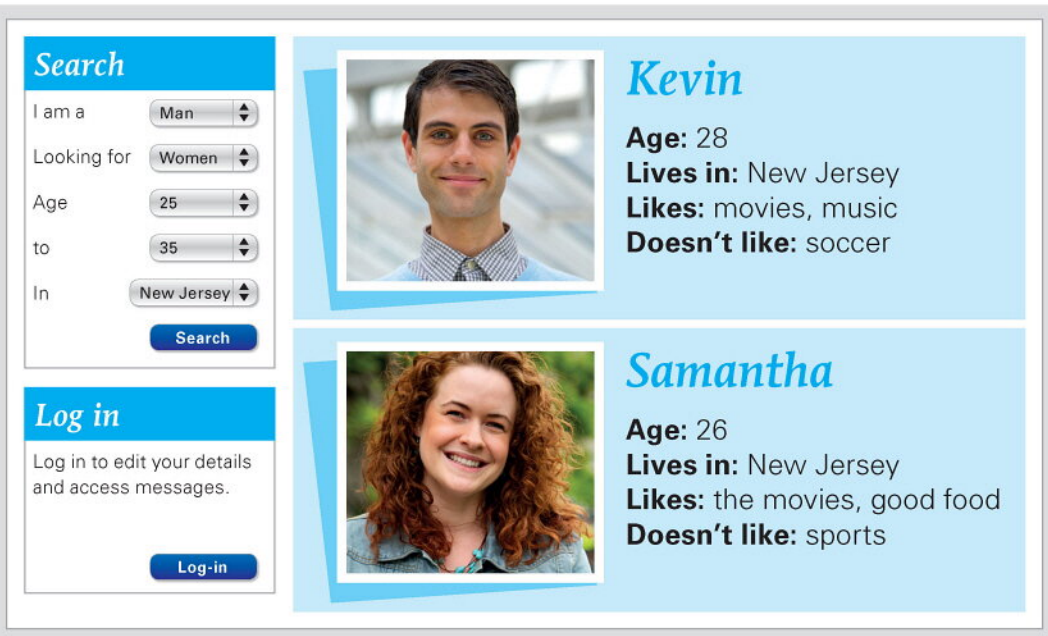
I like French movies.

3C Meeting online

1 LISTENING

a Kevin and Samantha want to meet a partner on the Internet. Read their profiles and look at their photos. Then cover them and say what you can remember. Do you think they are a good match?

Kevin is 28. He lives in New Jersey...



b 2 17 Kevin and Samantha meet in a restaurant for lunch. Cover the conversation and listen. What does Kevin say about...?

1 where he lives 2 his job 3 movies he likes

c Listen again. Complete the missing verbs.

S Hi. Are you Kevin?
K Yes. Are you Samantha?
S Yes, I am, but call me Sam. Nice to _____ you. Sorry I'm late.
K No problem. You look different from your photo.
S Let's _____ something to drink. Coffee? Tea?
K No, thanks. Water for me. I don't _____ caffeine after 9:00 a.m.

K I _____ this place.
S Me too. Where do you _____ in New Jersey?
K In Edison. Near the mall. I _____ with my mother.
S Really? What do you _____?
K I'm a teacher. I teach chemistry.
S Chemistry? How interesting.
K Yes, it's a very interesting job. What about you?
S I'm a journalist. You _____ the movies, Kevin. What kind of movies do you _____?
K Science-fiction movies. I _____ *Star Wars*.
S Oh.
K Do you _____ *Star Wars*?

d 2 18 Look at the highlighted phrases in the conversation. Listen and repeat them. Practice the conversation with a partner.

> **Showing interest**
> When you have a conversation, react to what your partner says. Use *Me too. Really? How interesting! What about you?* etc.

e 2 19 Listen to the second part of the conversation. Do you think they want to meet again?

f Listen again and mark the sentences **T** (true) or **F** (false). Say why the **F** ones are false.

1 Samantha likes science fiction movies.
2 They like the same kind of music.
3 Their weekends are very different.
4 Samantha pays for their lunch.

g Do you think the Internet is a good place to make friends or meet a partner? Why (not)?

2 GRAMMAR word order in questions

a Cover the conversation. Put the words in order to make the questions.

1 want you do drink a
_____?

2 in New live Jersey you do where
_____?

3 movies like kind you of what do
_____?

b ➤ **p.128 Grammar Bank 3C.** Learn more about word order in questions and practice it.

3 VOCABULARY & PRONUNCIATION question words; sentence stress

a 2 21 Listen and repeat the question words and phrases. How is *Wh-* pronounced in *Who*? How is it pronounced in the other question words?

How? How many? ~~What~~? What kind?
When? Where? Which? Who? Why?

b Complete the questions with a question word or phrase from the list in **a**.

1 *What* **phone do you have?**
I have an iPhone.

2 _____ **old are you?**
22.

3 _____ **brothers and sisters do you have?**
I have two sisters.

4 _____ **do you prefer, Saturdays or Sundays?**
Saturdays.

5 _____ **do you have English classes?**
On Mondays and Wednesdays.

6 _____ **of movies do you like?**
I like old Japanese movies.

7 _____ **do you live?**
Downtown.

8 _____**'s your favorite actor?**
Tom Hanks.

9 _____ **do you like him?**
Because he's very good-looking!

c 2 22 Listen and check.

d Listen again and repeat the questions. Copy the rhythm.

What phone do you have?

e Work in pairs. **A** ask **B** the questions. **B** give your own answers. Then change roles.

4 SPEAKING

a Imagine you meet a new friend online, and you go out for coffee together. Look at the prompts and write eight questions.

Where do you work?
Who is your favorite singer?

Where work, like, watch, read, do, speak, study, play, have

What sports, magazines, TV shows, languages, car

What kind of music, movies, food

Who / **What** your favorite TV show, restaurant, singer, actor

b Work in pairs with a student you don't know very well.

A Ask **B** your first question.
B Answer the question. Give more information if you can.
A React to **B**'s answer.
B Ask **A** your first question.

A *What kind of music do you like?*
B *I like classical music, especially Mozart.*
A *Really? Me too.*

5 WRITING

➤ **p.111 Writing** *A personal profile.* Write a profile of yourself.

6 2 23 SONG *Somethin' Stupid* ♫

Practical English At a coffee shop

EPISODE 2

1 TELLING THE TIME

a Look at the clock. What time is it?

➤ **p. 157 Vocabulary Bank** *Time.* Do Part 1.

b **Communication** *What's the time?* **A** *p.101* **B** *p.106.*

2 VIDEO ROB AND JENNY MEET

a 2 25 Watch or listen to what happens when Rob and Jenny meet. What do they decide to do?

b Watch or listen again. Mark the sentences **T** (true) or **F** (false). Say why the **F** sentences are false.

1 Jenny's full name is Jennifer.
2 Rob is early.
3 Jenny likes the hotel.
4 She doesn't like the hotel coffee.
5 She has a meeting with Daniel at 9:15.
6 The office isn't very far from the hotel.

3 VIDEO BUYING A COFFEE

a Look at the coffee shop menu. Do you know what all the things are?

menu

drinks and cakes

Espresso	single **2.45**	double **2.80**
Americano	regular **3.15**	large **3.95**
Latte	regular **3.45**	large **3.65**
Cappuccino	regular **3.45**	large **3.65**
Tea	regular **2.65**	large **3.10**
Brownie	**3.00**	
Croissant	**3.00**	

b 2 26 Watch or listen to Rob and Jenny buying coffee. Answer the questions.

1 What kind of coffee do Rob and Jenny have?
2 What do they have to eat?
3 How much is it?

c Watch or listen again. Complete the **You Hear** phrases.

You Hear	You Say
Can I _____ you?	What would you like, Jenny? An espresso, please.
_____ or double?	Double. Can I have a latte, please?
_____ or large?	Large.
To have _____ or take away?	To take away.
Anything else?	No, thanks. A brownie for me, please... and a croissant.
OK.	How much is that?
That's £12.45, please.	Sorry, how much?
£12.45. Thank you. And your _____.	Thanks.

Cultural note
barista = a person who works in a coffee shop

d 2 27 Watch or listen and repeat the **You Say** phrases. Copy the rhythm.

e In threes, practice the dialogue.

f Role-play the dialogue in groups of three. Then change roles.

A (book open) You are the barista.
B (book closed) You invite **C** (book closed) to have a drink.
A begins: *Can I help you?*
B asks **C**: *What would you like?*

4 VIDEO FIRST DAY IN THE OFFICE

a 2 28 Watch or listen and answer the questions.

1 What's Karen's job?
2 Where in Europe does Jenny have family?
3 Where does she live in New York?
4 Does Karen have family in New York?
5 What does Daniel offer Jenny to drink?
6 What time is his next meeting?

b Look at the **Social English phrases**. Who says them: **R**ob, **K**aren, or **D**aniel?

Social English phrases
Here we are.
Is this your first time in [the UK]?
Would you like something to drink?
Talk to you later.

c 2 29 Watch or listen and check. Do you know what they are in your language?

d Watch or listen again and repeat the phrases.

Can you...?
- [ ] tell the time
- [ ] order food and drink in a cafe
- [ ] meet and introduce people

G *Whose...?*, possessive *'s*
V family
P /ʌ/, the letter *o*

4A Is she his wife or his sister?

Who's that?

He's my nephew – my sister's son.

1 GRAMMAR *Whose...?*, possessive *'s*

a How interested are people in your country in the private lives of celebrities? What kind of celebrities? Number the people 1–3 (**3** = very interested, **2** = interested, **1** = not very interested).

- ☐ actors
- ☐ musicians
- ☐ sports players
- ☐ others (say what)
- ☐ royalty
- ☐ TV stars / hosts
- ☐ politicians

b Look at the celebrities in the photos. In pairs, answer the questions for each celebrity.

1 What does he / she do? Where is he / she from?
2 Do you know anything about his / her family or private life?
3 Are you interested in these people? Why (not)?

c With a partner, guess who the other person in each photo is. Choose **a** or **b** in sentences 1–5.

d 2 30 Listen and check. What does *'s* mean in sentences 1–5?

e ➤ **p.130 Grammar Bank 4A.** Learn more about *Whose...?* and possessive *'s* and practice them.

f Look at some things from the photos. Whose are they?

Whose is the wristband? *It's George Clooney's.*

wristband /ˈrɪstbænd/ | bow tie /ˈboʊ taɪ/ | T-shirt /ˈtiʃɜrt/ | sunglasses /ˈsʌnˌglæsəz/ | tie /taɪ/

2 VOCABULARY family

a ➤ **p.155 Vocabulary Bank** *The family.*

b In pairs, answer the questions.

Who's...?

1 your mother's mother *My grandmother*
2 your father's brother _____
3 your brother's / sister's daughter _____
4 your aunt's children _____
5 your husband's / wife's brother _____
6 your niece's brother _____

Who are they with?

You know the celebrity – but who is the other person?

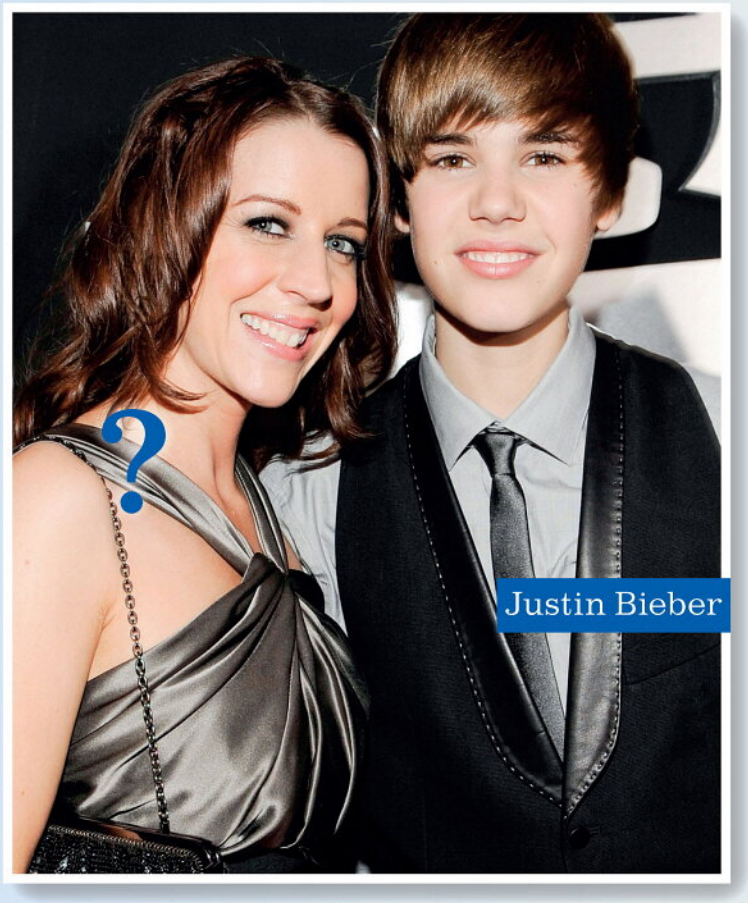
1 She's Justin Bieber's
a sister **b** mother

2 He's Carla Bruni's
a ex-boyfriend **b** ex-husband

3 She's Lionel Messi's
a wife **b** sister

4 She's Jack Nicholson's
a daughter **b** girlfriend

5 He's George Clooney's
a brother **b** father



3 PRONUNCIATION /ʌ/, the letter *o*

a 2 33 Listen and repeat the words and sound.

ʌ up	mother	brother	son	husband	uncle	cousin

b ➤ p.166 Sound Bank. Look at the different spellings for this sound.

c How is the letter *o* pronounced in these words? Put them in the right column.

come do don't doctor go home job London
model money no one hot stop who

ʌ up	ow phone	ɑ clock	u boot
come	*don't*	*doctor*	*do*

d 2 34 Listen and check. Practice saying the words.

e Practice the dialogues with a partner.

A Who's that?
B My mother.
A She's very young!
B No, she's sixty-one. She's a doctor.

A Who are they?
B That's my brother and his son.
A Do they live in London?
B No, they don't.

4 LISTENING & SPEAKING

a 2 35 Listen to Isabel showing a friend photos on her phone. Who are the people in the photos in relation to Isabel?

b Listen again. Write down more information about the people in the photos, e.g., their names, ages, jobs, etc.

c Work with a partner.

A Show **B** some photos of family or friends on your phone or write their names on a piece of paper.

B Ask three questions about each person.

Who's that? *She's my sister Yolanda.*

How old is she?

G prepositions of time (*at, in, on*) and place (*at, in, to*)
V everyday activities
P linking and sentence stress

What do you do in the evening?

I have dinner and watch TV.

4B What a life!

1 VOCABULARY
everyday activities

a 2 36 Listen to the sounds and number the phrases 1–6.

- [ ] get dressed
- [1] get up
- [ ] have breakfast
- [ ] take a shower
- [ ] go to work / school
- [ ] have a coffee

b What order do *you* do these things in the morning? Tell your partner.

First, I get up. Then I...

c ➤ **p.156 Vocabulary Bank** *Everyday activities.*

2 PRONUNCIATION
linking and sentence stress

Connected speech
Remember, when people speak, they usually link words together. Sometimes three linked words sound like one word, e.g., *I getupat seven.*

a 2 38 Listen and write five sentences.

1 _____.
2 _____.
3 _____.
4 _____.
5 _____.

b 2 39 Listen and repeat the sentences. Copy the rhythm.

I get up at seven.
I take a shower.
I go to work.
I have a sandwich for lunch.
I get home at six.
I have pizza for dinner.
I go to bed at ten.
What a life!

3 READING & LISTENING

a Read the article. How do you think Nico feels at the end of a typical day? Why? Choose from the adjectives in the list.

bored happy stressed sad tired worried relaxed

b Read the article again. Guess the meaning of the highlighted words and phrases. Then underline words and phrases connected with restaurants, e.g., *chef.*

c ➤ **Communication** *Nico's day* **A** *p.101* **B** *p.106.*
A Ask **B** questions.
B Find the answers in the text. Then change roles.

What time does Nico get up? *He gets up at...*

FATHER & DAUGHTER
– *whose day is more* **stressful?**

Nico is a chef and has his own restaurant, the Blue Jar. He lives in Chile with his wife and her three children, aged 16, 12, and 9.

6:30 a.m. I get up and make breakfast for the children. Then I have breakfast – a coffee and cereal – and I read the sports section of the paper.

7:15 a.m. I go to the market to buy fruit and vegetables for the restaurant.

8:45 a.m. When I get to the restaurant, I check the reservations and my emails and plan the special menu of the day. I have my second cup of coffee.

10:30 a.m. I start cooking. The radio is on, and we are busy with breakfast orders, but we also have to prepare the food for lunch.

12:00 p.m. I check the tables and have my third coffee.

1:30 p.m. Suddenly everyone arrives at the same time and the restaurant is full (on a good day). I start to shout instructions at the chefs and waiters. We make lunch for 85 people in about an hour and a half.

2:45 p.m. I come into the restaurant and talk to the customers and ask if they are happy with the food. I'm really hungry now.

3:30 p.m. Finally, I have lunch. I don't enjoy it very much because I don't have time to relax.

d 2 40 Listen to Amelia, Nico's 16-year-old stepdaughter, talking about her day. Fill in the blanks with a word, a number, or a time.

Morning

6:30 She gets up.
_____ She starts school.
She has _____ or _____ classes.

Afternoon

_____ She has lunch. She only has _____ minutes for lunch.
She has _____ or _____ classes.
_____ She finishes school.
On Mondays and _____ she has extra classes to prepare for the college entrance exam.
On Tuesdays and _____ she has _____ practice.

Evening

She does _____ and studies until dinner.
After dinner, she studies until _____.
_____ She goes to bed.

e Look back at the text and the information in **d**. Whose day do you think is more stressful, Nico's or Amelia's? Why?

4:00 p.m. After lunch, I go back to the kitchen and plan the food for the evening menu.
5:30 p.m. I go home to be with the family for a couple of hours. The children do their homework and I make their dinner.
7:30 p.m. I go back to the restaurant, which is full again, and I check that everything is OK.
10:00 p.m. I go home and take a shower. Then I collapse on the sofa with a sandwich.
11:00 p.m. I go to bed, ready to start again the next day.

4 GRAMMAR prepositions of time (*at, in, on*) and place (*at, in, to*)

a Look at some sentences from Amelia's day. Complete them with *in, on, at,* or *to*.

1 I get up ___ six thirty.
2 ___ the morning we usually have five classes, sometimes six.
3 We have lunch ___ school in the cafeteria.
4 ___ Mondays and Wednesdays I go ___ extra classes.

b 2 41 Listen and check.

c ➤ **p.130 Grammar Bank 4B.** Learn more about prepositions and practice them.

d 2 44 Listen and say the time phrases with the right preposition.

the weekend *on the weekend*

5 SPEAKING & WRITING

a Work in pairs. Interview your partner about a typical weekday with the questions.

What time / get up?
/ have breakfast in the morning? What / have?
How / go to work or school?
What time / start work or school?
/ have a long lunch break? How long?
What time / finish work or school?
What / do after work or school?
/ relax in the evening? What / do?
When / do English homework?
What time / go to bed?
How / feel at the end of the day?

When you can't be exact
What time do you get up? At **about** 7:15.
What do you have for breakfast? **It depends**.
If I have time, I have toast or cereal.

b Who do you think has a more stressful day, you or your partner? Why?

c ➤ **p.112 Writing** *A magazine article.* Write about your favorite day.

G position of adverbs and expressions of frequency
V adverbs and expressions of frequency
P the letter *h*

How often do you eat fruit?

Every day.

4C Short life, long life?

1 VOCABULARY
adverbs and expressions of frequency

a 2 45 Fill in the blanks with a "time" word. Listen and check.

1 sixty seconds = a *minute*
2 thirty minutes = half an _____
3 sixty minutes = an _____
4 twenty-four hours = a _____
5 seven days = a _____
6 four weeks = a _____
7 twelve months = a _____

b ➤ **p.157 Vocabulary Bank** *Time.* Do parts 2 and 3.

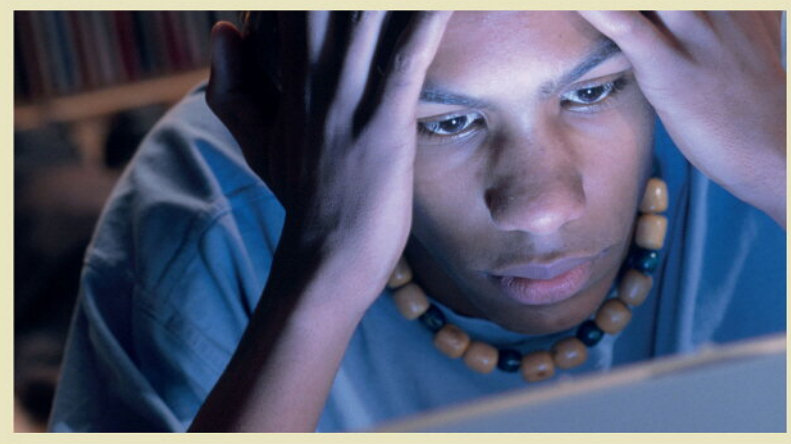
2 GRAMMAR position of adverbs and expressions of frequency

a Read the text about teenagers. Is it the same in your country?

Today's teenagers may not live as long as their parents

Doctors are worried that today's teenagers have a very unhealthy lifestyle, and may not live as long as their parents' generation. Research shows:

- 30% of teenagers never have breakfast.
- They eat fast food at least two or three times a week and 75% hardly ever eat fruit or green vegetables.
- They don't usually sleep 8 hours a day. (30% sleep only 4–7 hours.) They are often tired in the morning.
- They spend about 31 hours online every week. A lot of teenagers never play sports or exercise.



b Look at the position of the highlighted words and expressions. Circle the correct rule.

1 Adverbs of frequency (e.g., *usually*) go…
before / *after* a main verb.
before / *after* the verb *be*.
2 Expressions of frequency (e.g., *every week*) go…
at the beginning / *at the end* of a phrase or sentence.

c ➤ **p.130 Grammar Bank 4C.** Learn more about adverbs and expressions of frequency and practice them.

d Make true sentences about you with the verb phrases below and an adverb or expression of frequency. Compare with a partner.

be late for work / school	watch the news on TV
go to the hair salon	check your email
be tired in the morning	go to the movies
do housework	chat online

I'm often late for work.

I check my emails five times a day.

3 PRONUNCIATION the letter *h*

a 2 50 Listen and repeat the words and sound.

house	how hardly healthy high have hungry happy

b 2 51 Listen. Circle the word where *h* is not pronounced.

Harry's a hair stylist.
He hardly ever has breakfast.
He only has half an hour for lunch.
He often has a hamburger for dinner.
Harry isn't very healthy.

c Practice saying the sentences.

d ➤ **p.166 Sound Bank.** Look at the typical spellings for this sound.

4 READING & SPEAKING

a Work in pairs. Check (✓) five things that you think help people to live to be a hundred. Then read the article to check.

- ☐ They have a big family.
- ☐ They aren't in a hurry.
- ☐ They sleep eight hours.
- ☐ They have pets.
- ☐ They hardly ever eat meat.
- ☐ They hardly ever take medicine.
- ☐ They often go to the doctor.
- ☐ They work outside.
- ☐ They often see friends.

b Read the article again. In which places are these things important?

1 a special kind of water _____
2 a special kind of food _____
3 the weather _____
4 being positive _____

c Underline new words or phrases in the texts and compare with a partner. Try to guess their meaning. Choose two words to learn from each text.

d Look at the five things in **a** that are in the texts. Are they true for people in your country? Do you think they have a healthy lifestyle?

e ➤ **Communication** *Short life, long life?* *p.101* Interview your partner with the questionnaire. Then change roles.

5 2 52 SONG *Who Wants to Live Forever* ♫

The secrets of a long life

In three areas of the world, a very high number of people live to be 100. Scientists want to know why. What do the three places have in common?

Ecuador

Vilcabamba, a small village in the Andes, is often called "the Valley of Long Life." What's its secret? Firstly, Vilcabamba is not very hot or very cold – the temperature is usually between 64 and 80 degrees Fahrenheit (18 and 27 degrees Celsius), and the air is very clean. Secondly, people work hard in the fields and exercise a lot. Thirdly, their diet is very healthy. They eat a lot of fruit and vegetables, and they hardly ever eat meat or fish. The water they drink, from the river in Vilcabamba, is very rich in minerals. They also have a good social life. In Vilcabamba people say, "The left leg and the right leg help you to be healthy, because they take you to your friends' homes."

Italy

In Ogliastra, a mountain region of Sardinia, one out of every 200 people lives to be 100, and they are usually very healthy, too. Most of the people in the villages work outside in their fields and with their animals. They have a healthy diet, with a lot of vegetables and not much meat or fish. They hardly ever take any medicine. "Life is hard," says Fortunato, who is a shepherd, "but I am never stressed. I never read the newspaper – because I can't read very well."

Japan

People in Okinawa in Japan do not have big meals. They usually just have vegetables and fish, and often eat soy. Okinawans are very active, and they often work until they are 80 or more. But they also relax every day – they see friends and they meditate. Ushi, from Okinawa, is 107. In the evening, she often dances with her daughter. "I want to have a boyfriend," she says. When journalists ask people from Okinawa "What is your secret?" they answer, "We are happy, we are always positive, and we are never in a hurry."

soy a kind of bean typical in Asia

3&4 Review and Check

GRAMMAR

Circle a, b, or c.

1 I _____ live near here.
a not b don't c doesn't

2 My sister _____ three children.
a has b have c haves

3 _____ English?
a Are they speak
b Speak they
c Do they speak

4 _____ your sister work?
a Does b Is c Do

5 **A** Do you work here?
B Yes, I _____.
a work b do c am

6 **A** What _____?
B He's an engineer.
a he does b does he c does he do

7 What languages _____?
a speak you
b do you speak
c you speak

8 Bill is _____.
a Carla's husband
b husband's Carla
c the Carla's husband

9 This is my _____ house.
a parent's b parents' c parent

10 _____ is this book?
a Who's b Who c Whose

11 We usually have lunch _____ two o'clock.
a in b on c at

12 What time do you go _____ bed?
a in b to c at

13 She _____ late for class.
a never is b is never c never does

14 I _____ early.
a usually get up
b get usually up
c get up usually

15 I have an English class _____.
a one a week
b one the week
c once a week

VOCABULARY

a Complete with *at*, *to*, *in*, *on*, or *up*.

1 _____ Saturday night I go to the movies.
2 I'm a student. I'm _____ college, and I live _____ an apartment.
3 What time do you usually wake _____?
4 What time do you go _____ work?

b Complete the phrases with these verbs.

do get go have listen play read take watch wear

1 _____ dressed
2 _____ breakfast
3 _____ a shower
4 _____ your homework
5 _____ shopping
6 _____ the guitar
7 _____ to music
8 _____ TV
9 _____ the newspaper
10 _____ glasses

c Circle the word or phrase that is different.

1	brother	uncle	niece	grandfather
2	husband	mother-in-law	stepsister	aunt
3	musician	doctor	journalist	factory
4	never	early	always	often
5	hour	minute	once	second

d Complete the questions with *How many*, *Who*, *Why*, *What*, or *Where*.

1 _____ do you live?
2 _____ does your father do?
3 _____ is your favorite family member?
4 _____ hours do you work?
5 _____ do you want to learn English?

PRONUNCIATION

a Circle the word with a different sound.

1	ɜr	work	here	earn	turn
2	ʌ	sometimes	cousin	nurse	uncle
3	ɑ	shopping	home	model	doctor
4	ð	father	that	brother	think
5	/ɪz/	lives	watches	finishes	relaxes

b Underline the stressed syllable.

1 be|cause
2 den|tist
3 un|em|ployed
4 re|cep|tio|nist
5 grand|mo|ther

CAN YOU UNDERSTAND THIS TEXT?

a Read the text and fill in the blanks with these verbs in the correct form.

do (x2) drink drive earn eat have (x2)
live read spend travel work

b Read the text again. Is a typical man from your country similar to the typical American man?

c Look at the highlighted words or phrases in the text and guess their meaning.

Is this the typical American man?

Statistics tell us that the typical American man is 34 years old, [1] *lives* in a house that costs $175,400, and is married with two children. He [2]_____ more than 40 hours a week and [3]_____ about $66,000 a year. He [4]_____ 100 hours a year going to and from work. He [5]_____ a Ford car or truck and [6]_____ it 16,408 miles a year.

The typical American man is overweight (he weighs about 190 pounds), and he [7]_____ less than three hours of exercise a week. He usually sleeps between six and half to seven hours a night. He [8]_____ 1.4 hours of housework a day, including cleaning. He [9]_____ two cups of coffee a day, and he [10]_____ approximately 23 pounds of pizza a year.

The typical American man learns 14 new words and [11]_____ less than one book a year. He has five close friends and more than 200 friends on his social networking website. He [12]_____ three TVs, and he watches them at least four hours a day. He [13]_____ about 13 hours online every week.

CAN YOU UNDERSTAND THESE PEOPLE?

VIDEO

2 53 On the street Watch or listen to five people and answer the questions.

James

Anya

Yuri

Wells

Stacey

1 James works between _____ hours a week.
a 20 and 30 b 30 and 40 c 40 and 50

2 Anya's sister is _____.
a 20 b 15 c 16

3 Yuri usually gets up at about _____ on the weekend.
a 6:30 b 8:00 c 8:30

4 Wells _____ plays sports.
a hardly ever b sometimes c often

5 Stacey _____.
a has a cat b has two cats c doesn't like cats

CAN YOU SAY THIS IN ENGLISH?

Do the tasks with a partner. Check (✓) the box if you can do them.

Can you...?

1 ☐ say where you live and what you do
2 ☐ say what time you usually get up and go to bed
3 ☐ say what you do on a typical Monday morning
4 ☐ ask your partner questions with the words below
- What sports...?
- What languages...?
- What kind of music...?
- What TV shows...?

VIDEO **Short movies** an American police officer
Watch and enjoy the movie.

G *can / can't*
V verb phrases: *buy a newspaper*, etc.
P sentence stress

Can she dance? Yes, but she can't sing.

5A Are you the next American Idol?

1 VOCABULARY verb phrases

a Can you remember the verbs for things people do in their free time?

d_____ homework p_____ the guitar
l_____ to music g_____ to the gym
w_____ TV h_____ a coffee

b ➤ **p.158 Vocabulary Bank** *More verb phrases.*

2 GRAMMAR *can / can't*

a Read about Gary's audition for an American TV show where people try to become professional singers. Complete the dialogue with phrases a–e.

a Can you come with me, please?
b I can't remember the words!
c you can have coffee downstairs.
d we can't hear you.
~~e Where can I park?~~

b 2 55 Listen and check.

c 2 56 Now listen to Gary and two other people (Justin and Naomi) sing. Vote for the person you want to be on the show.

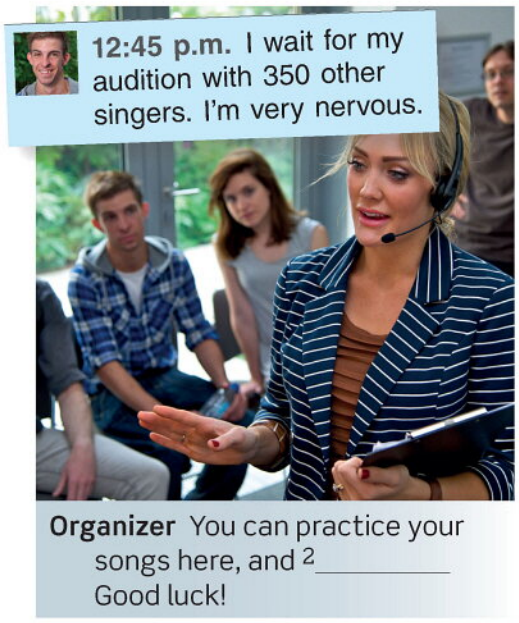
d 2 57 Listen to the judges. What do they say about each singer? How does Gary feel?

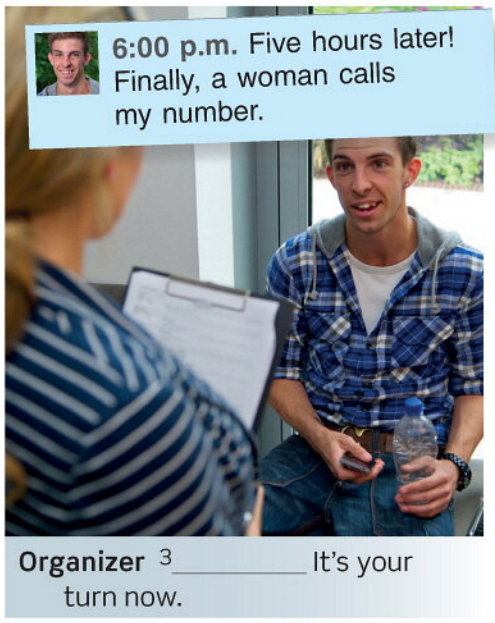
e Look at four sentences with *can / can't*. Match sentences 1–4 with a–d.

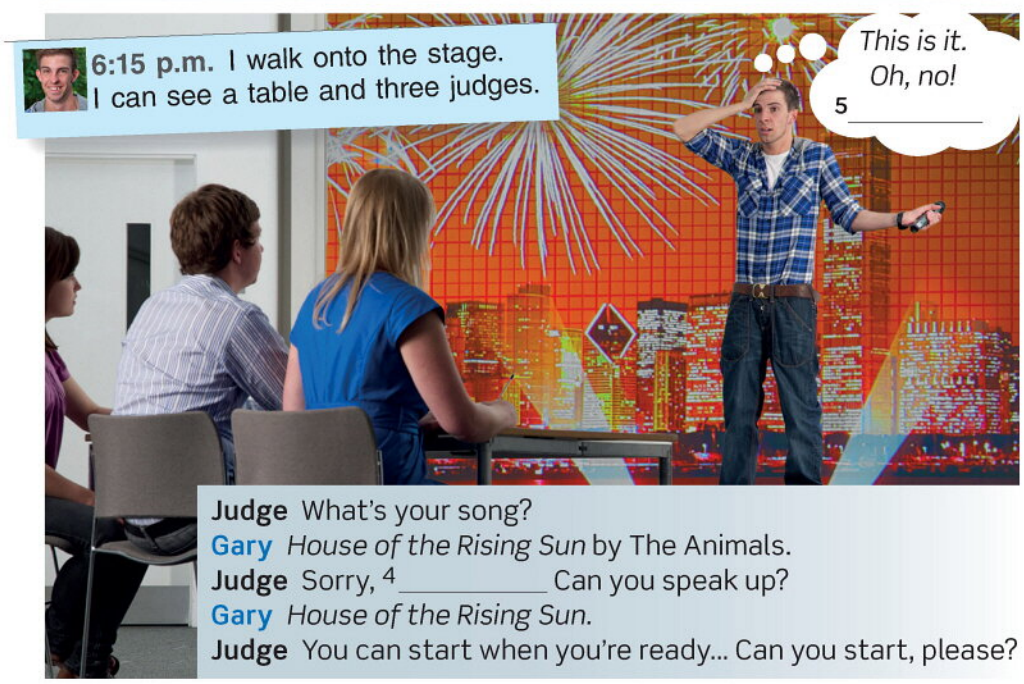
1 ☐ You can't sing!
2 ☐ You can't park here.
3 ☐ Can you come with me, please?
4 ☐ You can have coffee downstairs.

a It isn't OK.
b It's possible.
c Please do it.
d You don't know how.

f ➤ **p.132 Grammar Bank 5A.** Learn more about *can / can't* and practice it.







3 PRONUNCIATION sentence stress

a 2 59 Listen and repeat the dialogues. Copy the rhythm.

A Can you come tomorrow?
B Yes. I can come in the morning.

A Can you play a musical instrument?
B Yes, I can.
A What can you play?
B I can play the guitar.

A Can we park here?
B No, you can't. You can't park here.

b 2 60 Listen. Can you hear the difference?

1 a I can sing.
  b I can't sing.
2 a She can dance very well.
  b She can't dance very well.
3 a He can cook.
  b He can't cook.
4 a I can come to the meeting.
  b I can't come to the meeting.
5 a You can park here.
  b You can't park here.
6 a I can drive.
  b I can't drive.

c 2 61 Listen. Circle **a** or **b**.

4 SPEAKING

a ➤ **Communication** *Do you want to be famous? p.102.* Are you musical, artistic, sporty, or good with words? Interview your partner and complete the survey.

b Change partners and tell your new partner what your first partner can and can't do.

5 READING

a *American Idol* is an American TV show. Look at the title of the article and the photos. With a partner, guess which two of the singers are "winners" today. Then read the article and check.

b Look at the highlighted words and phrases related to pop music. With a partner, guess their meaning. Are the words similar in your language?

c Do you have similar shows to *American Idol* in your country? Can you remember the names of some of the winners? Where are they now?

6 2 62 SONG *Famous* ♫

American Idol winners

WHERE ARE THEY NOW?

"In the future, everyone will be world-famous for fifteen minutes." Andy Warhol

KELLY CLARKSON

WINNER, SEASON 1

And then? Number 1 hits in the US and top ten records in the UK and Australia. Appearances in a US movie and several US TV shows, and two Grammy awards.

Today? She has an album called *Stronger*.

RUBEN STUDDARD

WINNER, SEASON 2

And then? A recording contract with J Records. A number 1 album in 2003 and a number 2 single, *Flying Without Wings*. Later a singer in the play *Ain't Misbehavin'*.

And today? A new recording contract at a small record company.

CARRIE UNDERWOOD

WINNER, SEASON 4

And then? Over seven million copies sold of her album *Some Hearts*. Winner of seven Grammies and sixteen Billboard Music Awards.

And today? She has a recording contract. She gives concerts to audiences around the world. She is also the face of Olay skin products.

LEE DEWYZE

WINNER, SEASON 9

And then? A recording contract with 19 Entertainment and RCA Records. His version of U2's *Beautiful Day* sold about 100,000 copies.

And today? He gives concerts in South East Asia and China, but he doesn't have a recording contract.

G present continuous
V verb phrases
P /ŋ/

What are they doing?

They're having a party.

5B Love your neighbors

1 VOCABULARY & SPEAKING
verb phrases

a 3 2 Read the article about neighbors. Then listen to eight sounds, and write a–h in the boxes.

Noisy neighbors
the top problems!

Sometimes it is difficult to love your neighbors, especially when they make a lot of noise. These are some things people do that cause problems.

- ☐ Their babies cry.
- ☐ Their dogs bark.
- ☐ They talk loudly or argue a lot.
- ☐ They have noisy parties.
- ☐ Their children shout all the time.
- ☐ They have the TV on very loud.
- ☐ They play loud music.
- ☐ They play musical instruments.

b Which do you think are the top three for your class?

c Do the questionnaire with a partner.

Are your neighbors noisy?
Are you a noisy neighbor?

1. Do you live in a house or an apartment?
2. Do you have neighbors...?
   a upstairs
   b downstairs
   c next door
3. Are your neighbors...?
   a very noisy
   b noisy
   c not very noisy
4. Which of the things in **a** do they do? Do they make any other noises?
5. Are you a noisy neighbor? Which of the things in **a** do you or your family do?

2 GRAMMAR present continuous

a 3 3 Look at the picture of the apartment building. Why do you think the couple in apartment 5 can't sleep? Listen and check.

b Listen again and complete the dialogues with verbs from the list.

arguing crying doing getting going
happening having saying shouting (x2)

1
Man Are you awake?
Woman Yes. What's that noise?
M They're _____ a party downstairs.
W Again! What time is it?
M 12:00.

2
W Who's _____?
M People on the street. From the party.
W What's _____? Why are they _____?
M I can't hear.
W Are they _____?
M No, they aren't. They're _____ goodbye. Excuse me! We're trying to sleep. It's 1:00 in the morning!

3
M Oh, no. Now the baby next door is _____!
W What's the time?
M It's 5:00.
W What are you _____? Where are you _____?
M I'm _____ up. I can't sleep with that noise.

c Complete the sentences.

[+] They _____ having a party in apartment 8.
[?] _____ they arguing?
[−] No, they _____ arguing. They're saying goodbye.

d Read the rule and circle the right word.

We use the present continuous (*be* + verb+ *-ing*) to talk about *now* / *every day*.

e ➤ **p.132 Grammar Bank 5B.** Learn more about the present continuous and practice it.

f 3 5 Listen to the sounds. What's happening? Write six sentences.

3 PRONUNCIATION & SPEAKING /ŋ/

a 3 6 Listen and repeat the words and sound.

singer

singing dancing going doing
studying language wrong young
think bank pink thanks

b In pairs, point and ask and answer about the people in the apartment building.

What's he doing? *He's playing the guitar.*
What are they doing?

c ➤ **Communication** *Spot the differences* **A** *p.102* **B** *p.107.* Describe the pictures and find eight differences.

4 LISTENING

a 3 7 Look at the photo and read about Rebecca Flint. Then listen to her talking about noise rules where she lives. Does she think they are a good thing or a bad thing?

Switzerland
The sound of silence

Switzerland has very strict anti-noise rules, especially for people who live in apartments. **Rebecca Flint,** a British woman who lives and works in the Swiss town of Chur, tells us about a life without noise.

b Listen again and complete the sentences.

During the week
1 She can't _____ between 12:30 and 2:00 p.m.
2 She can't _____ without headphones or _____ after 10 p.m.
3 She can't take a _____ or a _____ after 10 p.m.

On Saturdays
4 She can _____, but it can't be loud after 10 p.m.

On Sundays
5 She can't _____ furniture or put a _____ on the wall.
6 She can't _____ the washing machine.

c Do you think these are good or bad rules? Why (not)? Do you have any similar rules in your country? What happens if you make a lot of noise late at night?

G simple present or present continuous?
V the weather and seasons
P places in New York City

Look! It's raining!

It always rains here.

5C Sun and the City

1 VOCABULARY & LISTENING
the weather and seasons

a Look at the photo and answer the questions.

1 What city is it?
2 What monument can you see?
3 What's the weather like? Do you think it's typical weather there?

b ➤ **p.159 Vocabulary Bank** *The weather and dates.* Do part 1.

c 3 10 Listen to a travel guide talking about the weather in New York City. Mark the sentences **T** (true) or **F** (false).

1 It's never very hot or very cold.
2 The normal temperature in the summer is 95° F.
3 It often snows in the winter.
4 In the spring and the fall, the weather changes a lot.
5 It's often foggy in New York City.

d What's the weather like where you live in the different seasons?

2 READING & SPEAKING

a Read the guidebook extract about things to do in New York City, and find the answers to the "Where can you…?" questions. Answer with **BP** (Bryant Park), **CL** (The Cloisters), or **HL** (the High Line).

b Read the text again. Underline three new words in each paragraph. Compare with a partner.

c Talk to a partner.

- Which of the three places would you prefer to go to? Why?
- Where is a good place to go in *your* town…?
  - when it's very cold
  - when it's raining
  - when the sun is shining
- What can you do in these places?

WHAT TO DO IN NEW YORK CITY…

1 WHEN IT'S VERY COLD

Go ice skating at Bryant Park. Bryant Park is a beautiful park in midtown Manhattan, behind the New York Public Library on Sixth Avenue. In the winter, the area behind the library is made into an ice-skating rink. There is a skating school where you can take lessons, and there is a cafe where you can enjoy lunch or dinner after you skate. From October to January, Bryant Park's walking paths become an outdoor shopping center called the Holiday Shops at Bryant Park.

2 WHEN IT'S RAINING

Go to Fort Tryon Park and visit The Cloisters. You can take a subway or a bus from midtown Manhattan and visit The Cloisters (part of the Metropolitan Museum of Art) in Fort Tryon Park in the north of Manhattan. The Cloisters is very popular with adults and children. Adults like this museum because it is full of interesting old art and architecture. Children like this museum because the building looks like a castle! If the sun comes out, walk outside and look at the amazing views of the George Washington Bridge or the New Jersey Palisades across the Hudson River.

3 WHEN THE SUN IS SHINING

Go to the High Line, New York City's newest park. On the west side of Manhattan between Gansevoort Street and West 34th Street, the High Line is a 1-mile public park on old train tracks. The High Line has flower gardens with chairs so you can sit and enjoy the sun. It has beautiful views of the Hudson River and interesting art. It's a perfect place for a picnic in the afternoon or a walk in the evening. It's a beautiful place, and you can't believe that you are in the middle of a busy city.

WHERE CAN YOU…?

1	☐		learn to do something new
2	☐		take a walk in the evening
3	☐	☐	have a very good view
4	☐	☐	see art
5	☐		exercise
6	☐		do some shopping
7	☐		see a bridge
8	☐		see a very interesting building

3 GRAMMAR simple present or present continuous?

a 3 11 Jack and his girlfriend Marisol are at the Top of the Rock at the Rockefeller Center. Cover the conversation and listen. Check (✓) the places they see.

- ☐ Rockefeller Center
- ☐ Central Park
- ☐ Yankee Stadium
- ☐ St. Patrick's Cathedral
- ☐ The Statue of Liberty
- ☐ Chrysler Building

b Listen to the conversation again, and put the verbs in parentheses into the present continuous or the simple present.

M Oh, it's really crowded up here! Let's stand over there. Those people *are moving* (move).
J This is great. Everybody _____ (take) photos, too. Look, that's Central Park.
M Where? Oh, yes. I can see it. Where's the Brooklyn Bridge?
J It's over there. And look at Yankee Stadium. A baseball game is on!
M How do you know?
J Because the stadium lights _____ (shine). The lights only _____ (shine) when there's a baseball game on.

J I _____ (love) the view of the Hudson River with the Statue of Liberty and Ellis Island.
M Me, too. Go and stand there. I _____ (want) to take a photo of you.
J OK. Make sure you get the Chrysler Building, too.
M I think it _____ (start) to rain. Oh, yes, look. It _____ (rain).
J It always _____ (rain) when we're sightseeing!
M And it's windy, too. Let's go back inside.

M Quick, the elevator door _____ (open). Let's go.

c Read the conversation again, and focus on the verbs *shine* and *rain*. When do we use the simple present? When do we use the present continuous?

d ➤ **p.132 Grammar Bank 5C.** Learn more about the simple present and present continuous and practice them.

e ➤ **Communication** *What do you do? What are you doing now?* **A** *p.103* **B** *p.107.*

4 PRONUNCIATION places in New York City

a 3 13 Place names in New York City are sometimes difficult for visitors to pronounce and understand. Listen. Underline the stressed syllable in the **bold** words.

Cen|**tral** Park the **Broo**|**klyn** Bridge the **Sta**|**tue** of **Li**|**ber**|**ty** **E**|**llis Is**|**land**
St. **Pa**|**trick's Ca**|**the**|**dral** **Ro**|**cke**|**fe**|**ller Cen**|**ter** the **Hud**|**son Ri**|**ver**
Yan|**kee Sta**|**di**|**um** **Wa**|**shing**|**ton** Square Park Grand **Cen**|**tral Ter**|**mi**|**nal**

b Listen again and repeat the names.

c Practice with a partner. Imagine you are in a taxi.

Where do you want to go? / *To Grand Central Terminal, please.*

5 WRITING

a Are social networking sites, e.g., Twitter or Facebook, popular in your country? What kind of people use them? Do you or your friends use them?

b ➤ **p.113 Writing** *Social networking.* Write Facebook posts to say what you are doing on vacation.

Practical English In a clothing store

EPISODE 3

1 VOCABULARY clothes

a Match the words and pictures.

- ☐ a jacket /ˈdʒækət/
- ☐ jeans /dʒinz/
- ☐ a shirt /ʃərt/
- ☐ a T-shirt /ˈtiʃərt/
- ☐ a skirt /skərt/
- ☐ shoes /ʃuz/
- ☐ a sweater /ˈswɛtər/
- ☐ pants /pænts/

b 3 14 Listen and check. Practice saying the words.

2 VIDEO MEETING ON THE STREET

a 3 15 Watch or listen to Jenny and Rob. What problem does Rob have?

b Watch or listen again. Complete the sentences.

1 Rob has a _____ for Jenny.
2 Jenny has another meeting with _____.
3 Rob has an interview in _____ minutes.
4 Jenny's meeting is at nine _____.
5 Rob needs to buy a new _____.
6 They go to a clothing _____.
7 Jenny needs to answer her _____.

c 3 16 Look at the information box. Listen and repeat the phrases.

Apologizing

I'm sorry.	That's OK.
I'm so sorry.	Don't worry.
I'm really sorry.	No problem.

d Cover the box. In pairs, practice apologizing and responding.

3 VIDEO BUYING CLOTHES

a 3 17 Watch or listen to Rob buying a shirt. Answer the questions.

1 What size does Rob want?
2 Does he try it on?
3 How much is the shirt?

b Watch or listen again. Complete the **You Hear** phrases.

You Hear	You Say
Can I _____ you?	Yes, what size is this shirt?
Let's see. It's a small. What _____ do you need?	A medium.
This is a _____.	Thanks. Where can I try it on?
The changing _____ are over there.	Thank you.
_____ is it?	It's fine. How much is it?
It's £44.99.	

c 3 18 Watch or listen and repeat the **You Say** phrases. Copy the rhythm.

Saying prices in the US
$5.00 = five dollars
$5.50 = Five dollars and fifty-five cents, five-fifty
50¢ = fifty cents

Saying prices in the UK
£5.00 = five pounds
£5.50 = fifty five pounds
50p = fifty pence

Sizes
Sizes S = small, M = medium, L = large, XL = extra large

d Practice the dialogue with a partner.

e In pairs, role-play buying clothes.

A (book open) You are the salesperson. Start with *Can I help you?*

B (book closed) You are the customer. Buy a T-shirt, a jacket, or jeans.

f Change roles.

4 VIDEO JENNY'S ON THE PHONE

a 3 19 Watch or listen and mark the sentences **T** (true) or **F** (false).

1 Jenny is talking to Eddie.
2 She says she doesn't like London.
3 She says she likes the people in the office.
4 Jenny is standing outside the store.
5 Eddie thinks that Rob is her boss.
6 Jenny loves Rob's new shirt.

b Watch or listen again. Say why the **F** sentences are false.

c Look at the **Social English phrases**. Who says them: **J**enny, **R**ob, or **E**ddie?

Social English phrases

It's so cool!	I have to go.
Right now?	Have fun!
Don't be silly!	What's wrong?
Wait a minute.	No way!

American and British English
store = American English
shop = British English
[nine]-thirty = American English
half past [nine] = British English

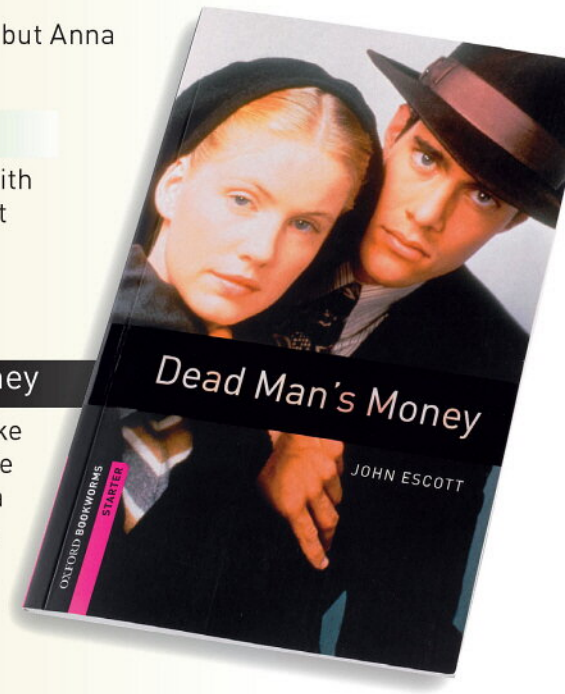
d 3 20 Watch or listen and check. Do you know what they are in your language?

e Watch or listen again and repeat the phrases.

Can you...?
- ☐ apologize
- ☐ buy clothes
- ☐ say prices

G object pronouns: *me, you, him*, etc.
V phone language
P /aɪ/, /i/, and /ɪ/

6A Reading in English



Red Roses

"Who is the man with the roses in his hand?" thinks Anna. "I want to meet him."
"Who is the girl with the guitar?" thinks Will. "I like her. I want to meet her."
But they do not meet.
"There are lots of men," says Anna's friend Vicki, but Anna can't forget Will. And then one rainy day...

Sally's Phone

Sally is always running, and she has her phone with her all the time: at home, on the train, at work, at lunchtime, and at the stores.
But then one afternoon, suddenly she has a different phone...and it changes her life.

Dead Man's Money

When Cal Dexter rents one of the Blue Lake Cabins, he finds $3,000 – under the floor! He doesn't know it, but it is the money from a bank robbery. A dead man's money.
"Do I take it to the police?" he thinks.
But three more people want the money, and two of them are dangerous.
Can Cal stop them?

1 GRAMMAR object pronouns

a Look at the three book covers and read the information that tells you what the book is about. Answer the questions with *Red Roses* (**RR**), *Sally's Phone* (**SP**), or *Dead Man's Money* (**DMM**).

Which book...?

1 ____ is a love story
2 ____ takes place in the US
3 ____ is about a person who is stressed
4 ____ is about a man in a difficult situation
5 ____ is about a person who is romantic
6 ____ has a gadget that is important

b Look at the highlighted words in the texts. Who do they refer to?

him = the man with the roses

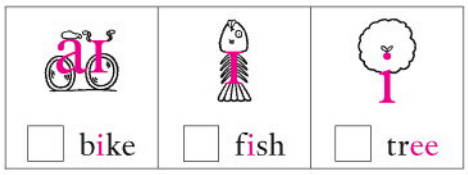
c ➤ **p.134 Grammar Bank 6A.** Learn more about object pronouns and practice them.

d 3 22 Listen and say the sentences with a pronoun instead of the name(s).

I like Anna. *I like her.*

2 PRONUNCIATION /aɪ/, /i/, and /ɪ/

a 3 23 Say the three groups of words and match them to a sound picture. Listen and check.



1 him it his ring finish pick
2 he she me meet read leave
3 I my buy smile nice tonight

b 3 24 Listen. Can you hear the difference?

1 a he's	b his		4 a leave	b live	
2 a me	b my		5 a this	b these	
3 a it	b eat		6 a we	b why	

c 3 25 Listen and check (✓) the word you hear.

d 3 26 Listen to this love story. Practice telling it.

They live in a big city.
He works in an office, she's a writer.
She meets him in the gym. She likes his smile.
He thinks she loves him. He buys her a ring.
But finally, she says goodbye.

3 READING & LISTENING

a 3 27 Read and listen to an extract from *Sally's Phone*. Answer the questions.

CHARACTERS:
- **Sally**, a young woman
- **Claire**, Sally's friend from work
- **Andrew**, Sally's boyfriend
- **Paul**, a young man
- **Katharine**, Paul's sister

1 Where are Claire and Sally?
2 Why doesn't Sally buy the skirt immediately?
3 What do they do when they finish shopping?
4 Why does she call her mother?
5 What is Paul doing when Sally is talking to her mother?
6 What happens when he stands up?
7 Do they go out of the cafe together?

b Read the extract again. With a partner guess the meaning of the highlighted verbs.

c 3 28 Read and listen to the next part of the story. Why are Paul and Sally having problems?

Pronouns and possessive adjectives
When you read, be careful with different kinds of pronouns and possessive adjectives, e.g., *he*, *his*, *him*, etc. Make sure you know who (or what) they refer to.

d Read the extract again. With a partner, say who the highlighted pronouns and possessive adjectives refer to.

Paul wants to call his mother. — *his = Paul's*

e Underline words or phrases in the extract about phones or making calls, e.g., *rings*, *answers the phone*, etc.

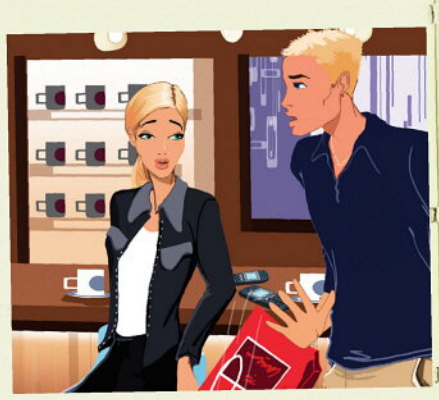
f What do you think happens in the end?

Reading in English
Reading Graded Readers, e.g., the Oxford Bookworms series, helps you to learn and remember vocabulary and grammar. Buy or borrow a Starter level book (with a CD if possible).

4 SPEAKING

➤ **Communication** *Reading in English p.103.*
Interview your partner.

Lunchtime



It is one o'clock. Sally and Claire are looking at skirts.

"Do you like this one, Sally?" Claire says.
"Yes, it's beautiful, but I never wear red."
"Do you like red?" Claire asks.
"Yes, I do – but Andrew doesn't."
"Well," Claire says, "it's a beautiful skirt. You like red. What do you want to do?"
Sally buys the skirt.

Claire goes back to work, but Sally wants a coffee. She goes into a cafe. She buys a coffee and sits down. Then she calls her mother.

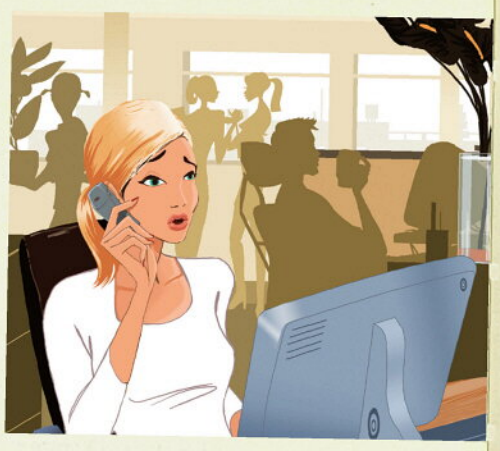
"Hi, Mom. I have a new skirt – it's beautiful. I want to wear it tonight."
"What color is it?"
"It's red."
"That's nice. Red is a good color for you," says her mother.

Next to Sally, Paul is finishing his coffee. He calls his friend and talks to him. Then he stands up. The bag with the red skirt falls on the floor.

"Oh! I'm sorry," Paul says. "That's OK," Sally says. He puts down his phone and picks up the bag. "Here's your bag."
"Thank you." She smiles.
"What a nice smile!" Paul thinks.

Paul picks up his phone and goes out of the cafe. Sally finishes her coffee. She picks up her bag and her phone, and goes back to work.

Afternoon



Paul is in his office.

A phone rings.
"What's that noise?" Paul thinks.

He answers the phone. It is Andrew.

"Hello, Sally?"
"It isn't Sally, it's Paul."
"Paul? Paul who? Where's Sally?"
"Who's Sally? There's no Sally here."
"Huh!"
Andrew finishes the call.

Paul wants to call his mother. He finds "Mom" on the phone, and presses the button.

"Hello, Mom. It's Paul."
"Paul? Who's Paul? I'm not Paul's mom. I'm Sally's mom."
"What's happening?" Paul thinks.
"What number is that?" he asks.
"It's 0783 491839."
"I'm very sorry," Paul says. "It's the wrong number."
"That's OK," Sally's mom says. "What a nice voice!" she thinks.

Sally is at work.

Ring ring!
She answers the phone.
"Hello, is Paul there?"
"No, I'm sorry, this is..."
"Can you give a message to him? This is his sister Katharine. There's a party at my house tonight. It's my birthday."
"But I..."
"Eight o'clock – OK. Bye."

G *like* + (verb + *-ing*)
V the date; ordinal numbers
P consonant clusters; saying the date

I love reading. What kind of books do you like?

6B Times we love

1 VOCABULARY & PRONUNCIATION the date

a Number the months 1–6.

- [ ] April
- [ ] February
- [ ] January
- [ ] June
- [ ] March
- [ ] May

b ➤ **p.159 Vocabulary Bank** *The weather and dates.* Do part 2.

> **Ordinal numbers *first*, *fourth*, etc.**
> Some ordinal numbers can be difficult to say because they end in two or more consonant sounds, e.g., si**xth** /sɪksθ/.

c 3 31 Listen and repeat the ordinal numbers. Then practice saying them.

fifth sixth eighth twelfth

d 3 32 How do you say these dates? Listen and check.

3/1 11/2 5/3 6/4
1/5 7/6 9/12 10/17
8/20 2/23 4/28 12/31

e Listen again and repeat the dates. Copy the rhythm.

f What days are holidays in your country?

g Ask the other students in your class *When's your birthday?* Does anyone have the same (or nearly the same) birthday as you?

2 READING

a Read the first part of the text. What's special about the third Monday in January and the third Friday in June?

Favorite Times

The third Monday in January is the most depressing day of the year, says psychologist Dr. Cliff Arnall, who calls it Blue Monday. Why? Because it's winter, the weather is usually gray and cold, the days are dark, and Monday is the first day of the working week. People are also often short of money after the holidays, and some people feel bad after breaking their New Year resolutions. And the happiest day of the year? "The third Friday in June," says Dr. Arnall. And it's easy to see why – it's summer, it's warm outside, the evenings are light, and the weekend starts now!

We asked our readers about the days and times during the year that make them feel good.

1 What's your favorite time of day? Why?
2 What's your favorite day of the week? Why?
3 What's your favorite month? Why?
4 What's your favorite season? Why?
5 What's your favorite holiday? Why?

b Read the questions and Joe's and Rose's answers and complete them with phrases a–f.

a every week is different
b I like making plans
c I hate getting up early
d I love cooking
e the days are long
f I like being awake

c Look at the highlighted words and phrases and guess their meaning.

Joe 24

1 Ten thirty at night. Because it's the time of day when I can really relax.
2 Saturday. Because [1]_____ during the week, and Saturday is the first day when I can stay in bed until 12 if I want!
3 August. Because my birthday is in August and I'm usually on vacation.
4 The summer. Because the weather's good, [2]_____, and people are in a good mood.
5 January 1st. Because it's the start of a new year, and [3]_____.

Rose 35

1 Early morning. Because [4]_____ when other people are asleep, and the light is beautiful.
2 It depends. Because [5]_____!
3 May. Because the world is pale green, and asparagus is in season!
4 Fall. Because the leaves are red and yellow, and it's a time for a lot of wonderful fruit and vegetables. [6]_____!
5 Fourth of July. Because I love fireworks, and I always watch them at night with my family.

asparagus

fireworks

New Year resolutions promises we make on December 31st, e.g., to eat less or exercise more in the new year
Fourth of July a holiday in July celebrating US independence

3 LISTENING

a 3 33 Listen to Martin answering the questions in *Favorite Times*. Complete column 1.

1 What's your favorite...?	2 Why?
time of day:	
during the week _____	_____
on the weekend _____	_____
day of the week _____	_____
month _____	_____
season _____	_____
holiday _____	_____

b Listen again and complete column 2.

4 GRAMMAR *like* + (verb + *-ing*)

a Complete the chart with a verb from the list.

don't like hate don't mind like love

I _____
I _____
I _____
I _____
I _____

b What form of the verb follows *like*, *love*, *don't mind*, and *hate*?

c ➤ p.134 Grammar Bank 6B. Learn more about *like* + (verb + *-ing*) and practice it.

5 SPEAKING & WRITING

a Write a verb or verb phrase for each picture. Use the *-ing* form of the verb.

b In pairs, ask and answer about each activity.

A *Do you like reading?* **B** *Yes, I love it.*

A *What writers do you like?* **B** *I like John Grisham. What about you?*

c Interview your partner with the five questions from *Favorite Times* in **2**.

d Write an article called *My favorite times*. Add photos or drawings if you can. Use the texts in **2** as a model.

G review: *be* or *do*?
V music
P /y/

What kind of music do you like?

R&B and hip hop.

6C Music is changing their lives

1 VOCABULARY music

a 3 35 Listen and number the kinds of music 1–9. Can you name any other kinds of music in English?

☐ hip hop ☐ rock ☐ classical ☐ Latin ☐ jazz ☐ reggae /ˈrɛɡeɪ/ ☐ blues ☐ heavy metal ☐ R&B

b What kind of music do / don't you like? *I like rock, but I don't like R&B.*

c Do the music quiz in small groups.

MUSIC QUIZ

1 What kind of music are these people famous for?

a Beyoncé
b Louis Armstrong
c Jay-Z
d Yehudi Menuhin
e Queen
f Bob Marley

2 Where are they from? Match the singers and bands to their countries.

a	☐ Coldplay	1	Canada
b	☐ Rihanna	2	Ireland
c	☐ Placido Domingo	3	Britain
d	☐ Black Eyed Peas	4	Barbados
e	☐ U2	5	Spain
f	☐ Michael Bublé	6	the US

3 Whose music do you hear in the soundtrack of these movies / shows?

a We Will Rock You
b This Is It
c Yellow Submarine
d Amadeus
e Mamma Mia!

2 GRAMMAR review: *be* or *do*?

a Circle the right words.

1 What kind of music *are you* / *do you* listen to?
2 *I'm not* / *I don't* like hip hop.
3 *Are you* / *Do you* play in a band?
4 She *isn't* / *doesn't* listening to you.
5 Where *are* / *do* the Black Eyed Peas from?

b ➤ p.134 Grammar Bank 6C. Learn more about *be* and *do* and practice them.

c 3 38 Listen and make the questions.

They're Chinese. *Are they Chinese?*

He plays the guitar. *Does he play the guitar?*

3 PRONUNCIATION /y/

a 3 39 Listen and repeat the words and sound.

y yacht	yes you yellow young your yoga year

Hidden /y/ sound

Some words with the /u/ sound (spelled with *u* or *ew*) also have a /y/ sound before the /u/, e.g., music /ˈmyuzɪk/, NOT ~~/ˈmuzɪk/~~.

b 3 40 Listen and repeat the sentences. Then practice saying them.

1 That young musician plays beautiful music.
2 He usually uses a yellow pencil.
3 The yoga students start in January this year.

4 SPEAKING

a Read the music questionnaire. Complete the questions with *are* or *do*. Complete question 6 with the names of six musicians / bands you either love or hate.

Music questionnaire

1 _____ you a big fan of a singer or band?
_____ you a member of a fan club or forum?

2 How often _____ you...?
- go to concerts or gigs
- go dancing
- watch MTV (or other music channels)
- download music
- look for song lyrics on the Internet
- sing karaoke

3 How _____ you usually listen to music?
- on the radio
- online
- on your iPod/MP3 player
- on CDs

4 What kind of music _____ you like listening to when you are...?
- sad
- happy
- stressed

5 _____ you listening to a particular song or piece of music a lot right now?

6 What _____ you think of...?

Male musicians

Female musicians

Bands

Giving opinions

I like him.
I don't like her.
I think they're great / fantastic.
OK / not bad.
awful / terrible.

b Take turns interviewing a partner with the music questionnaire. Ask for more information. Do you have similar musical tastes?

5 READING

a Do you play a musical instrument? What? Do you enjoy playing it?

b Read the article. How is music changing the lives of young people in Venezuela?

Music is changing their lives

Inside the concert hall a top orchestra is playing brilliantly. Their young conductor, Gustavo Dudamel, is one of the best in the world. But we are not in New York City, London, or Vienna. We are in Caracas, the capital of Venezuela. The orchestra is the Simón Bolívar Symphony Orchestra of Venezuela, and its conductor and young musicians come from the poorest families in the country. They are a product of *El Sistema* ("the system" in Spanish), a project started in 1975 to save poor children from crime and drug addiction through classical music.

Today, more than 270,000 young Venezuelans from the *barrios* (poor areas in Caracas) are learning to play instruments. They practice Beethoven and Brahms instead of learning to steal and shoot. Gisella, aged 11, says "I am learning the viola because I want to escape from the *barrio*. In Venezuela, now it's cooler to like Strauss than salsa." Edgar, 22, who plays in the orchestra, says "sometimes when we finish late, I stay in town – it's dangerous to go home at that time. But now, most of my friends are here. We are a family as well as an orchestra."

Dudamel is now also the Music Director of the Los Angeles Philharmonic, one of the US's top orchestras. But he returns frequently to Caracas to conduct. "I miss my orchestra, but I will never leave them. They're family," he says.

c Look at the highlighted words. With a partner, guess their meaning.

d Do you know of any other projects to help poor children?

6 WRITING

➤ **p.113 Writing** *An informal email.* You are going to write a similar email to a pen pal.

7 3 41 SONG *Lemon Tree*

5&6 Review and Check

GRAMMAR

Circle a, b, or c.

1 She _____ the piano.
a can play b can to play c cans play

2 _____ come tonight?
a Do you can b You can c Can you

3 **A** What's that noise?
B _____ a party upstairs.
a They having
b They're having
c They're have

4 The weather is cold, but _____ raining.
a it doesn't b it isn't c it not

5 **A** What _____ doing?
B I'm studying for an exam.
a are you b do you c you are

6 Look! The stadium's lights _____.
a shine b shines c are shining

7 The museum _____ at 2:00 on Mondays.
a closes b is closing c close

8 **A** What _____?
B I'm a nurse.
a are you doing b do you do c do you

9 Our son always calls _____ every day.
a we b us c our

10 Is your sister at home? I need to speak to _____.
a him b she c her

11 Do you like _____ housework?
a doing b do making

12 I don't mind _____ early.
a get up b getting up c to get up

13 **A** _____ hungry?
B Yes. What's for dinner?
a Do you b Have you c Are you

14 What song _____ listening to?
a are you b do you c you are

15 What time _____ she usually go to bed?
a do b is c does

VOCABULARY

a Complete the phrases with these verbs.

buy call dance forget have hear play run take tell

1 _____ a noise
2 _____ a musical instrument
3 _____ somebody's birthday
4 _____ a present for your mother
5 _____ somebody a secret
6 _____ a party
7 _____ photos
8 _____ a marathon
9 _____ a taxi
10 _____ a tango

b Complete the sentences with *for*, *in*, *on*, *to*, or *at*.

1 She goes to bed _____ about eleven o'clock.
2 They have their TV _____ very loud.
3 I can't find the keys. Can you look _____ them?
4 I need to talk _____ the doctor.
5 I'm coming! Wait _____ me!
6 My birthday's _____ July.
7 Their wedding is _____ March 2nd.

c Circle the word that is different.

1	cloudy	wet	snowy	shine
2	shine	rain	blow	fog
3	fall	season	spring	winter
4	first	third	seven	twelfth
5	twenty-second	twenty-five	twenty-one	twenty-three
6	May	Sunday	December	June
7	day	week	minute	month
8	band	rock	reggae	jazz

PRONUNCIATION

a Circle the word with a different sound.

1	ŋ	driving	wrong	change	long
2		ice	windy	spring	winter
3	ʊ	snow	go	now	cold
4	θ	third	the	tenth	Thursday
5	/yu/	music	January	beautiful	blues

b Underline the stressed syllable.

1 neigh|bor 2 re|mem|ber 3 Ju|ly 4 Fe|bru|ar|y 5 cla|ssi|cal

CAN YOU UNDERSTAND THIS TEXT?

a Read the text and answer the questions.

Where is a good place to go in Walla Walla if you want to…?

1 have lunch or dinner
2 hear stories about the past
3 buy a present
4 stay for a night
5 see a show

b Look at the highlighted words or phrases in the text and guess their meaning.

c Read the text again and underline the thing you would like to do most.

Walla Walla, Washington
–the friendly city

In 2011, a US newspaper had a competition for friendly towns in the US, and Walla Walla in Washington was the winner. Jason and Nikki Wynn went to the city for the competition, and they say it's a happy town with friendly people. Local people greet visitors with smiles, and if you get lost on Main Street after shopping, ask people for directions. They are happy to help you.

There's a lot to do in Walla Walla. For example, you can ride a bike around the city or, in the summer, go on a hot-air balloon ride. It's a great view! In the city, you can see an entertaining show at the Little Theater of Walla Walla and visit the Fort Walla Walla Museum. The tour guides there are very friendly and can tell you interesting stories about Walla Walla's past.

If you want to stay for a night, the Marcus Whitman Hotel is the place to stay. It's a beautiful, historic hotel in downtown Walla Walla, and the hotel workers are, of course, friendly and helpful. But the best thing about the hotel is the food. They make it with vegetables from the hotel's garden.

In general, the food is good, there are lots of things to see, and the people are great. It's no surprise that Walla Walla won the competition!

VIDEO CAN YOU UNDERSTAND THESE PEOPLE?

3 42 **On the street** Watch or listen to five people and answer the questions.

Yoni

Yvonne

Tiffany

Ben

Anya

1 Which sentence is true?
   a Yvonne can't play the piano.
   b Yoni can play a musical instrument.
   c Yvonne can play the piano and the harp.
2 Tiffany _____.
   a has noisy neighbors
   b doesn't have noisy neighbors
   c is the noisy neighbor
3 Yoni's favorite month is in the _____.
   a winter b fall c summer
4 Ben doesn't like _____.
   a classical music b heavy metal c rock music
5 Right now, Anya is reading _____.
   a a romantic novel b a biography c a trilogy

CAN YOU SAY THIS IN ENGLISH?

Do the tasks with a partner. Check (✓) the box if you can do them.

Can you…?

1 ☐ say two things you can do well, and two things you can't do (e.g., cook)
2 ☐ say three things you can or can't do in class (e.g., use your cell phone)
3 ☐ say what kind of books you usually read, and what you are reading right now
4 ☐ ask your partner questions with the words below
   … tired ? Why?
   … like watching sports on TV? Which sports?
   … enjoying your English classes?
   … play a musical instrument? Which one?

VIDEO **Short movies** Williamsburg, New York
Watch and enjoy the movie.

G simple past of *be*: *was / were*
V word formation: *paint* > *painter*
P sentence stress

Who was she? She was a famous actress.

7A At the National Portrait Gallery

1 GRAMMAR *was / were*

a Read about the National Portrait Gallery in Washington, D.C. and answer the questions.

1 Where is it?
2 What can you see there?
3 When is it open?
4 How much does it cost?

b 3 43 Look at a photo that is in the National Portrait Gallery. Cover the dialogue and listen. Who are the two people in the photo?

A I love that photo. Who are they?
B I think it's President Ronald Reagan and his wife Nancy. Let's see. Yes, that's right.
A When was he president?
B He was president from 1981 to 1989. He was an actor, too.
A Really? What movies was he in?
B He was in *Dark Victory* with Bette Davis, a very famous actress in the 1930s and 1940s. He was also in movies with stars like Errol Flynn, Clark Gable, and Ginger Rogers.
A Was Nancy an actress, too?
B Yes, she was. They were in a movie together in 1957.
A Were Ronald and Nancy happy?
B I think they were very happy. They were together all their lives.

c Listen again and read the dialogue. Then fill in the blanks.

Simple present	Simple past
He is the president.	He _____ the president.
She is an actress.	She _____ an actress.
They are happy.	They _____ happy.

d ➤ **p.136 Grammar Bank 7A.** Learn more about *was / were* and practice it.

The National Portrait Gallery

The National Portrait Gallery has a collection of portraits of famous American men and women from the 17th century to the present day. The portraits are both paintings and photographs. The National Portrait Gallery is in Washington, D.C., a short walk from the National Mall. It is open daily and admission is free.

2 PRONUNCIATION & SPEAKING
sentence stress

a 3 45 Listen and repeat. Copy the rhythm.

[+] I was at a **party**. She was **born** in **Mexico**.
My **parents** were **angry**.

[−] He **wasn't** at **home**. They **weren't** very **happy**.

[?] **When** were you **born**? **Where** was the **hotel**?
Was it **expensive**? **No**, it **wasn't**.
Were they at the **concert**? **Yes**, they **were**.

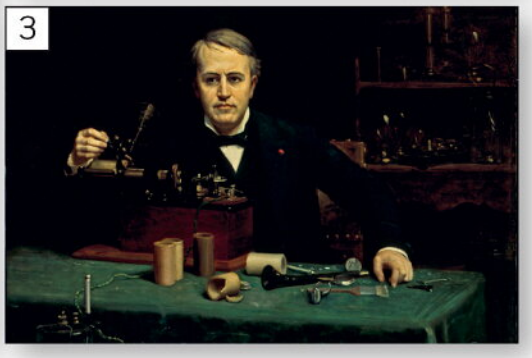
b 3 46 Say the sentences in the simple past.

I'm at home. *I was at home.*

c ➤ **Communication** *Where were you?* **A** *p.103* **B** *p.108*.

3 READING

a Look at three more pictures from the National Portrait Gallery. Do you know who the people are or anything about them?



b 3 47 Read and listen to three audio guide extracts. Check your answers to **a**.

1 Marilyn Monroe was born in Los Angeles, California in 1926. When she was a child, her life was very hard. Her mother was sick, and her father wasn't there very much. Marilyn was a factory worker and a model before she was an actress. Marilyn's three husbands were very important to her during her life. Her first husband was a sailor, the second was a famous baseball player, Joe DiMaggio, and the last was a famous writer, Arthur Miller.

2 Mary Wilson, Diana Ross, and Florence Ballard were born in the 1940s in Detroit, Michigan. Together they were The Supremes, a pop and soul singing group during the 1960s. All three women were very talented singers. In 1965, the Supremes were the first all-female singing group to have a number one album in the US. Their music was popular with everyone—men and women, teens and adults—and it is still popular today.

3 Thomas Edison, an inventor and businessman, was born in Ohio in 1847. At 13, he was an excellent salesperson selling candy and newspapers to train passengers. Later, he was the inventor of the incandescent light bulb, a movie camera, and the phonograph. Edison was also the owner of many companies, and some of them are in business today, e.g., General Electric. He was the loving husband of two wives—Mary Stillwell (1855–1884) and Mina Miller (1865–1947)—and the father of six children.

c Read the texts again and answer the questions.

1 Why was Marilyn's life hard when she was a child?
2 Who were Joe DiMaggio and Arthur Miller?
3 Were there any men in The Supremes?
4 Why is The Supreme's music still popular today?
5 What was Thomas Edison good at when he was a boy?
6 Who was Thomas's second wife?

d Cover the texts. What can you remember?

4 VOCABULARY word formation

a Find words in the texts for people made from these words:

1 act _____ (OR actor)
2 sail _____
3 play _____
4 write _____
5 sing _____
6 business _____
7 design _____
8 invent _____

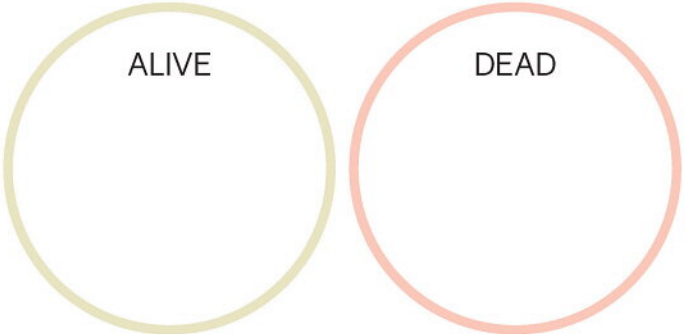
Word building: professions
We often add *-er* or *-or* to a verb, e.g., *writer, actor.*
We often add *-ian, -ist,* or *-man/woman* to a noun, e.g., *musician.*

b Are the words below verbs or nouns? Do you know the words for the people?

1 dance _____
2 compose _____
3 politics _____
4 science _____
5 direct movie _____
_____
6 novel _____
7 sports _____
_____
8 paint _____
9 art _____
10 music _____

c 3 48 Listen and check. Underline the stressed syllable. Practice saying the words.

d Write the names of four famous people in each circle. Ask a partner.



Who's Shakira? — *She's a singer.*

Who was Charles Darwin? — *He was a scientist.*

5 LISTENING & WRITING

a 3 49 Listen to five clues about two famous people. Do you know who they are?

b With a partner, write clues about a famous man and a woman (both dead).

c Read your clues to another pair. Do they know the people?

G simple past: regular verbs
V past time expressions
P *-ed* endings

What did they want to do?

They wanted to go to the match.

7B Chelsea girls

1 READING & LISTENING

a 3 50 Read and listen to the true story about a trip. Number the sentences 1–7.

- [ ] The taxi arrived at the girls' house.
- [ ] They looked out of the window.
- [ ] They chatted and listened to music.
- [1] The girls wanted to go to a match.
- [ ] The taxi stopped in a street with pretty houses.
- [ ] They called a taxi.
- [ ] The taxi driver typed their destination into his GPS.

b 3 51 Listen and check. Do you think they were in London?

c 3 52 Listen to the news story on the radio. Where were they?

d ➤ **Communication** *Stamford Bridge p.103.* Read some tourist information about the place they were in and look at the map.

e Do you think it is easy to make a mistake like this? Whose fault was it?

2 GRAMMAR

simple past: regular verbs

a Read the text again and highlight ten more simple past regular verbs [+], one simple past negative sentence [−], and one simple past question [?].

b In pairs, complete the chart and answer questions 1–3.

Simple present	Simple past
They want to go to the match.	They _____ to go to the match.
They don't talk to the taxi driver.	They _____ to the taxi driver.
Where do you want to go?	Where _____ to go?

1 What letters do you add to a regular verb in the simple past, e.g., *call*?
2 What do you do if the verb ends in *e*, e.g., *type*?
3 What happens to verbs that end with one vowel and one consonant, e.g., *chat*, *stop*?

c ➤ **p.136 Grammar Bank 7B.** Learn more about simple past regular verbs and practice them.

The *taxi* trip

Althorp House

Charles Spencer, Princess Diana's brother, has three daughters, 18-year-old Kitty, and 15-year-old twins Eliza and Amelia. They live in Althorp, a large country house near Northampton, about 85 miles (136 kilometers) north of London.

The Spencer sisters

One of the sisters and her friend wanted to go to a soccer match in London. It was a Premier League match between Chelsea and Arsenal at Stamford Bridge. They called a taxi to take them to London and back. The taxi arrived and the driver typed Stamford Bridge into his GPS. The girls relaxed in the back of the car. They probably chatted, listened to music on their iPods, and texted their friends. They didn't talk to the taxi driver.

Two hours later the taxi stopped. They looked out of the window. It was a street with pretty houses.

The girls were a little surprised, and they asked the taxi driver where they were. "In Stamford Bridge," he said. "Where did you want to go?"

Stamford Bridge Stadium

d Stand up and move around the class. Ask *Did you… yesterday?* questions with the verb phrases below. When somebody answers *Yes, I did*, write his or her name.

YESTERDAY

Find a person who…

- used a GPS _____
- watched a soccer match _____
- chatted online _____
- studied for an exam _____
- texted a friend _____
- arrived at work / school late _____
- listened to the radio _____
- started a new book _____
- worked / studied until late _____
- played a computer game _____

Did you use a GPS yesterday? / *No, I didn't. Did you…?*

3 PRONUNCIATION *-ed* endings

Simple past regular verbs
The *e* in *-ed* is not usually pronounced, and *-ed* is pronounced /d/ or /t/, e.g., *closed* /kloʊzd/, *stopped* /stɑpt/. The *-ed* is pronounced /ɪd/ **only** in verbs that end with the sound /t/ or /d/, e.g., *waited* /ˈweɪtɪd/, *ended* /ˈɛndɪd/.

a 3 54 Listen and repeat the verbs.

1 *-ed* = /d/	2 *-ed* = /t/	3 *-ed* = /ɪd/
called	looked	wanted
arrived	relaxed	chatted
listened	stopped	texted

b 3 55 Look at the verbs in the list. Circle the ones that belong to group 3. Listen and check.

played finished started traveled asked missed
cooked needed watched lived liked typed

c 3 56 Listen to some verb phrases. Make true [+] or [−] sentences about yesterday.

play tennis / *I played tennis yesterday. / I didn't play tennis yesterday.*

4 VOCABULARY & SPEAKING past time expressions

a Number the past time expressions 1–10.

- [ ] yesterday morning
- [ ] last night
- [ ] last month
- [ ] three days ago
- [1] five minutes ago
- [ ] last week
- [ ] last summer
- [ ] the day before yesterday
- [ ] a year ago
- [ ] in 2009

Past time expressions
We say *last week*, *last month* NOT the last week, the last month.

b 3 57 Listen and check. Then listen and repeat.

c Look at the questionnaire below. Tell your partner true sentences with past time expressions. Ask for more information.

I cried at the end of a movie last week. / *Oh, really? What was it?*

When was the last time you…?

- cried at the end of a movie
- traveled by plane
- started a new hobby
- walked more than 5 miles

- booked a flight online
- downloaded a song
- played a sport
- missed an English class

- watched a really good movie
- called a friend
- danced

G simple past: irregular verbs
V *go, have, get*
P sentence stress

What did you do?

We went to a restaurant.

7C A night to remember

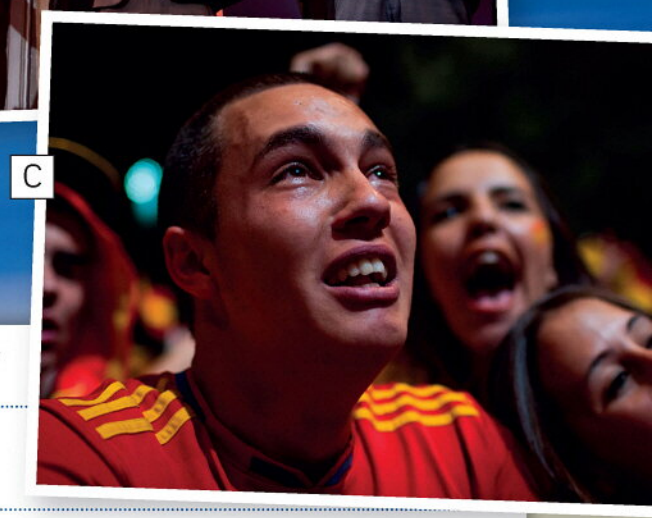
1 READING

a Look at the photos and read the introduction to the article. For each photo, say why you think the night was memorable.

b Read about two people's nights, and match them to a photo.

c Read the texts again and match the questions to their answers in the texts.

- ☐ What time did you get back?
- ☐ What was the weather like?
- ☐ Why was it a memorable night?
- ☐ When was it? Where were you?
- ☐ What did you wear?
- ☐ Who were you with?
- ☐ What did you do?



Why do we remember some nights in our lives?

Is it because we went to a beautiful place, met interesting people, heard wonderful music, or saw a fantastic movie?
We asked people all over the world to tell us about a night that they can never forget...

Maggie from the US

1 It was in February when I went to New York City.

2 I was with my family, and it was my sister's birthday. She wanted to see a Broadway show, and my favorite actor, Nick Jonas, was the star. So my dad got tickets and organized a surprise meeting with Nick after the show.

3 I felt pretty. I wore a black dress and a red coat and warm, black boots.

4 It was a cold and cloudy night.

5 After the show, many people were at the side door. Then a theater worker opened the door and Nick Jonas came out! We were really excited because he spoke to us and said happy birthday to my sister! We took some pictures with Nick, and then he left.

6 We went back to our hotel at 11 p.m.

7 It was an amazing evening! I saw a great show and met my favorite actor. And my sister had a memorable birthday.

Mehmet from Turkey

1 It was last year. I was in Istanbul, where I live.

2 I was with my friends. It was my best friend's birthday.

3 I wore a black T-shirt and blue jeans.

4 It was a hot night, and the water was really warm.

5 We went to a great place called Cezayir. It's an old building with a great restaurant. We had dinner, and after dinner we had a coffee. Then we went to the beach at Florya and swam in the ocean. It was fantastic. The water wasn't very clean, but we didn't mind!

6 After our swim, we were tired and decided to go back, but I couldn't find my car keys! We went back to the beach and we looked everywhere, but it was too dark. In the end, I left the car at the beach and I went home in my friend's car! I got home really late, at 5:00 in the morning.

7 It was a memorable night because we had a fantastic dinner and took a great swim, but also because I lost the car keys – it was my father's car and he was really angry!

2 GRAMMAR simple past: irregular verbs

a Look at the article again and find the past tense of these irregular verbs.

can	could ____	/kʊd/
come	_____	/keɪm/
feel	_____	/fɛlt/
get	_____	/gɑt/
go	_____	/wɛnt/
have	_____	/hæd/
hear	_____	/hərd/
leave	_____	/lɛft/
lose	_____	/lɔst/
meet	_____	/mɛt/
see	_____	/sɔ/
speak	_____	/spoʊk/
swim	_____	/swæm/
take	_____	/tʊk/
wear	_____	/wɔr/

b 3 58 Listen and check. Practice saying the verbs.

c ➤ **p.136 Grammar Bank 7C.** Learn more about simple past irregular verbs and practice them.

d Work in pairs. **A** re-read the text about Maggie. **B** re-read the text about Mehmet.

e ➤ **Communication** *A night to remember* **A** *p.103* **B** *p.108.* Test your partner's memory. Whose night do you think was more fun?

3 LISTENING

a You are going to listen to David from Spain talking about his memorable night. Look at photo **C** from **1**. Where was he? Why was it a memorable night?

b 3 60 Listen and check.

c Listen again. Correct the information.

1 It was on August 11th. *No, it was on July 11th.*
2 He was in Buenos Aires.
3 He watched the match in a hotel room.
4 He wore a Spanish soccer shirt and a yellow scarf.
5 The match was in the evening.
6 There were a lot of American tourists there.
7 After the match, they went to a restaurant downtown.
8 It was very cold that night.
9 He got to the hotel at 4:00 in the morning.

4 VOCABULARY *go, have, get*

a Can you remember these phrases about Mehmet? Write *went*, *had*, or *got*.

1 We ___ to a great place called Cezayir.
2 We ___ dinner, and after dinner we ___ a coffee.
3 Then we ___ to the beach at Florya.
4 I ___ home really late, at 5:00 in the morning.

b ➤ **p.160 Vocabulary Bank** *go, have, get.*

5 PRONUNCIATION sentence stress

a Look at the questions in "A memorable night" below. What words are missing?

b 3 62 Listen and repeat the questions. Copy the rhythm.

6 SPEAKING & WRITING

a Think about a time you had a memorable night. Look at the questions in **5b** and plan your answers.

b Interview your partner about his or her night.

c Write about your night. Answer the questions in **5b**, and use the article in **1** to help you.

7 3 63 SONG *Summer Nights* ♫

Practical English Getting lost

EPISODE 4

1 VIDEO A FREE MORNING

a 3 64 Rob and Jenny are planning what to do on their free morning. Watch or listen once. What is the problem?

b Watch or listen again. Complete the sentences with a word, a name, or a number.

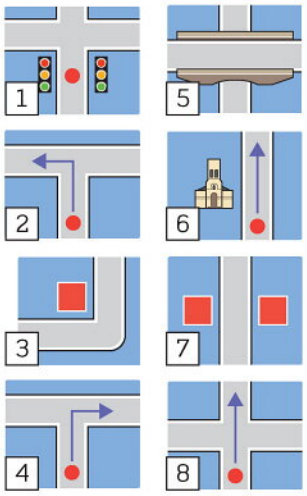
1 Rob suggests that they go _____.
2 He says that they can _____ bikes.
3 _____ calls _____.
4 Rob needs to interview an _____.
5 Rob asks if he can do the interview on _____.
6 Rob and Jenny arrange to meet at _____ o'clock outside the Tate Modern*.

Cultural note
* The Tate Modern is a famous art gallery in London.

2 VOCABULARY directions

a Match the words and pictures.

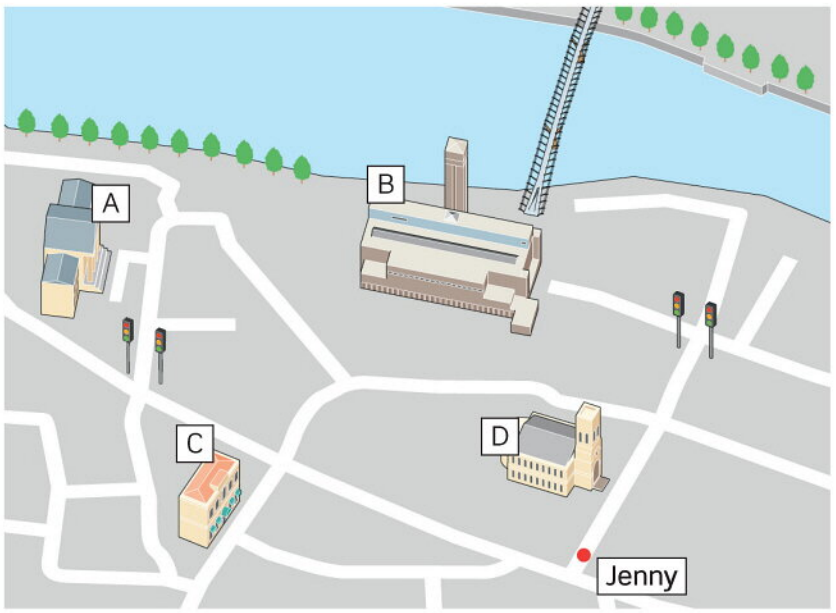
- ☐ on the corner /ˈkɔrnər/
- ☐ at the traffic lights /ˈtræfɪk laɪts/
- ☐ a bridge /brɪdʒ/
- ☐ across (from) /əˈkrɔs/
- ☐ turn left /tərn lɛft/
- ☐ turn right /tərn raɪt/
- ☐ go straight ahead /streɪt əˈhɛd/
- ☐ go past (the church) /pæst/



b 3 65 Listen and check.

3 VIDEO ASKING THE WAY

a 3 66 Jenny is trying to find the Tate Modern. Watch or listen. Is it A, B, C, or D?



b Watch or listen again. Complete the **You Hear** phrases.

You Say	You Hear
Excuse me, please. Where's the Tate Modern?	_____, I don't live here.
Excuse me. Is the Tate Modern near here?	The Tate Modern? It's near here, but I don't know exactly _____. Sorry.
Thank you.	
Excuse me. Can you tell me the way to the Tate Modern, please?	Yes, of course. Go straight on. Go _____ the church. Then turn _____ at the traffic lights. And it's at the end of the street.
Sorry, could you say that again, please?	Yes, go straight on. Go _____ the church. Then turn _____ at the traffic lights. And it's at the end of the street. You can't _____ it!
Thank you.	

c 3 67 Watch or listen and repeat the **You Say** phrases. Copy the rhythm.

d Practice the dialogue with a partner.

Can you...?* or *Could you...?
Can you tell me the way to the Tate Modern?
Could you say that again, please?

We can use *Can you...?* Or *Could you...?* when we want to ask another person to do something.
Could you...? is more polite.

e In pairs, role-play the dialogue. **A** ask for directions to building A (the library). Start with *Excuse me, where's...?* **B** give directions. Then change roles. Ask for directions to building C (the post office).

4 VIDEO JENNY AND ROB GO SIGHTSEEING

a 3 68 Watch or listen to Jenny and Rob. Mark the sentences **T** (true) or **F** (false).

1 The Millennium Bridge is for cars and people.
2 It was the first new bridge over the Thames in 100 years.
3 Rob interviewed the engineer last year.
4 Jenny doesn't like Shakespeare.
5 Daniel calls and invites Jenny to dinner.
6 Jenny accepts the invitation.
7 There's a gift shop on the top floor of the Tate Modern.
8 The Tate Modern was a power station until 1981.

b Watch or listen again. Say why the **F** sentences are false.

c Look at the **Social English phrases**. Who says them: **J**enny, **R**ob, or **D**aniel?

Social English phrases

What a view!	What would you like to visit?
What is there to see?	We could go to the Globe Theatre.
Would you like to meet for lunch?	That's really nice of you.
Maybe another time?	Yes, of course.

American and British English

go straight ahead = American English	*go straight on* = British English
across from =American English	*opposite* = British English

d 3 69 Watch or listen and check. Do you know what they are in your language?

e Watch or listen again and repeat the phrases.

Can you...?
- ☐ ask for and understand directions
- ☐ give simple directions
- ☐ ask someone to do something in a polite way

G simple past: regular and irregular
V irregular verbs
P simple past verbs

8A A murder story

Did you hear anything during the night?

No, I didn't. I was very tired.

1 READING

a Read the back cover of a murder story. Then cover it and look at the photographs. Can you remember who the people are?

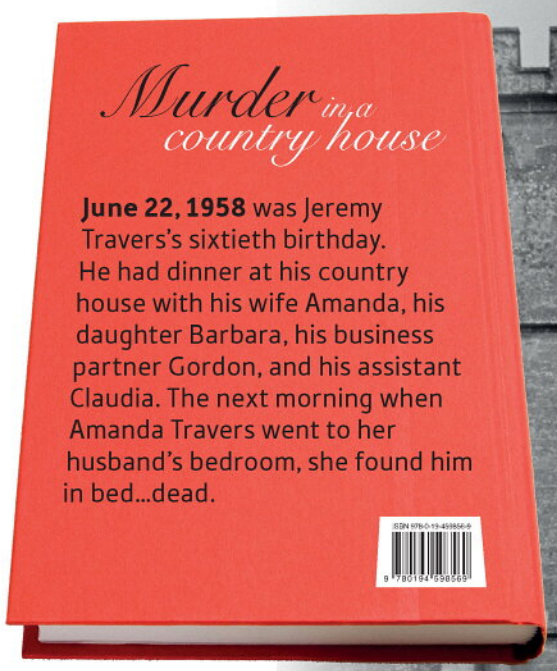
Who's Amanda? *She's Jeremy's wife.*

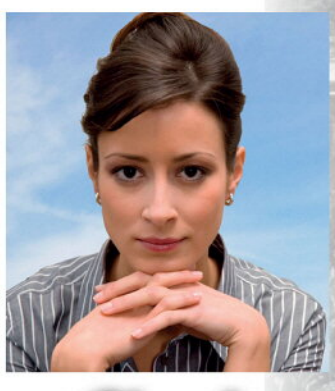
b 4 2 Read and listen to the story. Mark the sentences **T** (true) or **F** (false). Correct the **F** sentences.

1 Somebody killed Jeremy between 12:00 a.m. and 2:00.
2 The detective questioned Amanda in the living room.
3 Jeremy went to bed before Amanda.
4 Amanda and Jeremy slept in the same room.
5 Somebody opened and closed Amanda's door.
6 Amanda got up at 7:00.
7 Amanda didn't love Jeremy.

c Look at the highlighted irregular verbs in the story. What are the base forms?

1 was = be




Claudia

Gordon

2 PRONUNCIATION
simple past verbs

a 4 3 Listen to the pronunciation of these verbs in the simple past.

sat could found heard read
said saw took wore

b 4 4 Now match the verbs in **a** with a word below that rhymes. Listen and check. Practice saying the words.

book _____	four _____
round _____	draw _____
bird _____	cat _____
good _____	bed _____ _____

c 4 5 Find and underline nine simple past **regular** verbs in the story. How do you pronounce them? Listen and check.

Detective Granger arrived at about 9:00. He [1]was a tall man with a big black mustache. Amanda, Barbara, Claudia, and Gordon [2]were in the living room. The detective [3]came in.

"Mr. Travers died between midnight last night and seven o'clock this morning," he [4]said. "Somebody in this room killed him." He looked at them one by one, but nobody [5]spoke.

"Mrs. Travers, I want to talk to you first. Come into the library with me, please."

Amanda Travers followed the detective into the library and they [6]sat down.

"What did your husband do after dinner last night?"

"When we finished dinner, Jeremy said he was tired and he [7]went to bed."

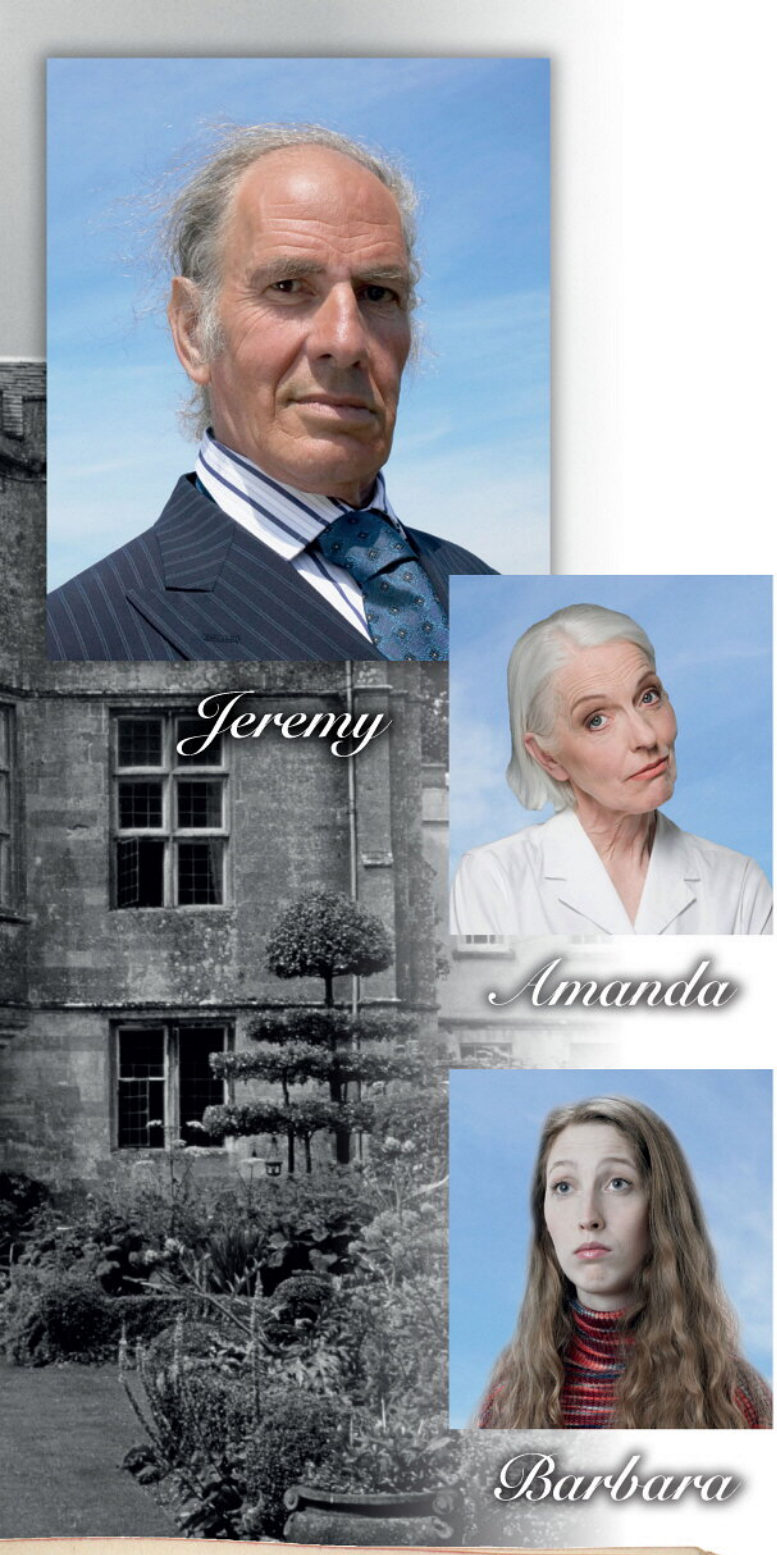
"Did you go to bed then?"

"No, I didn't. I went for a walk in the yard."

"What time did you go to bed?"

"About quarter to twelve."

"Was your husband asleep?"



"I don't know, Detective. We…we [8]slept in separate rooms. But I [9]saw that his door was closed."

"Did you hear anything when you were in your room?"

"Yes, I [10]heard Jeremy's bedroom door. It opened. I [11]thought it was Jeremy. Then it closed again. I [12]read in bed for half an hour and then I went to sleep."

"What time did you get up this morning?"

"I [13]got up at about 7:15. I [14]had breakfast and at 8:00 I [15]took my husband a cup of tea. I [16]found him in bed. He was…dead."

"Tell me, Mrs. Travers, did you love your husband?"

"Jeremy is…was a difficult man."

"But did you love him, Mrs. Travers?"

"No, Detective. I hated him."

3 LISTENING

a 4 6, 7, 8 Listen to the detective question Barbara. Write the information in the chart. Listen again and check. Then do the same for Gordon and Claudia.

	Amanda	*Barbara*	*Gordon*	*Claudia*
What did they do after dinner?	*She went for a walk.*			
What time did they go to bed?	*11:45.*			
Did they hear anything?	*Jeremy's door opened and closed.*			
Possible motive?	*She hated him.*			

b Compare your chart with a partner. Who do you think was the murderer: Amanda, Barbara, Gordon, or Claudia? Why?

c 4 9 Now listen to what happened. Who was the murderer? Why did he / she kill Mr. Travers? Were you right?

4 GRAMMAR simple past: regular and irregular

a Cover the story and look at these verbs. Are they regular or irregular in the simple past? Write the simple past form ⊞ and ⊟ for each verb.

come kill close speak sleep sit hate walk

⊞ *came* ⊟ *didn't come*

b 4 10 Listen and check.

c ➤ **p.138 Grammar Bank 8A.** Learn more about simple past regular and irregular verbs and practice them.

d ➤ **p.165 Irregular verbs** Check (✓) the irregular verbs you know. Choose three new ones and learn them.

5 SPEAKING

➤ **Communication** *Police interview* **A** *p.104* **B** *p.108.* Interview robbery suspects. Are they telling the truth?

G *there is / there are, some / any* + plural nouns
V the house
P /ɛr/ and /ɪr/, sentence stress

Is there a garage?

Yes, there is.

8B A house with a history

1 VOCABULARY the house

a Read the advertisement about a house for rent. Would you like to rent it? Why (not)?

b Cover the advertisement. What can you remember about the house?

c With a partner, think of three things you can usually find in a bedroom, a bathroom, and a living room.

d ➤ **p.161 Vocabulary Bank** *The house.*

FOR RENT

Beautiful country house.
Very quiet. Six bedrooms, four bathrooms, large yard. Five miles from town. Perfect family house.
LOW PRICE.

2 LISTENING

a 4 13 Kim and Leo are a young couple. They want to rent the house in **1**. Cover the dialogue and listen to their conversation with Barbara. Which three rooms in the house do they go into?

b Listen again and complete the dialogue.

K The yard is wonderful. I love it.
L Is there a [1]*garage*?
B Oh yes, there's a big garage over there. Let's go inside the house.

This is the [2]_____. There are five rooms on this floor: the kitchen, the [3]_____, the living room, the [4]_____, the library...
L Wow! There's a library, Kim!
B This is the living room.
L I love the furniture—the old sofa, the armchairs, the [5]_____...
B And this is the [6]_____. It's very big, as you can see.
K Is there a dishwasher?
B No, there isn't. It's an old house, you see.
L Never mind. I think it's nice. Is there a [7]_____ downstairs?
B Yes, there's one [8]_____ and there are three upstairs.
K Are there any [9]_____ with children?
B No, there aren't any neighbors near here. But there are some families with children in town.
K That's great. You lived in this house, is that right, Mrs...?
B Call me Barbara, dear. Yes, I lived here. A long time ago. Now I live in town. Let's go [10]_____...

c 4 14 Listen. What does Kim say about one of the bedrooms? Whose bedroom was it?

d 4 15 Kim and Leo go to a local restaurant. Listen and answer the questions.

1 What do they have to drink? Why?
2 What does the waiter tell them…?
   a about what happened in the house
   b about Barbara
   c about what happened to the house later
3 What do Kim and Leo decide to do?

3 GRAMMAR *there is / there are*

a In groups of three, practice the dialogue in **2b**. Then complete the chart.

	singular	plural
+	There's a yard.	There ____ some families in town.
−	There ____ a dishwasher.	There aren't any neighbors.
?	____ ____ a garage?	____ ____ any neighbors?

b What's the difference between…?

1 There are **three** families in town.
2 There are **some** families in town.

c ➤ **p.138 Grammar Bank 8B.** Learn more about *there is | there are,* etc., and practice it.

4 PRONUNCIATION

/ɛr/ and /ɪr/, sentence stress

a 4 17 Listen and repeat the words and sounds.

ɛr chair	
ɪr ear	

b Put the words in the right place.

careful dear wear here they're
near stairs there we're hear where

c 4 18 Listen and repeat the words.

d 4 19 Listen and repeat. Copy the rhythm.

A **Are** there any **stairs**?
B **Yes**, they're **over there**.

A **Is** there a **bank near here**?
B **Yes**.
A **Where**?
B There's **one** in the **square**.

e Practice the dialogues with a partner.

f Ask your partner questions with *Is there a…in your…? Are there any…in your…?* Give more information in your answers if you can.

TV books plants pictures
mirror fireplace lamps
kitchen bedroom bathroom
dining room living room

Is there a TV in your kitchen? — *No, there isn't, but there's one in the living room.*

5 SPEAKING

a Look at the questionnaire **Your home**. Interview a partner. Ask for and give more information if you can.

Your home

- Do you live in a house or an apartment?
- How old is it?
- How big is it?

- How many bedrooms are there? bathrooms?
- Is there a study? a yard or a balcony? a garage? heat or central air conditioning?

- Do you like it? Why (not)?

b Draw a simple plan of your living room. Show the plan to your partner and describe the room.

This is the living room. It's big and it's very light. There are two sofas and an armchair.

6 WRITING

➤ **p.114 Writing** *Describing your home.*
Write a description of your house or apartment.

7 4 20 SONG *House of the Rising Sun* ♫

G *there was / there were*
V prepositions: place and movement
P silent letters

8C A night in a haunted hotel

1 READING

a Do you believe in ghosts? Are there buildings in your town / city that people think are haunted?

b Read the text once and find out:

1 Who are the ghosts in the two hotels?
2 Check (✓) the things that happen in the hotels:

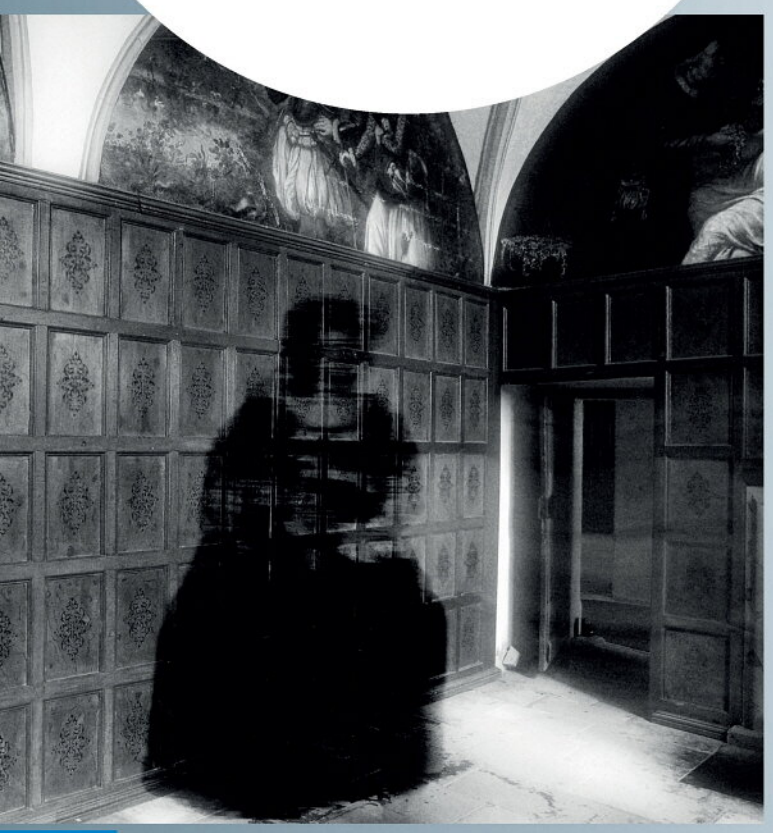
a ☐ people hear strange noises
b ☐ people see somebody
c ☐ doors open and close
d ☐ lights go on and off
e ☐ things fall on the floor
f ☐ people feel that somebody is watching them

c Look at the highlighted words in the text related to hotels and guess their meaning.

d Would you like to stay in one of these hotels? Why (not)?

WOULD YOU LIKE TO STAY IN A HAUNTED HOTEL?

THERE ARE MANY HOTELS IN BRITAIN THAT PEOPLE SAY ARE HAUNTED. IF YOU ARE FEELING BRAVE, YOU CAN STAY THE NIGHT IN ONE OF THESE HOTELS.



ENGLAND GOSFORTH HALL INN

Gosforth Hall is a small hotel in Cumbria in the north of England, built in 1658. People say the hotel has the ghost of a Catholic priest. He usually appears in Room 11. There is a secret tunnel that goes from behind the fireplace in the hotel lounge to Room 11. In 17th-century England, Catholic priests used the tunnel to hide from Protestants.

The owner of the hotel, Rod Davies, says, "I didn't believe in ghosts before I came here, but strange things happen in the hotel. One guest woke up in the middle of the night and saw a tall man standing next to his bed. He checked out the next morning." Rod's wife says, "One night a lot of books fell off a shelf in the lounge. And sometimes when I am working, I feel that someone is watching me, but when I turn around, nobody is there."

GHOST HUNTERS: Ask for Room 11 **www.gosforthhallhotel.co.uk**

SCOTLAND COMLONGON CASTLE

Comlongon is a 15th-century castle in a small village near Dumfries in southwest Scotland. The castle is haunted by the Green Lady, the ghost of Lady Marion Carruthers. Lady Marion was unhappy because she was married to a man she did not love, and in 1570 she jumped from the castle walls and killed herself. Many strange things happen in the hotel – doors open and close, and lights go on and off in empty rooms. An American couple once opened the door of their room and saw a young woman sitting on the bed. They left because they thought they were in the wrong room. In fact it was their room, but when they came back the room was empty.

GHOST HUNTERS: Ask for The Carruthers suite. **www.comlongon.com**

2 VOCABULARY prepositions: place and movement

a Look at the pictures of the ghosts from the hotel. Where is the woman sitting? Where is the man standing?

b ➤ **p.162 Vocabulary Bank** *Prepositions: place and movement.*

3 PRONUNCIATION silent letters

Silent letters
Some English words have a silent letter, e.g., in *cupboard* /ˈkʌbərd/ you don't pronounce the *p*.

a 4 23 Listen and cross out the silent letter in these words.

building castle could friend ghost guest
half hour know listen talk what write

b Practice saying the words.

4 LISTENING

A newspaper, the *Sunday Times*, sent one of its journalists, Stephen Bleach, to Gosforth Hall Inn. They asked him to spend the night in Room 11.

a 4 24 Listen to **part 1** of Stephen's night. Correct the information in these sentences.

1 He arrived at Gosforth Hall early in the evening.
2 There were four other guests in the hotel.
3 He talked to one of the guests.
4 The manager was a man.
5 He went to his room at 11:00.
6 Room 11 was on the first floor.
7 The room was very small.
8 There was a TV and a remote control.
9 There was a horror movie on TV.
10 He went to sleep at the end of the movie.

b 4 25 Do you think Stephen saw the ghost? Listen to **part 2** and find out. Listen again and answer the questions.

1 Did he wake up during the night?
If yes, what time?
2 Did anything strange happen?
If yes, what?
3 Did he "feel" the ghost?
4 Was he frightened?
☐ very ☐ a little ☐ not at all
5 Would he like to go back?
Why (not)?

5 GRAMMAR
there was / there were

a 4 26 Complete the sentences from the listening with *was*, *wasn't*, *were*, or *weren't*. Then listen and check.

1 There _____ many other guests in the hotel.
2 There _____ only three.
3 There _____ an old TV on a table.
4 There _____ a remote control.

b ➤ **p.138 Grammar Bank 8C.** Learn more about *there was / there were* and practice it.

6 SPEAKING

➤ **Communication** *The Ghost Room*
A *p104* **B** *p.109*. Look at the picture of another haunted hotel room for one minute. Try to remember what there was in the room.

Gosforth Hall Inn – Room 11

7&8 Review and Check

GRAMMAR

Circle a, b, or c.

1 Marilyn Monroe _____ an actress.
a was b were c are

2 Where _____ Shakespeare born?
a was b were c is

3 _____ the tickets expensive?
a Was b Were c Did

4 I _____ a good movie on TV last night.
a watched b watch c watches

5 They _____ at Stamford Bridge stadium.
a didn't arrived
b don't arrived
c didn't arrive

6 _____ you see the soccer match last night?
a Did b Do c Was

7 We _____ to Cuzco three years ago.
a go b were c went

8 When _____ in Los Angeles?
a you live
b did you lived
c did you live

9 I _____ you at the party last night.
a didn't saw b didn't see c don't saw

10 What time _____ home?
a did you get b you did get c you got

11 _____ a big table in the living room.
a There are b There is c It is

12 How many bedrooms _____?
a there are b are there c are they

13 There aren't _____ pictures on the walls.
a any b some c a

14 _____ only three guests in the dining room.
a There was b There were c There is

15 How many people _____ in the hotel?
a there were
b was there
c were there

VOCABULARY

a Complete the professions with *-er*, *-or*, *-ist*, or *-ian*.

1 act____ 3 paint____ 5 scient____
2 art____ 4 music____

b Complete the phrases with *have*, *go*, or *get*.

1 _____ a good time 4 _____ a taxi
2 _____ an email 5 _____ a sandwich
3 _____ away for the weekend

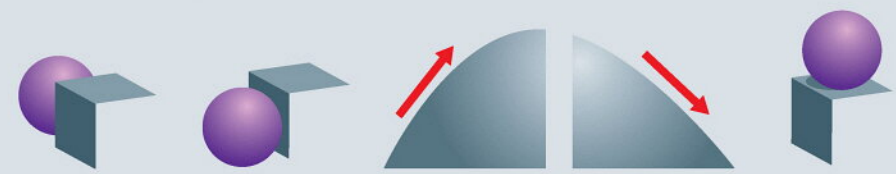
c Complete the sentences with *back*, *by*, *in*, *out*, or *to*.

1 I went _____ with my friends on Saturday night.
2 They went home _____ car.
3 What time did you get _____ the restaurant?
4 I was born _____ 1982.
5 After lunch, I went _____ to work.

d Label the pictures.

1 _____ 2 _____ 3 _____ 4 _____ 5 _____

e Write the prepositions.



1 _____ 2 _____ 3 _____ 4 _____ 5 _____

PRONUNCIATION

a Circle the word with a different sound.

1 /ɪd/ wanted waited lived ended

2 saw walked thought could

3 heard met said left

4 near there wear stairs

5 hall heat hour behind

b Underline the stressed syllable.

1 mu|si|cian 2 a|go 3 yes|ter|day 4 be|tween 5 fire|place

CAN YOU UNDERSTAND THIS TEXT?

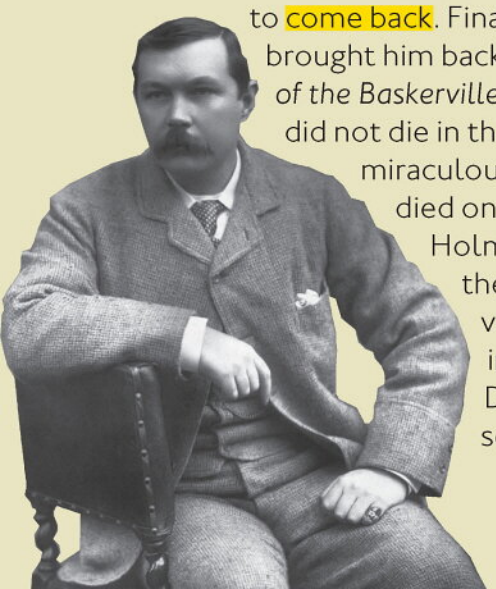
a Read the text and mark the sentences **T** (true) or **F** (false).

1 Arthur Conan Doyle was Scottish, but he worked in England.
2 He started writing stories about Sherlock Holmes while at university.
3 Conan Doyle lived at 221b Baker Street in London.
4 In 1893, he didn't want to write more Sherlock Holmes stories.
5 Sherlock Holmes didn't die in Austria.
6 Sherlock Holmes is very popular today.

b Look at the highlighted words or phrases in the text and guess their meaning.

The man who wrote SHERLOCK HOLMES

Arthur Conan Doyle was born in Edinburgh on May 22, 1859. He studied medicine at Edinburgh University, and as a student, he began writing short stories. He became a doctor in the south of England, but at first, he didn't have many patients. So in his free time, he began writing stories about a very smart detective, Sherlock Holmes. Conan Doyle based Holmes's personality on one of his university professors. Holmes, who lives at 221b Baker Street in London, is famous for solving difficult crimes and mysteries using his great intelligence. The Sherlock Holmes stories soon became very popular, but in 1893, Conan Doyle became tired of his detective, and decided to "kill" him. In *The Final Problem*, Sherlock Holmes and his enemy, Professor Moriarty, die when they fall off the Reichenbach Falls in Switzerland. But people were very unhappy to lose Sherlock Holmes, and there were letters in many newspapers asking for him to come back. Finally, in 1901, Conan Doyle brought him back in a new story, *The Hound of the Baskervilles*. He explained that Holmes did not die in the Reichenbach Falls, but miraculously survived. Conan Doyle died on July 7, 1930, but Sherlock Holmes continues to live both in the stories and in many movie versions. Recently, he was the inspiration for the character Dr. Gregory House in the TV series *House*.

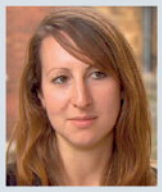


CAN YOU UNDERSTAND THESE PEOPLE?

VIDEO

4 28 **On the street** Watch or listen to five people and answer the questions.

Heba


Polly

Jeanna

Phoebe

Ben

1 Heba _____.
   a has family in New York
   b lives in Egypt
   c was born in Cairo
2 Polly went out for dinner on _____.
   a Friday b Saturday c Sunday
3 Jeanna likes her kitchen because _____.
   a it has a refrigerator
   b it's not big
   c it has two stoves
4 Phoebe's bedroom _____.
   a has a big bed
   b has nice windows
   c is big
5 Yesterday evening, Ben _____.
   a went out to a restaurant
   b worked at home
   c went to bed early

CAN YOU SAY THIS IN ENGLISH?

Do the tasks with a partner. Check (✓) the box if you can do them.

Can you...?

1 ☐ say three things about a famous (dead) person from your country
2 ☐ say five things you did last week, using past time expressions, e.g., last night, yesterday, (three) days ago, etc.
3 ☐ say where and when you were born
4 ☐ ask your partner five questions about yesterday

VIDEO **Short movies** Edinburgh Castle
Watch and enjoy the movie.

G countable / uncountable nouns; *a / an, some / any*
V food
P the letters *ea*

What did you have for lunch?

A pizza and some salad.

9A What I ate yesterday

1 VOCABULARY food

a What food words do you know in English? With a partner, try to think of five words.

b ➤ **p.163 Vocabulary Bank** *Food.*

2 READING

a Look at the photos that show meals that three people – a polo player, a model, and an actress – ate last week. Guess which person ate which meal.

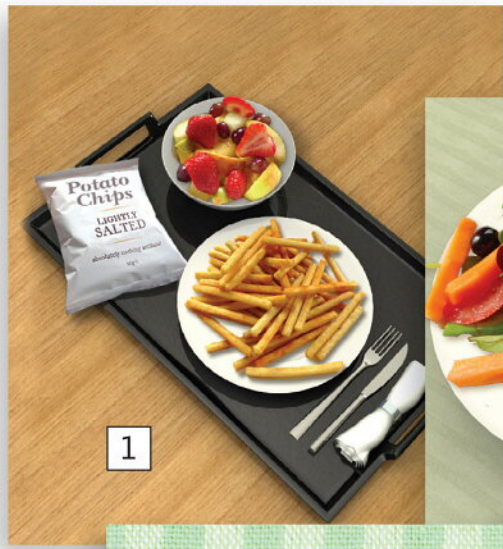
b Read three articles from a series *New York Diet* in *New York Magazine.* Check your answers to **a**.

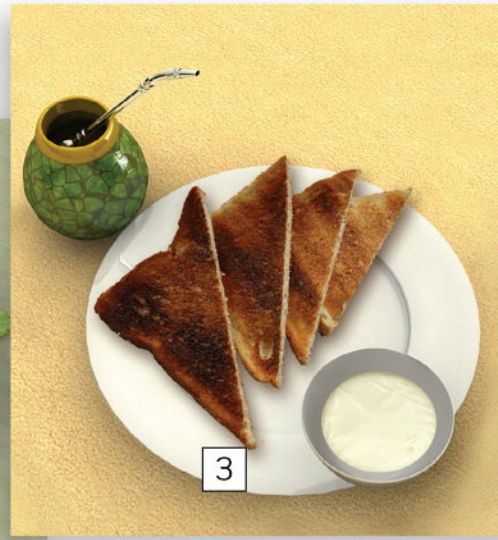
c Read the articles again. Answer the questions with **P** (the polo player), **M** (the model), or **A** (the actress). Who…?

1 never eats one kind of food?
2 didn't have salad for lunch?
3 has tea every morning?
4 didn't have soup for dinner?
5 had dinner at a restaurant?
6 didn't drink tea or coffee?
7 didn't eat any fruit?
8 had breakfast, lunch, and dinner in one place?
9 had home-cooked food?

d With a partner, look at the highlighted words related to food and guess their meaning. Use the photos to help you.

e Whose food do you prefer? Why?





What I ate last week

Nacho Figueras *polo player*

Wednesday

Breakfast In the morning, I drank an Argentinian drink called *maté.* I put it in a pot, and I drink it with a straw. It's like green tea. I start every day with *maté.* I also had toast and cream cheese.

Lunch I had a salad, just a regular salad at a hotel. I was in the area for a meeting, so I just had it there.

Dinner We put the kids to sleep first. I kissed them good night. Then, I went to the Metropolitan Museum of Art restaurant with my wife. I had soup and a dish of mushroom risotto.

Selita Ebanks *model*

Sunday

Breakfast I was in Dallas, Texas for business. I had a nice meal with my manager at the hotel. I had an omelet, toast, and pancakes. I also had coffee and orange juice.

Lunch I had some meetings after breakfast, so I worked from the hotel. I had fruit, potato chips, and French fries sent to my room so I didn't have to leave the hotel.

Dinner We ate in my manager's room. I had chicken and mashed potatoes. Then I flew from Dallas to New York City. The plane landed around 1 a.m. I drank a lot of water because I was so thirsty. When I got home, I had to walk my dogs!

Jennifer Esposito *actress*

Tuesday

Breakfast I am very careful about what I eat. I don't eat food with wheat, or I get sick. I also don't eat at restaurants often. So I had a bowl of cereal with fruit for breakfast.

Lunch Lunch was a big salad. I was at work on a new movie, so they got me a salad with olives, lettuce, carrots, and tomatoes.

Dinner For dinner, I made soup with pasta and vegetables. I like to cook. About ten years ago when I was in Los Angeles, I was bored, so I started cooking to be creative.

risotto an Italian dish made with rice and vegetable or meat broth
omelet a dish with eggs, often with small pieces of meat, vegetables, or cheese
pancakes thin, sweet, round cakes, cooked in a pan

3 GRAMMAR countable / uncountable nouns; *a / an, some / any*

a Look at the photos. Fill in the blanks with *a*, *an*, or *some*.

1 _____ strawberry
2 _____ tomato
3 _____ rice
4 _____ cookies
5 _____ onion

b ➤ **p.140 Grammar Bank 9A.** Learn more about countable / uncountable nouns, etc., and practice them.

c Make sentences with *there's a / an / some…* and *there are some…* Choose food and drink from **p.163 Vocabulary Bank** *Food*.

4 PRONUNCIATION the letters *ea*

a How is *ea* pronounced in these words? Put them in the correct column.

bread breakfast eat healthy ice cream
meat peas steak tea

i	ɛ	ei
tree	egg	train

b 4 31 Listen and check. Practice saying the words. Which is the most common pronunciation of *ea*?

5 SPEAKING

a Make a food diary for yesterday. Write down what food and drink you had. Use **Vocabulary Bank** *Food p.163* to help you.

Breakfast *a cup of coffee, some cereal*

b Work in pairs. Tell each other what you had yesterday. Was it very similar or very different?

For breakfast, I had a cup of coffee and some cereal.

6 LISTENING

a What cooking shows do you have on TV in your country? What do you think of them? Do you sometimes use their recipes?

b 4 32 Listen to part 1 of a TV cooking competition called *Get ready! Cook!* where contestants have to cook an appetizer, a main course, and a dessert. Answer the questions.

1 How many ingredients are there in the bag?
2 How long do the contestants have to make their dishes?
3 Name *three* of the basic ingredients they can use.

c 4 33 Listen to part 2. Complete the dishes that Jack and Liz make.

Jack	Judge's comments
1 _____ and _____ soup	
2 _____ breasts filled with cream _____	
3 pancakes with _____ sauce	

Liz	Judge's comments
1 carrot and _____ salad with _____ dressing	
2 _____ with creamy _____ sauce	
3 _____ and _____ mousse	

d ➤ **Communication** *Get ready! Cook! p.109* Look at the photos of their dishes. Whose dishes do you prefer?

e 4 34 Listen to part 3. What does the judge say about Jack and Liz's dishes? Who wins?

f In pairs, think of one of your favorite dishes. Write the ingredients you need. Tell your partner.

G quantifiers: *how much / how many, a lot of*, etc.
V food containers
P /ʃ/ and /s/

How much salt does it have?

Not much.

9B White gold

1 VOCABULARY food containers

a 4 35 Match the words and pictures. Listen and check.

☐ a bottle ☐ a box ☐ a can ☐ a carton ☐ a jar ☐ a package ☐ a bag

b 4 36 Listen and write five phrases.

c Make phrases with the containers and the words below. *a package of cookies*

cookies chocolates soda potato chips juice jam water rice sugar tuna

2 GRAMMAR quantifiers: *how much / how many, a lot of*, etc.

a Look at the pictures at the bottom of the page. Then ask and answer questions about the food.

How much sugar is there in dark chocolate? — *I'm not sure. I think there's a lot.*

b ➤ **Communication** *Sugar and salt p.109.* Check your answers to **a**.

c Complete the sentences with a food or drink from **a**.

1 There **isn't any** salt in _____.
2 There's **a little** sugar in _____.
3 There's **not much** salt in _____.
4 There's **a lot of** sugar in _____.

d ➤ **p.140 Grammar Bank 9B.** Learn more about quantifiers and practice them.

3 PRONUNCIATION /ʃ/ and /s/

a 4 38 Listen and repeat the words and sounds.

shower	sugar fish	snake	salt chocolates

b 4 39 Put the words in the right column. Listen and check.

cereal sauce delicious fresh
information center rice glass reception
salad science shopping special sure

c 4 40 Listen and repeat the dialogue. Then practice it with a partner.

A Are you sure this is salt? I think it's sugar.
B No, I'm sure it's salt. I put some in the rice salad.
A Let's taste the salad... Aargh. It was sugar. I told you.
B Sorry!

4 SPEAKING

a Read the questionnaire and complete the questions with *How much* or *How many*.

How much sugar and salt do YOU have a day?

Sugar

1 _____ spoonfuls of sugar do you have in your tea or coffee?
a two or more **b** one **c** none

2 _____ cans of soda (or other carbonated drinks) do you drink a day?
a two or more **b** one **c** none

3 _____ fruit or fruit juice do you have a day?
a a lot **b** not much **c** none

4 _____ cookies do you eat a week?
a a lot **b** not many **c** none

Salt

5 How often do you add salt to your food at the table?
a always **b** sometimes **c** never

6 _____ take-out food do you eat?
a a lot **b** not much **c** none

7 _____ bread do you eat a day?
a a lot **b** a little **c** none

8 _____ cheese do you eat a week?
a a lot **b** a little **c** none

b In pairs, interview your partner. Do you think he / she needs to eat less sugar and salt?

c Work in pairs. **A** say how much you eat / drink of the things below. **B** respond and ask for more information. Then say if you think **A** has a healthy diet or not. Change roles.

fish meat potatoes vegetables chocolate
fast food eggs pasta olive oil butter

I eat a lot of fish. *How often do you eat fish?*

5 READING

a Read the magazine article *White Gold*. With a partner, complete the facts with *sugar* or *salt*.

b Read the article again, and highlight five new words or phrases. Compare with a partner.

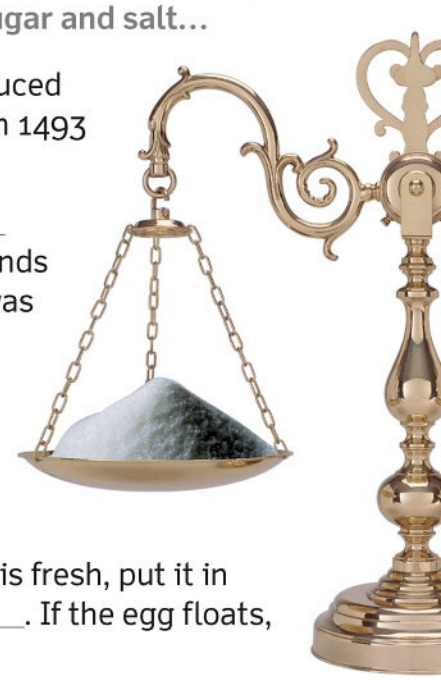
c Did any of the facts surprise you?

6 4 41 SONG *Sugar Sugar*

WHITE GOLD

FASCINATING FACTS ABOUT SUGAR AND SALT

At different times in history, both sugar and salt were called "white gold," because they were so expensive and difficult to get. But there are many more interesting facts about sugar and salt...



- Christopher Columbus introduced [1]_____ to the New World in 1493 on his second voyage.
- If you eat too much [2]_____ (about .03 ounces per 2.2 pounds of weight), you can die. This was a method of ritual suicide in ancient China.
- Salzburg in Austria was called "the city of [3]_____" because of its mines.
- If you want to check if an egg is fresh, put it in a cup with water and [4]_____. If the egg floats, it isn't very fresh.
- In Brazil, fuel made from [5]_____ is used in cars instead of gas.
- Americans eat or drink about 5 pounds of [6]_____ a month.
- [7]_____ is used to make glass, laundry detergent, and paper.
- [8]_____ kills some bacteria, and so helps food to last longer, which is why cheese contains a lot.
- If you put [9]_____ into a vase of flowers, the flowers last longer.
- [10]_____ only contains energy. It doesn't contain any vitamins or minerals.
- *Sure* and [11]_____ are the only two words in the English language that begin with "su" and are pronounced "sh."
- We need to have a little [12]_____ in our diet, but not more than 4 grams a day, which is about one teaspoon.

G comparative adjectives
V high numbers
P /ər/, sentence stress

Is the US bigger than Mexico?

Yes, it's five times bigger.

9C Quiz night

1 VOCABULARY high numbers

a Read three questions from a radio quiz show. Choose the right answer for each question.

1 What is the approximate population of Vietnam?
a 68,000,000
b 78,000,000
c 88,000,000

2 How many calories are there in a Big Mac?
a 670
b 540
c 305

3 How far is it from New York City to Los Angeles?
a about 2,500 miles
b about 1,500 miles
c about 3,100 miles

b 4 42 Listen and check. How do you say the three answers?

c ➤ **p.148 Vocabulary Bank** *Days and numbers.* Do part 4.

d Look at the numbers below. Correct the mistakes.

175	a hundred and seventy-five
2,150	two thousand and one hundred and fifty
3,009	three thousand nine
20,000	twenty thousands
3,000,000	three millions

e 4 44 Listen and write the ten numbers you hear.

f Answer the questions with a partner.

1 What's the population of your town / city?
2 What's the population of your country?
3 How far is it from your town / city to…?
a New York City
b London

2 LISTENING

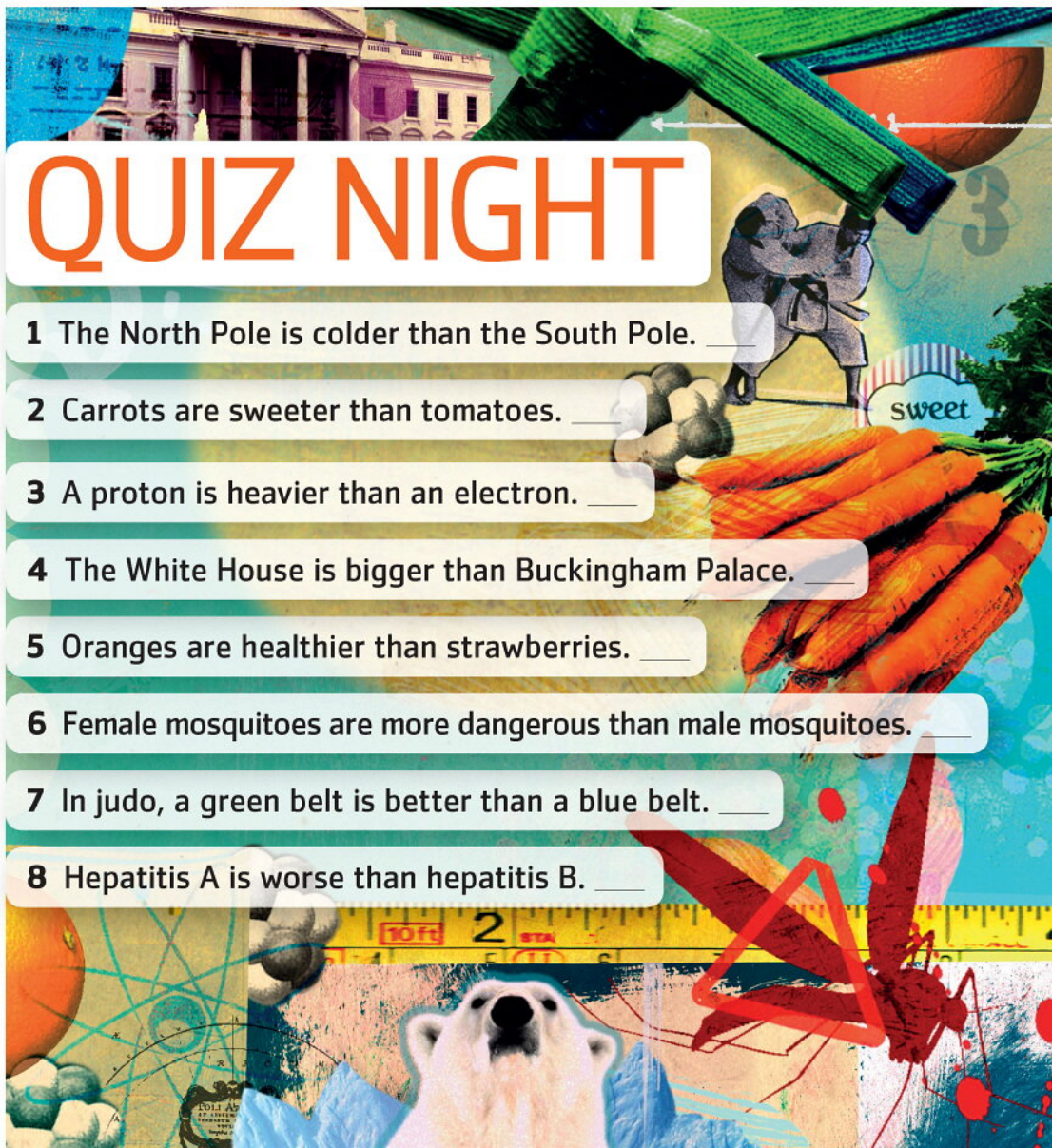
a 4 45 What quiz shows are popular in your country? Listen to the introduction to a quiz show called *Quiz Night*. Answer the questions.

1 How long do the contestants have to say if the sentences are true or false?
2 How much do they win if they get…?
a the first answer right _____ c the third answer right _____
b the second answer right _____ d all eight answers right _____
3 If they get an answer wrong, how much do they lose?
4 What can a contestant do if they are not sure of the answer?

b In pairs, look at the sentences from *Quiz Night*. Write **T** (true) or **F** (false).

c 4 46 Listen to a contestant on *Quiz Night*. Check your answers to **b**. How much does she win?

d Listen again for why the answers are true or false. Write down any numbers you hear.



3 GRAMMAR comparative adjectives

a Look at the adjectives in the quiz sentences. In pairs, answer the questions.

Using adjectives to compare two things:

1 What two letters do you put at the end of one-syllable adjectives (e.g., *cold*)?
2 Why is *big* different?
3 What happens when an adjective ends in *-y*?
4 What word do you put in front of long adjectives (e.g., *dangerous*)?
5 What's the comparative form of *good* and *bad*?
6 What's the missing word?
China is bigger ___ Japan.

b ➤ **p.140 Grammar Bank 9C.** Learn more about comparative adjectives and practice them.

4 PRONUNCIATION

/ər/, sentence stress

a 4 48 Listen to the eight quiz sentences from **2**. How is *-er* pronounced at the end of a word?

b Listen again and repeat the sentences. Copy the rhythm.

5 SPEAKING

➤ **Communication** *Quiz Night* **A** *p.105* **B** *p.110*. Play *Quiz Night*.

6 READING

a Read about three quiz shows. Do you have the same or similar shows in your country? Do you enjoy them?

b Now read about Ken Jennings. Why is he the best quiz contestant in the country?

c Read the article again and complete it with a verb from the list in the simple past.

answer ask be become get
give know play win

d With a partner, look at the highlighted words in the texts related to quiz shows and guess their meaning.

e Would you like to be a contestant on a quiz show? Which one?

Jeopardy!

A quiz show where three contestants answer general knowledge questions about many different subjects. Correct answers must be in the form of a question. The contestant with the most money at the end wins.

Who Wants to Be a Millionaire?

A quiz show where contestants can win a maximum prize of one million dollars if they can answer multiple choice questions that become more and more difficult. Contestants can usually get help three ways: They can ask the audience, reduce the four choices to two, or call a friend.

Are You Smarter Than a 5th Grader?

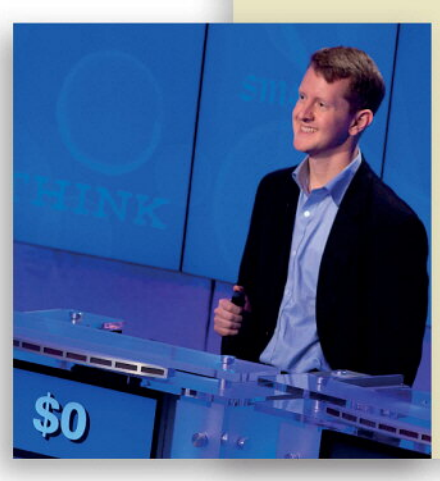
A quiz show where contestants answer questions about subjects that 5th-grade students learn in school. If contestants need help, they ask actual 5th-grade students who are part of the show. When contestants give an incorrect answer or leave the game, they must say, "I'm not smarter than a 5th grader."

Q Who is the best quiz contestant in the country?

A Ken Jennings

In 2004, Ken Jennings, a 30-year-old software engineer, [1] *won* more games than anybody in US quiz show history. He [2]_____ a 74-game winner on *Jeopardy!* and won over $2.5 million!

But *Jeopardy!* [3]_____ not the only quiz show he appeared on. In 2008, Ken, competed on *Are You Smarter Than a 5th Grader?* He [4]_____ all the questions except the last one because he wasn't sure he [5]_____ the answer. He didn't win and had to say, "I'm not smarter than a 5th grader."



Ken was never a contestant on *Who Wants to Be a Millionaire?*, but he was an "expert"—a person with a lot of knowledge. When contestants needed help, they [6]_____ Ken.

In 2011, Ken [7]_____ *Jeopardy!* again. But this time he competed against past *Jeopardy!* champion Brad Rutter and Watson, an IBM supercomputer. In a two-game match, Watson beat both Ken and Brad. Ken was second and [8]_____ $300,000, which he [9]_____ to a charity.

Practical English At a restaurant

EPISODE 5

1 VIDEO AN INVITATION TO DINNER

a 4 49 Watch or listen and mark the sentences **T** (true) or **F** (false).

1 Jenny and Rob worked last night.
2 Jenny wants to read Rob's article.
3 It's Eddie's birthday today.
4 Rob and Daniel invite Jenny to dinner.
5 Jenny says yes to Rob.

b Watch or listen again. Say why the **F** sentences are false.

c 4 50 Read the information box. Listen and repeat **B**'s phrases.

Responding to what somebody says

1	**A** It's my birthday today.	**B Happy birthday!**
2	**A** We won the game!	**B Congratulations!**
3	**A** I have my driving test tomorrow.	**B Good luck!**
4	**A** I got all my English homework right.	**B Good job!**
5	**A** I didn't get the job.	**B Better luck next time.**

d 4 51 Listen and respond with phrases from the box.

I got two goals this afternoon. *Good job!*

2 VOCABULARY
understanding a menu

a Complete the menu with **Main courses**, **Desserts**, or **Appetizers.**

b 4 52 What do the highlighted words mean? How do you pronounce them? Listen and check.

c Cover the menu. In pairs, try to remember what's on the menu.

Luigi's

2 courses **$20.00**
3 courses **$29.00**

1 _____

Onion soup
Mozzarella and tomato salad

2 _____

Grilled chicken breast with vegetables
Mushroom ravioli
Seafood risotto

3 _____

Homemade vanilla ice cream with hot chocolate sauce
Fresh fruit salad
Tiramisu

3 VIDEO ORDERING A MEAL

a 4 53 Watch or listen to Jenny and Daniel having dinner. What food do they order?

b Watch or listen again. Complete the **You Hear** phrases.

You Hear	You Say
Good evening. Do you have a _____?	Yes, a table for two. My name's Daniel O'Connor.
Come this _____, please.	
Are you ready to _____?	Yes. The soup and the mushroom ravioli, please. I'd like the mozzarella salad and then the chicken, please.
What would you _____ to drink?	Just water for me. A bottle of mineral water, please.
_____ or sparkling?	Is sparkling OK? Yes, sparkling.
Thank you, sir.	Thank you.

c 4 54 Watch or listen and repeat the **You Say** phrases. Copy the rhythm.

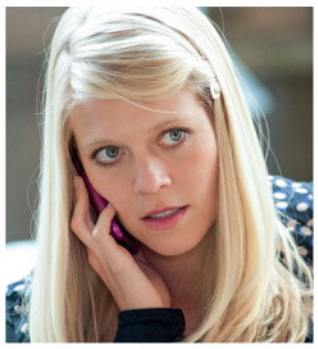
d Practice the dialogue in groups of three.

e In groups of three, role-play the dialogue. **A** is the waiter. Start with *Good evening. Do you have a reservation?* **B** and **C** go to *Luigi's*. Then change roles.

4 VIDEO THE END OF THE MEAL

a 4 55 Watch or listen and answer the questions.

1 How does Jenny usually celebrate her birthday?
2 Do they order dessert or coffee?
3 What does Daniel say to Jenny after the meal?
4 How does Jenny answer?
5 Does Barbara give Jenny good news or bad news?
6 Where does Jenny want to go after the meal?



b Look at the **Social English phrases**. Who says them: **J**enny, **D**aniel, the **w**aiter, or **B**arbara?

Social English phrases

Nothing special.	The same for me, please.
Would you like a dessert?	Go ahead.
Not for me, thanks.	Good news?
A decaf espresso.	Could I have the bill, please?

American and British English

check = American English *bill* = British English

c 4 56 Watch or listen and check. Do you know what they are in your language?

d Watch or listen again and repeat the phrases.

Can you...?

- ☐ use common phrases, e.g., *Good luck.*
- ☐ understand a menu
- ☐ order a meal

G superlative adjectives
V places and buildings
P consonant groups

What's the oldest building in your town?

I'm not sure. Probably the cathedral.

10A The most dangerous road...

1 VOCABULARY places and buildings

a Complete these famous tourist sights with a word from the list. Do you know what countries / cities they are in?

Bridge Castle Mountains Square Street

1 Trafalgar _____
2 The Golden Gate _____
3 Wall _____
4 Edinburgh _____
5 The Rocky _____

b 5 2 Listen and check.

c ➤ **p.164 Vocabulary Bank** *Places and buildings.*

2 GRAMMAR superlative adjectives

a Look at the photos. Do you know what countries they are in?

b 5 4 With a partner, complete the captions with a phrase from the list. Listen and check.

the biggest the busiest the most dangerous
the longest the most popular the widest

c Complete the chart with superlatives from **b**.

Adjective	Comparative	Superlative
big	bigger	*the biggest*
long	longer	
wide	wider	
busy	busier	
dangerous	more dangerous	
popular	more popular	

d What letters do you add to a one-syllable adjective to make a superlative? What words do you put before longer adjectives?

e ➤ **p.142 Grammar Bank 10A.** Learn more about superlative adjectives and practice them.

1 The Louvre is _____ art gallery in the world.

2 Vasco da Gama Bridge is _____ bridge in Europe.

3 The Yungas Road is _____ road in the world.

4 Tiananmen Square is _____ square in the world.

5 Avenida 9 de Julio in Buenos Aires is _____ street in the world.

6 Shinjuku Station in Tokyo is _____ train station in the world.

3 PRONUNCIATION consonant groups

a 5 6 Listen and repeat the adjectives in **2c**.

> **Consonant groups**
> Words that have two or three consonants together, e.g., *fastest*, can be difficult to pronounce.

b 5 7 Listen and repeat these superlatives.

the most expensive the most exciting the oldest
the most beautiful the smallest

c ➤ **Communication** *Cities quiz* **A** *p.105* **B** *p.110*.
Complete the questions with superlative adjectives. Then ask and answer the questions with a partner.

4 READING

a Read the article below and look at the photo. Would you like to ride a bike there? Why (not)?

b Read the article again. Then cover the text and answer the questions in pairs.

1 Where is the North Yungas Road?
2 Why is it called "Death Road"?
3 How wide is the road?
4 Why is it popular with bike riders?
5 When is the most dangerous time of year to go?
6 Why is the road similar to London Bridge and the Sydney Opera House?
7 Why didn't Marte enjoy riding a bike on the Yungas Road?

c In pairs, guess the meaning of the highlighted words.

d Is riding a bike popular in your country / region? Is there an area that is very popular with bike riders? Why?

5 SPEAKING & WRITING

a Work in pairs.

A Imagine you are a tourist in your town (or nearest big town) who only speaks English. Ask **B**, who lives in the town, questions 1–5. Get as much information as you can.

B You live in your town. **A** is a tourist who doesn't speak your language. Answer his / her questions (1–5). Explain everything very clearly and give as much information as you can!

Then change roles for questions 6–10.

What's the most beautiful park? — *I think Griffth Park.*

Where's that? — *It's downtown, near the Hollywood sign. It has...*

A
1 What's _____ park? (beautiful)
2 What's _____ way to get around? (easy)
3 What's _____ museum? (interesting)
4 What's _____ time of year to visit? (good)
5 What's _____ place to eat typical food? (nice)

B
6 What's _____ building? (old)
7 What's _____ place to go for a day trip? (nice)
8 What's _____ area to walk at night? (dangerous)
9 Where's _____ place to buy a souvenir? (good)
10 What's _____ area to go at night? (popular)

b Imagine you want to advertise your town / city for tourists. Write an advertisement using superlative adjectives. Add photos if you can.

Come to Veracruz. It isn't the biggest or the most important town in Mexico, but it has the nicest people and the most delicious seafood...

Riding a bike on the most dangerous road in the world

High in the Andes, the North Yungas Road goes from La Paz, the highest capital city in the world, to Coroico in the Yungas region of Bolivia. The road is only about ten feet wide and the Coroico River lies 656 feet below. Bolivians call it "El Camino de la Muerte" (Death Road) because of the number of accidents, and in 1995 it was officially declared "the most dangerous road in the world."

"One mistake and you are dead."

Since a new road opened in 2006, there are fewer buses and trucks on the old road. But now thousands of mountain bikers come from all over the world to take the most exciting ride of their lives. They start at La Cumbre, 15,400 feet above sea level, and go down to 5,000 feet, traveling at nearly 50 miles an hour down the narrow road. During the rainy season, from December to March, only experienced bike riders can take part, but some die every year on the road. So, why do people do it?

Andrew Jagoo, 26, from Melbourne, said after finishing the ride, "If you go to London, you have to see London Bridge, and if you go to Sydney, you have to see the Opera House, and if you go to Bolivia, you have to do the most dangerous road."

Marte Solberg, 22, from Norway said, "A lot of people said it was fun, but I was scared of falling down and dying. I was worried because I had no experience with mountain biking. One mistake and you are dead. I asked myself a thousand times, 'Why am I doing this?'"

G *be going to* (plans), future time expressions
V vacations
P sentence stress

What are you going to do?

I'm going to travel around the US.

10B CouchSurf around the world!

1 LISTENING

a Read the dictionary definition for *couch*, and look at the CouchSurfing website. What do you think CouchSurfing is?

couch /kaʊtʃ/ *noun* **1** a long comfortable seat for two or more people to sit on (= a sofa) **2** the bed in a doctor's room for a patient to lie on

b 5 8 Listen to part of a radio travel program. Were you right? How does CouchSurfing work?

c 5 9 Now listen to the speaker give more details about CouchSurfing. Mark the sentences **T** (true) or **F** (false).

1 ☐ CouchSurfers usually pay their host a little money.
2 ☐ You need to create a profile on the website.
3 ☐ When you find a person with a bed, you call them to agree on the days you want to stay.
4 ☐ You have to offer other people a bed in your house or apartment.
5 ☐ CouchSurfing is safe because you can read what other travelers say about the host.
6 ☐ The host always shows their guests their city.
7 ☐ You can CouchSurf all over the world.

d Would you like to go CouchSurfing? Why (not)? Would you like to have a stranger stay in *your* house? Why (not)?

2 GRAMMAR *be going to* (plans)

a 5 10 Iria González Liaño, a teacher from Spain, is going to CouchSurf through all 50 states in the US. Cover the dialogue and listen to the interview. What are her plans?

Listen again and fill in the blanks with a verb.

Host Tell me about your plans, Iria.
Iria I'm going to [1] *travel* around the US – to all 50 states.
Host Wow! That's amazing! How long are you going to [2] _____ in each state?
Iria I'm not sure, but I think maybe three nights in each state—maybe more in big states like California and Texas.
Host Who are you going to [3] _____ with?
Iria I'm going to stay with all kinds of people. I want to make new friends across the US!
Host Are you going to [4] _____ on a couch?
Iria Yes, I'm going to sleep on a lot of couches!
Host How are you going to [5] _____?
Iria I'm going to [6] _____ mostly by bus.
Host What are you going to [7] _____ in each state?
Iria I don't just want to see the typical tourist sights. I hope I'm going to [8] _____ things that aren't in a guide book.
Host Well, have a good trip and good luck!

c Look at the highlighted sentences in the dialogue. Then answer the questions.

1 What form is the verb after *going to*?
2 Do we use *going to* to talk about the past, the present, or the future?

d ➤ **p.142 Grammar Bank 10B.** Learn more about *be going to* (plans) and practice it.

e Number the future time expressions 1–8.

☐ tonight
☐ next year
☐ tomorrow morning
☐ next month
☐ tomorrow night
[1] today
☐ next week
☐ tomorrow afternoon

f 5 12 Listen and check. Then listen again and repeat. Make four true sentences about your plans.

3 PRONUNCIATION & SPEAKING
sentence stress

a 5 13 Listen and repeat the highlighted phrases in **2b**. Copy the rhythm.

I'm going to travel around the US.

b ➤ **Communication** *What are you going to do?* **A** *p.105* **B** *p.110.* Interview a partner about his / her plans.

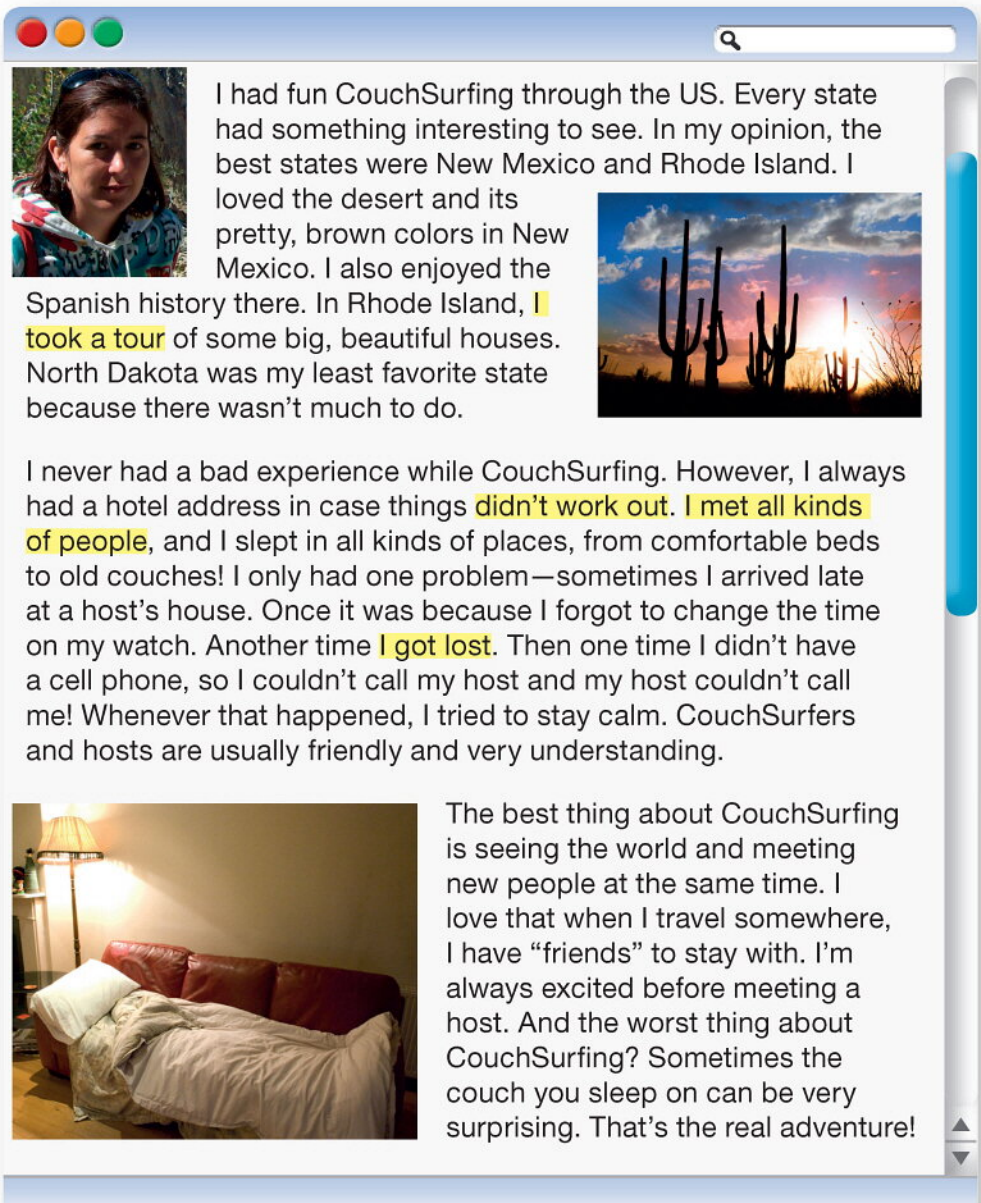
4 READING

a Read Iria's blog about her CouchSurfing trip. Did she have a good time?

b Read the blog again. Then cover it and answer the questions from memory.

1 What color was the desert in New Mexico?
2 Where were the big, beautiful houses?
3 Which state didn't have much to do?
4 What information did she have in case things didn't work out?
5 What was a problem she had?
6 How did she feel before meeting a host?

c Read the blog again and look at the highlighted verb phrases. With a partner, say what you think they mean.



I had fun CouchSurfing through the US. Every state had something interesting to see. In my opinion, the best states were New Mexico and Rhode Island. I loved the desert and its pretty, brown colors in New Mexico. I also enjoyed the Spanish history there. In Rhode Island, I took a tour of some big, beautiful houses. North Dakota was my least favorite state because there wasn't much to do.

I never had a bad experience while CouchSurfing. However, I always had a hotel address in case things didn't work out. I met all kinds of people, and I slept in all kinds of places, from comfortable beds to old couches! I only had one problem—sometimes I arrived late at a host's house. Once it was because I forgot to change the time on my watch. Another time I got lost. Then one time I didn't have a cell phone, so I couldn't call my host and my host couldn't call me! Whenever that happened, I tried to stay calm. CouchSurfers and hosts are usually friendly and very understanding.

The best thing about CouchSurfing is seeing the world and meeting new people at the same time. I love that when I travel somewhere, I have "friends" to stay with. I'm always excited before meeting a host. And the worst thing about CouchSurfing? Sometimes the couch you sleep on can be very surprising. That's the real adventure!

5 VOCABULARY & SPEAKING
vacations

a Complete the vacation phrases using a verb from the list.

go have see stay show

1 _____ in a hotel / with a friend / for a week
2 _____ somebody around your town / city
3 _____ the sights
4 _____ by train (bus, plane) / back home
5 _____ a good time / nice meals

b In pairs, plan a vacation. You are going to visit **three** cities on the same continent. Your vacation can be a maximum of **ten** days.

Answer the questions:

- What cities are you going to visit?
- Where are you going to stay?
- How are you going to get there?
- How long are you going to stay in each city?
- What are you going to do in each place?

Making suggestions

Let's (go to...)	I prefer to (go to...)
Why don't we (go to...)?	That's a good idea.

c Change partners. Tell each other about your vacation plans.

We're going to go to South America – to Buenos Aires, Rio, and Montevideo. We're going to CouchSurf because we don't have much money...

d Do you prefer your new partner's plans? Would you like to change partners and go with him / her?

6 WRITING

➤ **p.115 Writing** *A formal email.* Make a reservation at a Bed and Breakfast.

G *be going to* (predictions)
V verb phrases
P the letters *oo*

10C What's going to happen?

Am I going to fall in love?

Yes, and you're going to be very happy.

1 VOCABULARY verb phrases

a Do people in your country go to fortune-tellers, or use fortune-telling sites on the Internet? Do *you* believe in fortune-telling?

b Match the fortune-teller's cards and verb phrases.

- [ ] become famous
- [ ] get a new job
- [ ] get married
- [ ] meet somebody new
- [ ] fall in love
- [ ] get a lot of money
- [ ] have a surprise
- [A] be lucky
- [ ] travel
- [ ] move to a new house

2 READING & LISTENING

a 5 14 Read and listen to **PART 1** of a story. In pairs, answer the questions.

1 Who does Jane want to see?
2 Who is going to tell her about her future? Why?
3 Why couldn't she see the man very well?

b 5 15 Listen to part 2. Then, with a partner, complete the information.

1 Jane has a problem with her _____.
2 She chooses _____ cards.
3 Her first card means she's going to be _____.
4 Jane asks the fortune-teller if she's going to _____ with her boyfriend.

c 5 16 Read and listen to **PART 3**. In pairs, answer the questions.

1 What's the second card? What does it mean?
2 Why is this a problem for Jane?
3 What's her third card? What does it mean?
4 Who's Jim? Where did Jane meet him?
5 What do you think the fourth card is going to be?

d 5 17 Listen to part 4. Then, with a partner, complete the information.

1 Her fourth card means she is going to _____ her boyfriend and go away with Jim to _____.
2 Very soon they are going to _____.
3 Jane asks if she is going to be _____ and the fortune-teller says _____.
4 She pays the fortune-teller $_____.

e 5 18 Read and listen to **PART 5**. In pairs, answer the questions.

1 Who was the fortune-teller?
2 Why did he pay Madame Yolanda $100?
3 What's the fifth card? What do you think is going to happen?

It's written in the cards

PART 1

"Come in," said a voice. Jane Ross opened the door and went into a small room. There was a man sitting behind a table.

"Good afternoon," said Jane.

"I want to see Madame Yolanda, the fortune-teller."

"Madame Yolanda isn't here today," said the man. "But don't worry. I'm going to tell you about your future. What questions do you want to ask?" Jane looked at the fortune-teller. She couldn't see him very well because the room was very dark.

PART 3

He turned over the second card.

"Hmm, a house. A new house. You're going to move, very soon, to another country."

"But my boyfriend works here. He can't move to another country."

"Let's look at the next card," said the fortune-teller. He turned over the third card.

"A heart. You're going to fall in love."

"With who?" asked Jane.

"Let me concentrate. I can see a tall man. He's very attractive."

"Oh, that's Jim," said Jane.

"Who's Jim? Your boyfriend?"

"No. Jim's a man I met at a party last month. He's an actor, from New York. He says he's in love with me. It was his idea for me to come to Madame Yolanda."

"Well, the card says that you're going to fall in love with him."

"Are you sure?" asked Jane. "But what about my boyfriend?"

"Let's look at the fourth card," said the fortune-teller.

PART 5

The fortune-teller stood up. He turned on the light. At that moment, an old woman came in. "So, what happened?" she asked.

"It was perfect! She believed everything," said Jim. "I told you, I'm a very good actor. She was sure I was a fortune-teller!"

He gave the woman $100.

"That's Jane's $50 and another $50 from me. Thanks very much, Madame Yolanda. Bye."

Madame Yolanda took the money. The fifth card was still on the table, facedown. She turned it over. It was the plane. She looked at it for a minute and then she shouted:

"Wait, young man! Don't travel with that girl – her plane is going to..."

But the room was empty.

3 GRAMMAR *be going to* (predictions)

a Look at these two sentences. Which one is a plan? Which one is a prediction?

1 She's going to be very lucky.
2 She's going to go on vacation next week.

b ➤ **p.142 Grammar Bank 10C.** Learn more about *be going to* (predictions) and practice it.

c Write four predictions, about the **weather**, **sports**, **your town** / **country**, and **you**. Use *I think…going to…*

I think it's going to snow tonight.

d Compare your predictions with a partner. Do you agree?

4 PRONUNCIATION the letters *oo*

The pronunciation of *oo*
oo can be pronounced /ʊ/ (e.g., *book* /bʊk/) or /u/ (e.g., *spoon* /spun/). Use your dictionary to check the pronunciation of new *oo* words.
Be careful, *room* can be pronounced /rʊm/ or /rum/.

a 5 20 Listen to the two sound words. Can you hear the difference in the vowel sound?

ʊ bull		u boot	

b 5 21 Listen and write the words in the right column.

afternoon book choose cook food good
look moon school soon spoon too took

c 5 22 Listen and check.

d Practice saying the sentences.

Good afternoon.
Look at the moon!
He's a good-looking cook.
It's too soon!
Is the food good?

5 SPEAKING

Role-play fortune-telling.

A Look at the ten cards in **1**. Secretly, number the cards 1–10 in a different order.
B Choose five numbers between 1 and 10.
A Predict **B**'s future using those cards.
B Ask for more information. Then change roles.

A *I'm going to tell you about your future. Your first card is a star. You're going to become famous. You're going to be on TV...*

B *Great! What show?*

6 5 23 SONG *Fortune Teller* ♫

9 & 10 Review and Check

GRAMMAR

Circle a, b, or c.

1 There's _____ milk in the refrigerator.
a some b any c a

2 We don't need _____ bread.
a no b any c a

3 How _____ fruit do you eat a day?
a much b many c a lot

4 I drink _____ coffee.
a much b a lot c a lot of

5 **A** How much salt do you eat?
B _____.
a A little b A few c Much

6 **A** Is there any sugar?
B No, sorry, _____.
a there isn't none
b there isn't any
c there isn't some

7 Tea is _____ coffee in this cafe.
a cheaper that
b more cheap than
c cheaper than

8 Oranges are _____ than bananas.
a more healthy b healthier c healthyer

9 My English is _____ than my brother's.
a gooder b better c more good

10 This is _____ size that we have.
a the biggest b the most big c the bigger

11 It's _____ restaurant in the city.
a the baddest b the worst c the worse

12 What's _____ park in your town?
a the most beautiful
b most beautiful
c the more beautiful

13 _____ to buy my ticket this afternoon.
a I go b I going c I'm going

14 _____ to get married?
a Do they going
b They are going
c Are they going

15 I think _____ tomorrow.
a it snows
b it's snowing
c it's going to snow

VOCABULARY

a Circle the word that is different.

1	breakfast	lunch	dessert	dinner
2	strawberries	mushrooms	onions	peas
3	orange juice	sugar	milk	water
4	potato chips	French fries	tomatoes	potatoes
5	fruit salad	ice cream	cake	chicken

b Match the food and the containers.

soda fruit juice cookies sugar honey

1 a can of _____
2 a bag of _____
3 a jar of _____
4 a package of _____
5 a carton of _____

c Circle the right word or phrase.

1 It's *a hundred twenty | a hundred and twenty* miles from here.
2 The population is about three *million | millions.*
3 That new *department mall | department store* is great.
4 Let's have a snack at one of those cafes in the *square | bridge.*
5 Where is the main train *office | station*?

d Complete the phrases with these verbs.

become fall get go have meet move see show stay

1 _____ in a hotel
2 _____ by bus
3 _____ famous
4 _____ married
5 _____ in love
6 _____ the sights in a city
7 _____ somebody new
8 _____ somebody around your city
9 _____ a great meal
10 _____ to a new house

PRONUNCIATION

a Circle the word with a different sound.

1 bread peas meat tea

2 sugar shopping fish soda

3 cereal carrots salad rice

4 chef church chicken cheese

5 food cook book good

b Underline the stressed syllable.

1 cho|colate
2 de|ssert
3 su|per|mar|ket
4 in|teres|ting
5 dan|ge|rous

CAN YOU UNDERSTAND THIS TEXT?

a Read the article once. Then read it again and choose a, b, or c.

1 A survey showed that Americans _____.
   a eat 15 percent more junk food than healthy food
   b eat the same amount of junk food as healthy food
   c eat too much junk food
2 Americans have unhealthy diets because _____.
   a they eat cheap food
   b they think healthy foods are expensive
   c they think cooking at home is expensive
3 Americans can make their diets better, if they _____.
   a spend a lot of money
   b cook more often at home
   c never eat fast food

b Look at the highlighted words or phrases in the text and guess their meaning.

The unhealthy American diet

The US has a problem with obesity, and the government says we need to have healthier diets. However, American shoppers are continuing to fill their supermarket baskets with unhealthy food.

A survey showed that more than 30 percent of calories Americans eat comes from junk food—food high in salt, sugar, and fat. And nearly 15 percent of Americans eat a fast-food meal every day (e.g., a hamburger, French fries, and a soda).

Children have a problem, too. Scientists say that children born today can die before their parents because of obesity and unhealthy food choices by their families.

Why do Americans have unhealthy diets? There are many reasons, but money is the main one. Americans think that healthy foods are more expensive than packaged foods. They also think it takes a long time to cook a healthy meal.

So, how can Americans make their diets better? They can stop eating fast food and cook more often at home. They can bring healthy lunches to work or school, and they can have fruit for snacks during the day.

VIDEO CAN YOU UNDERSTAND THESE PEOPLE?

5 24 **On the street** Watch or listen to five people and answer the questions.

Yvonne

Cecile

Joel

Reed

Arja

1 Yvonne doesn't eat much _____.
   a fruit b sugar c salt
2 Cecile cooks excellent _____ food.
   a Italian b Indian c Indonesian
3 Joel likes Barcelona because there are a lot of _____.
   a great stores b great buildings c great beaches
4 Reed is going to stay at his _____'s house in Los Angeles.
   a aunt b friend c family
5 When Arja compares the US to her country she doesn't mention _____.
   a the food b the buildings c the weather

CAN YOU SAY THIS IN ENGLISH?

Do the tasks with a partner. Check (✓) the box if you can do them.

Can you...?

1 ☐ say what you usually have for breakfast
2 ☐ compare your country with the US in three ways
3 ☐ ask your partner four questions with the superlative of the **bold** adjective
   • What's _____ present you've ever bought? **expensive**
   • What's _____ movie you've seen this year? **good**
   • What's _____ vacation you've ever had? **bad**
   • What's _____ place you've ever been to? **cold**
4 ☐ ask your partner what he / she is going to do
   • tonight • tomorrow • next weekend

VIDEO **Short movies** the history of the sandwich
Watch and enjoy the movie.

G adverbs (manner and modifiers)
V common adverbs
P word stress

11A First impressions

How do they dress?

They dress very fashionably, but casually.

1 READING

a Look at the photos of three cities.
Do you know what countries they are in?

b Read two blogs on a travel website, about people's first impressions of two of these cities. Which two are they?

c Read the blogs again. Answer with the names of the cities.

Where...?

1 do people eat a lot of salt and sugar
2 do TV shows have subtitles
3 are the days very short in winter
4 do a lot of people have bad habits when they drive
5 is the city safer than the writer thought
6 are the houses colorfully painted
7 do you see men taking care of young children
8 do people speak very slowly

Travel blogs

September 16

Kate in _____

The driving

I think people drive really dangerously, which surprised me because I thought they were careful drivers here. They don't drive fast, but people are always on the phone in the car, which you don't see much in my country nowadays.

The food

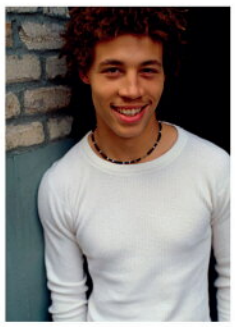
The food can be delicious, but I think people eat very unhealthily. In restaurants, they often add salt to their food. And they drink a lot of soda! The headquarters of the Coca-Cola company is based here, and they even have a Coca-Cola museum. Once I went to a coffee shop and asked for a double espresso, no milk and no sugar. I had to repeat my order three times because the waitress couldn't understand me. She said people here only ask for lattes and cappuccinos with a lot of sugar!

The people

In general, people are very friendly. The people I'm staying with, who live just outside the city, know all their neighbors really well. They often don't lock their doors, which surprised me because people say it's a dangerous city. They speak incredibly slowly, with a strong accent and sometimes I have a problem understanding them.

December 14

Mark in _____



The weather

It's December and it gets dark at about 3 p.m., which is depressing! There's a lot of snow right now, but all the buses and trains are running perfectly, not like in my country where everything stops when it snows!

The houses

All the houses are painted in pretty colors, like red, green, and blue. And many houses have a yellow and blue flag. Inside, the houses are decorated beautifully with a lot of flowers and modern wooden furniture.

The people

People are friendly and polite, but formal. They dress fashionably but casually, and of course, you see a lot of very blond women here. You also see a lot of men who are taking care of very young babies. Everybody speaks English really well, maybe because a lot of the TV is in English with subtitles.

d Find words in the blogs that mean:

Kate

Para 1	_____	*adv*	at this time
Para 2	_____	*noun*	the office where the leaders of an organization work
Para 3	_____	*verb*	close with a key

Mark

Para 4	_____	*adj*	sth making you feel sad
Para 5	_____	*adj*	made from a tree
Para 6	_____	*adv*	not in a formal way

e Which of the two cities would you prefer to live in? Why?

2 GRAMMAR adverbs

a Look at the highlighted adverbs in the blogs. Answer the questions.

1 What two letters are added to an adjective to make an adverb?
2 Which adverb is the same word as the adjective?
3 Which is the adverb from *good*?
4 Which three adverbs are describing other adverbs?

b Now look at the highlighted adverbs again in Kate's first paragraph. Complete the rules with *before* or *after*.

1 Some adverbs describe how people do things. They go _____ the verb or verb phrase.
2 Some adverbs describe another adverb (or adjective). They go _____ the adverb (or adjective).

c ➤ **p.144 Grammar Bank 11A.** Learn more about adverbs and practice them.

d 5 27 Listen and say what is happening. Use an adverb.

They're speaking quietly.

3 PRONUNCIATION word stress

a Underline the stressed syllable in the adjectives.

Adjectives	Adverbs
dan|ge|rous	dangerously
po|lite	politely
beau|ti|ful	beautifully
in|cre|di|ble	incredibly
care|ful	carefully
fa|shio|na|ble	fashionably
ca|su|al	casually
per|fect	perfectly
un|heal|thy	unhealthily

b 5 28 Listen and check. Repeat the adjectives.

c 5 29 Now listen and repeat the adverbs. Does the stress change?

4 LISTENING & SPEAKING

a 5 30 Listen to Jemma talking about the third city. In general, is she positive, negative, or neutral about it?

b Listen again. Then, with a partner, complete Jemma's sentences.

Eating out

People spend a lot of time in [1]_____. People who [2]_____ go out to have [3]_____. They don't have it in their [4]_____.

When people go out in big groups, [5]_____ _____ all sit at one end of the table and [6]_____ _____ at the other.

The women

Women here talk very [7]_____ and very [8]_____.

Women dress [9]_____ _____.

Work

There's a myth that the Spanish don't [10]_____ _____, but I don't think it's [11]_____.

People have a [12]_____ lunch break, but they leave work very [13]_____.

c Answer the questions in small groups.

1 In your country or city how do people...?
- dress for special occasions
- treat tourists
- drive
- eat at lunchtime during the week
- speak foreign languages
- behave during sports games
- decorate their houses

2 Think of a time when you went to another country or another city / region in your country for the first time. What did you notice about...?
- the people
- the food
- the driving
- the houses
- the weather

5 WRITING

Choose two headings from the blogs in **1** or the listening in **4**. Write two paragraphs, either about your country or a country you have visited.

G verbs + infinitive
V verbs that take the infinitive
P sentence stress

Would you like to get a new job?

No, I want to stay where I am.

11B What do you want to do?

1 READING & SPEAKING

a Read about the website 43things.com. How does it work?

> **43Things** is a website where people write things that they want to do. There are always 43 different ambitions. Some are trivial, and some are more serious. Other people respond and write about their experiences and sometimes give advice.

b Read today's 43 things and responses A–E. Match the responses with five things people want to do. Do you think their advice is good?

c Complete the phrases from the text with a verb from the list.

become bite choose climb /klaɪm/
download go learn spend visit

1 _____ a mountain
2 _____ on a safari
3 _____ to cook
4 _____ less time on the Internet
5 _____ the lyrics
6 _____ five things you really like eating
7 _____ a Goth
8 _____ all the continents
9 _____ my nails

d Cover the verbs and try to remember them.

2 GRAMMAR verbs + infinitive

a Look at the highlighted verbs in the text. What's the form of the next verb? Which one is different?

b ➤ p.144 Grammar Bank 11B. Learn more about verbs + infinitive and practice them.

What do you want to do with your life?

On 43Things today, people want to…

climb Mount Kilimanjaro get up earlier go on a safari
get a new job have very long hair have more time for myself
learn to cook learn to dance like Shakira make a short movie
visit all the continents spend less time on the Internet write a novel
read 12 books a month run a half marathon see Radiohead live
learn to speak Italian stop biting my nails get married
go to Iceland write a song become a Goth paint my kitchen
spend less money on clothes stop eating meat stay awake for 24 hours

A

_____

Spend less time on Facebook, for example, only two hours on weekends. Stop using Second Life if you use it. (I uninstalled it.)

B

_____

Get a Laura Pausini CD. Download the lyrics to a song and translate them – you can use Google Translate for this. Listen carefully to the pronunciation, and then sing along with her. (I sang "Incancellabile.")

C

_____

You just need to stop cutting it! Don't worry about the latest fashions. Go for it!

D

_____

Choose five things you really like eating (e.g., roast chicken and chocolate cake) and then look at recipes on the Internet. Choose the recipes that you'd like to try, preferably ones that aren't too difficult. Make the five things again and again until they're perfect. It isn't difficult. You just need to practice.

E

_____

Wear black clothes. Be yourself, and listen to bands like The Cult and The Mission.

Second Life® a website that is a free 3D virtual world where users can socialize, create new personalities, and interact with other users
Laura Pausini an Italian pop singer, popular in several European and Latin American countries

3 PRONUNCIATION sentence stress

a 5 32 Listen and repeat the dialogue. Copy the rhythm. How do you pronounce *to*?

A **Would** you **like** to **go** to **Iceland**?
B **No**, I **wouldn't**.
A **Why not**?
B **Because** I **don't like** the **cold**.

b 5 33 Listen to another dialogue. Complete the missing stressed words.

A _____ you _____ to _____ a _____ _____?
B _____, I'd _____ to.
A _____?
B Because I _____ my _____. It's _____ _____.

c Practice the dialogues with a partner.

d In pairs, choose ten ambitions from **What do you want to do with your life**? Ask your partner questions using *Would you like to...?*

Would you like to climb Mount Kilimanjaro? — *Yes, I would. / No, I wouldn't.*

4 SPEAKING

Work in pairs. Take turns.
A Tell your partner about the things below.
B Respond to what **A** says. Ask questions.
A Ask *What about you?*

- a country you **want to go** to
- something you **would like to learn to do**
- something you **need to do** tomorrow
- a vacation you **are planning to take** soon
- a famous person **you hope to meet** one day
- a movie you **want to see** soon
- a dangerous sport **you would like to try**
- something you **need to buy** soon
- a singer or group you **hope to see** one day

I really want to go to Australia. — *Oh, yes? Why Australia?*

5 WRITING

a Create a class page for **43Things**. Write three things you really want to do. Your teacher will write some of them on the board.

b Read other students' ambitions and choose one that you know something about. Write a response (like the ones in **43Things**) to give advice or talk about your experience.

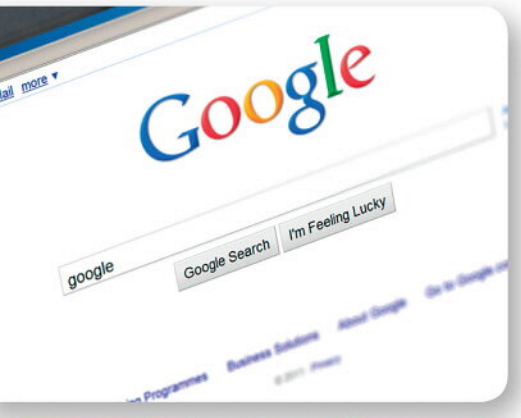
6 5 34 SONG *Don't Tell Me that it's Over*

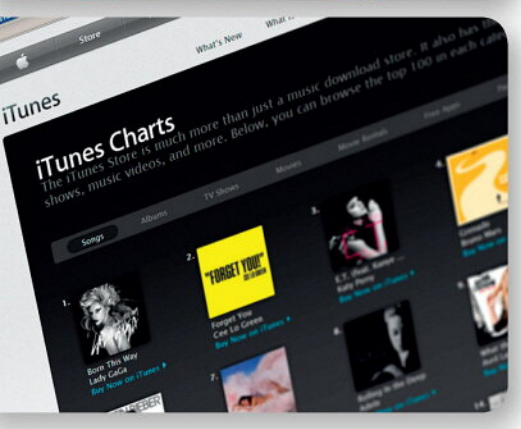
G articles
V the Internet
P word stress

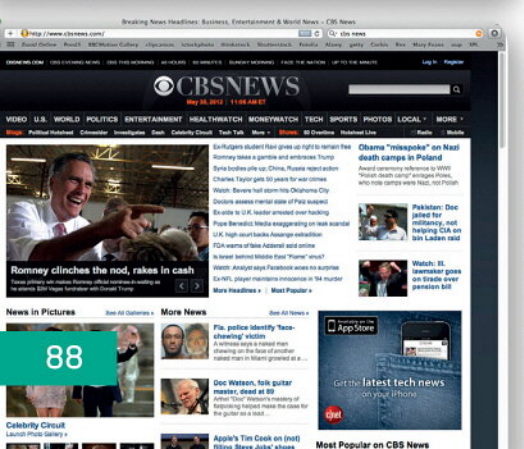
Do men and women use the Internet in the same way?

No, they don't. They're very different.

11C Men, women, and the Internet







1 VOCABULARY & PRONUNCIATION
the Internet

a Do you ever visit any of the websites on this page, or websites like them? How much time do you spend a day on the Internet? Do you use it mainly for your work / studies or for pleasure?

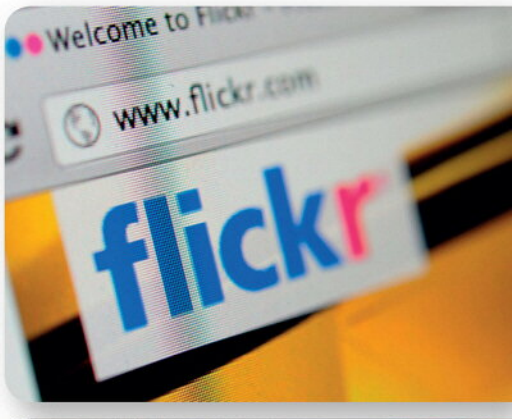
b Look at some words and phrases related to the Internet. Match them with their definitions.

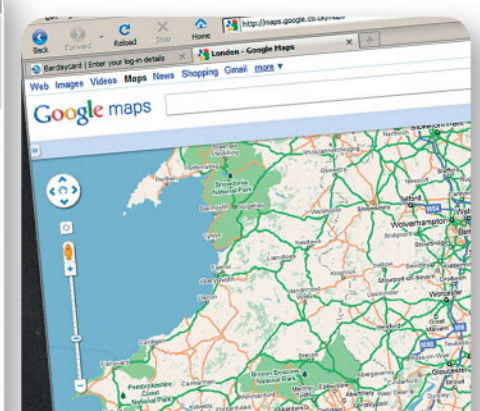
a|ttach|ment down|load goo|gle log in on|line search for skype so|cial net|work up|load wi|fi

1 _____ *adj, adv* on the Internet
2 _____ *noun* sth you send with an email, e.g., a document or a photo
3 _____ *verb* to move sth from your computer to an Internet site, e.g., photos
4 _____ *verb* to move sth from an Internet site to your computer, e.g., music, movies
5 _____ *verb* to type words into the search engine *Google*® to find information about sb / sth
6 _____ *verb* to make a telephone call over the Internet
7 _____ *verb* to type your username (usually your name or email address) and a password to begin using a computer or a website
8 _____ *noun* a way of connecting a computer to the Internet without wires
9 _____ *noun* a website that people use to communicate, e.g., *Facebook*, *Twitter*, etc.
10 _____ *verb* to try to find sb or sth, e.g., on the Internet

Dictionary abbreviations
sth = something **sb** = somebody

c 5 35 Listen and check. Repeat the words. Underline the stressed syllable in the multisyllable words.





2 SPEAKING & LISTENING

a With a partner, look at some things that people do on the Internet. For each one, say if you do it often, sometimes, hardly ever, or never.

I often send emails for work. What about you?

- ☐ send personal emails
- ☐ send emails for work
- ☐ read the news
- ☐ buy things on shopping websites
- ☐ buy things on *eBay* (or a similar site)
- ☐ get sports information
- ☐ visit websites about health and medicine
- ☐ use social networks
- ☐ play games
- ☐ download music
- ☐ visit forums about diet or caring for children
- ☐ use online banking
- ☐ use online maps for directions
- ☐ book tickets and hotels online

b Now go through the list again and write **M** if you think men do them more than women, **W** if you think women do them more than men, and **ND** if you think there is no difference.

c 5 36 Listen to an interview with a marketing expert about how men and women use the Internet. Check your answers.

d Do you think the situation is the same in your country?

3 GRAMMAR articles

a Complete the email with *a*, *an*, *the*, or – (= no article).

Sent: Friday, July 8 4:16 PM
To: Carola Whitney
Subject: **Re: Hello!**

Hi Carola,

Thanks for your email. I would really like to write to you and practice my English.

I'm [1]_____ student at Buenos Aires University. It's [2]_____ biggest university in Argentina. I'm studying [3]_____ medicine. I live in Buenos Aires with my grandmother, [4]_____ my mother's mother, because my family lives in [5]_____ small town far away, but I go [6]____ home on [7]_____ weekend.

I love listening to [8]_____ classical music, and [9]_____ last week, I went to [10]_____ amazing concert at [11]_____ Opera House here.

b ➤ **p.144 Grammar Bank 11C.** Learn more about articles and practice them.

c Work in pairs. **A** choose a circle. Think of three things, three places, etc., and tell **B**. **B** respond and ask for more information. Then change roles.

I love fish, strawberries, and chocolate cake. I don't like tomatoes. — *Tomatoes? Why not?*

- 3 kinds of food you love (and one you don't like)
- 3 things you always have in your bag or pocket
- 3 things you sometimes do on Saturday evening
- 3 things you do first thing in the morning
- 3 things women usually like doing (but men don't)
- 3 things you did last night
- 3 jobs you would like to do (and one you wouldn't)
- 3 things men usually like doing (but women don't)

Practical English Going home

EPISODE 6

1 VIDEO JENNY'S LAST MORNING

a 5 38 Watch or listen and mark the sentences **T** (true) or **F** (false).

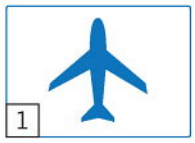
1 Rob arrives late.
2 He has a coffee with Jenny.
3 Jenny has good news for him.
4 The job offer is for a year.
5 Rob thinks *A Writer in New York* is a good name for the column.
6 Rob needs time to think.

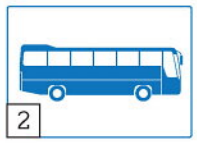
b Watch or listen again. Say why the **F** sentences are false.

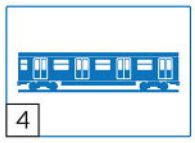
2 VOCABULARY public transportation

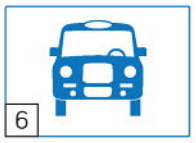
a Match the words and pictures.

[4] train
[ ] plane
[ ] taxi
[ ] bus
[ ] ferry
[ ] subway









b 5 39 Listen and check.

c Complete the headings with a word from **a**.

1 _____
You get one at a stand or by waving your hand.
They are also called cabs.
People usually give the driver a tip (= some extra money, about 10–20%).
In New York City, they are yellow.

2 _____
You get one at an airport.
First, you have to check in.
Then you go through security to the departure lounge.
Finally, you go to your gate.

3 _____
You get one at a station.
You usually need to buy a ticket or card first.
Then you need to find the right platform.
Most go underground in big cities.

4 _____
You get one at a station or a stop.
Some are public and some are private.
You can buy a ticket in advance or sometimes you can pay the driver.
In New York City, they are white and blue.

d Cover the columns and look at the headings. Try to remember the four facts about each type of public transportation.

3 VIDEO GETTING TO THE AIRPORT

a 5 40 Watch or listen to Jenny's three conversations. How does she get to the airport?

b Watch or listen again. Complete the **You Hear** phrases.

You Say	You Hear
Could you call me a taxi, please?	Yes, of course. _____ to?
To Paddington station.	And when would you like it _____?
Now, please.	
How much is it?	That's £_____, please.
Make it £15. And could I have a receipt?	Thank you very much, _____.
Could I have a ticket to Heathrow Airport, please?	Single or _____?
Single, please.	Standard or _____ class?
Standard, please.	That's £18.
Can I pay by credit card?	Yes, of _____.

c 5 41 Watch or listen and repeat the **You Say** phrases. Copy the rhythm.

d Practice the dialogue with a partner.

e In pairs, role-play the dialogue. Then change roles.

A (book open) You are the receptionist, the taxi driver, and the ticket clerk. The taxi costs $12.60. The ticket costs $32.50.

B (book closed) You want to get a taxi to Penn Station, and then a train to JFK Airport. Begin with *Could you call me a taxi, please?*

4 VIDEO SAYING GOODBYE

a 5 42 Watch or listen and answer the questions.

1 What does Jenny leave in the hotel?
2 How does she get it back?
3 What has Rob decided to do?
4 Is Eddie going to meet her at the airport? Why (not)?
5 Who is Eddie? How old is he?

b Look at the **Social English phrases**. Who says them: **J**enny or **R**ob?

Social English phrases	American and British English
I can't believe it!	*one-way ticket* = American English
Thank you so much.	*single ticket* = British English
I'd love to [accept].	*round-trip ticket* = American English
I'm so happy.	*return ticket* = British English
Have a good journey.	*coach* = American English
See you in [New York].	*standard* = British English

c 5 43 Watch or listen and check. How do you say them in your language?

d Watch or listen again and repeat the phrases.

Can you...?

- ☐ ask for a taxi
- ☐ buy a ticket for public transportation
- ☐ use common phrases, e.g., *Thank you so much, See you in New York*, etc.

G present perfect
V irregular past participles
P sentence stress

12A Books and movies

Have you seen the movie?

No, I haven't, but I've read the book.

1 GRAMMAR present perfect

a Look at some images from movies. What do the movies have in common?

b 5 44 Listen to Alan and Lucy talking on the phone. What two things are they going to do tonight?

c Listen again and read the conversation. Complete the chart below and answer the questions with a partner.

Alan Hi, Lucy. Have you finished your report?
Lucy Yes, I have, finally!
Alan What do you want to do tonight? Do you want to go out?
Lucy No, I'm a little tired.
Alan Would you like to come here? I can order pizza and we can watch a movie.
Lucy Good idea. What movies do you have?
Alan How about *Eclipse*? Have you seen it?
Lucy No, I haven't seen it, but I've read the book.
Alan Is it good?
Lucy I loved it! Vampires – perfect for a winter night!
Alan Great. What pizza topping do you want?
Lucy Cheese and blood, please...no, cheese and tomato.

+	I've seen the movie.
−	I _____ the movie.
?	_____ you _____ the movie?

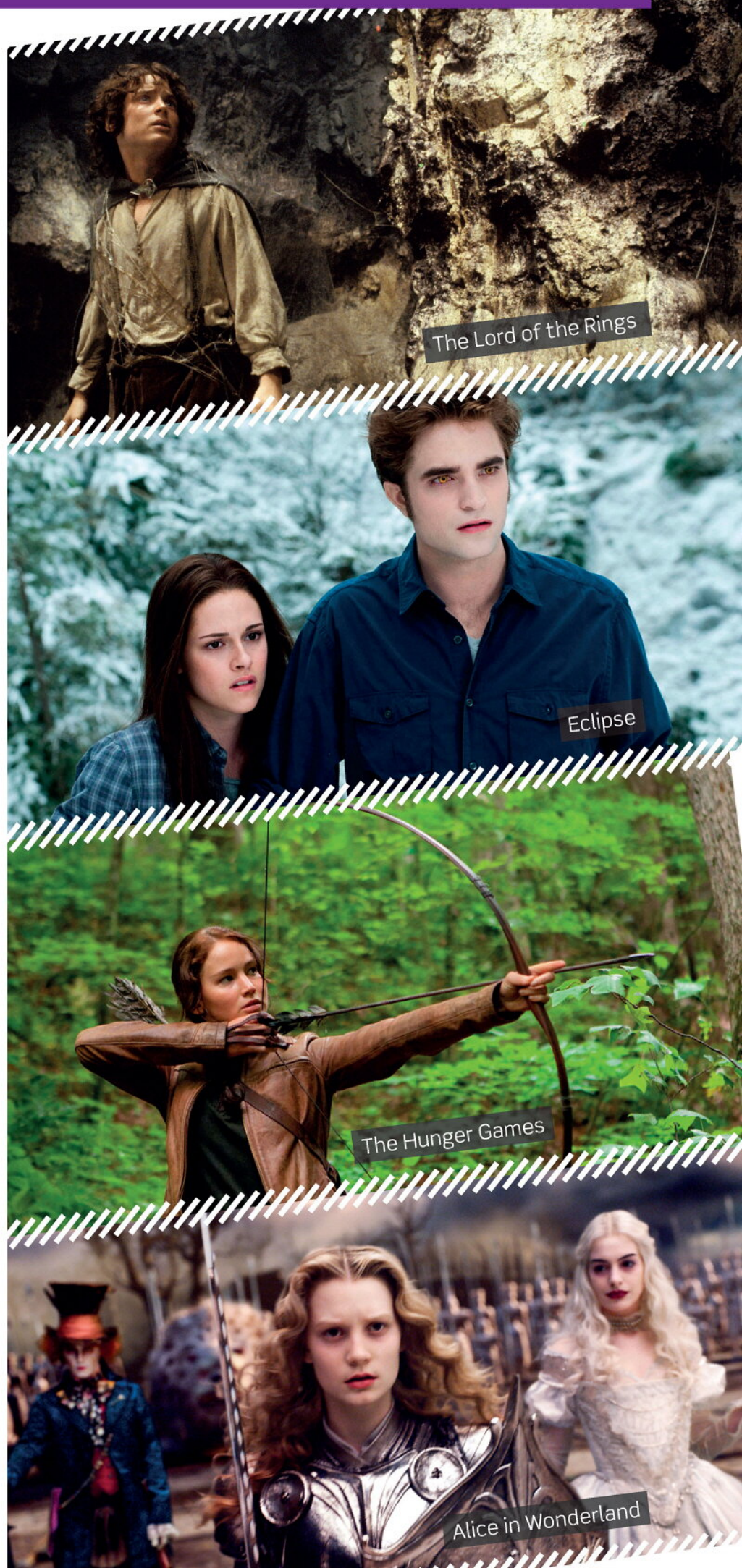
1 What is *'ve*? What verb is *seen* from?
2 Change the three sentences in the chart to third person singular (*He* or *She*).
3 Lucy says, *"I've read the book."* Do we know *when* she read it?

d ➤ p.146 Grammar Bank 12A. Learn more about the present perfect and practice it.

e Look at the movies in **a** and talk to a partner. Which of the movies have you seen? Have you read any of the books?

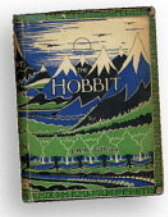
I've seen Eclipse, *but I haven't read the book.*

I haven't seen the movie of Alice in Wonderland, *but I've read the book.*



2 PRONUNCIATION sentence stress

a 5 46 Listen and repeat the dialogue. Copy the rhythm.



A **Have** you **seen** *The* ***Hobbit***?
B **No**, I **haven't**.
A **Have** you **read** the **book**?
B **Yes**, I **have**. I've **read** it **twice**.

b Write down the names of three more movies from books. Ask and answer with a partner.

Have you seen...? *Yes, I have. / No, I haven't.*
Have you read the book?

3 VOCABULARY
irregular past participles

a Look at some irregular past participles. Which verbs do you think they are from? Write the base form and the simple past.

	base form	simple past	past participle
1	*be*	*was / were*	been
2			broken
3			done
4			eaten
5			fallen
6			forgotten
7			gone
8			left
9			sung
10			spoken
11			taken
12			worn

b 5 47 Listen and check.

c 5 48 Cover **a**. Listen and say the simple past and past participle.

be *was / were, been*

d Complete the **Verb** column with a past participle from **a**.

	Verb
1 Have you ■ your homework?	____
2 I'm sorry, I've ■ your name.	____
3 Have you ever ■ a photo of an actor?	____
4 Ann's ■ on vacation. She's going to be away for three weeks.	____
5 Have you ■ to Mike about the party?	____
6 I've never ■ that jacket. It was a big mistake.	____
7 Jim's ■ in love with an Argentinian woman.	____
8 Oh, no! I've ■ my glasses.	____

e Cover the **Verb** column. Can you remember the sentences?

4 SPEAKING & LISTENING

a Complete the phrases with the past participle of the verb in parentheses.

MOVIE EXPERIENCES
Find someone who has...

	Name	What movie was it?
1 _____ asleep watching a movie (fall)		
2 _____ the soundtrack of a movie (buy)		
3 _____ the movie theater before the end of a movie (leave)		
4 _____ a movie more than three times (see)		
5 _____ during a movie (cry)		
6 _____ a movie in English with subtitles (see)		
7 _____ in a movie (appear)		

b Stand up and move around the class. Ask *Have you ever...?* questions with 1–7. When somebody answers *Yes, I have*, write down his or her name and ask *What movie was it?*

c 5 49 Listen to three people answering one of the questions from **a**. Which question is it?

d Listen again. Complete the chart for each person.

	Which movie?	How many?	Why?
1			
2			
3			

5 5 50 SONG *Flashdance*

G present perfect or simple past?
V more irregular past participles
P irregular past participles

Have you been to New York City?

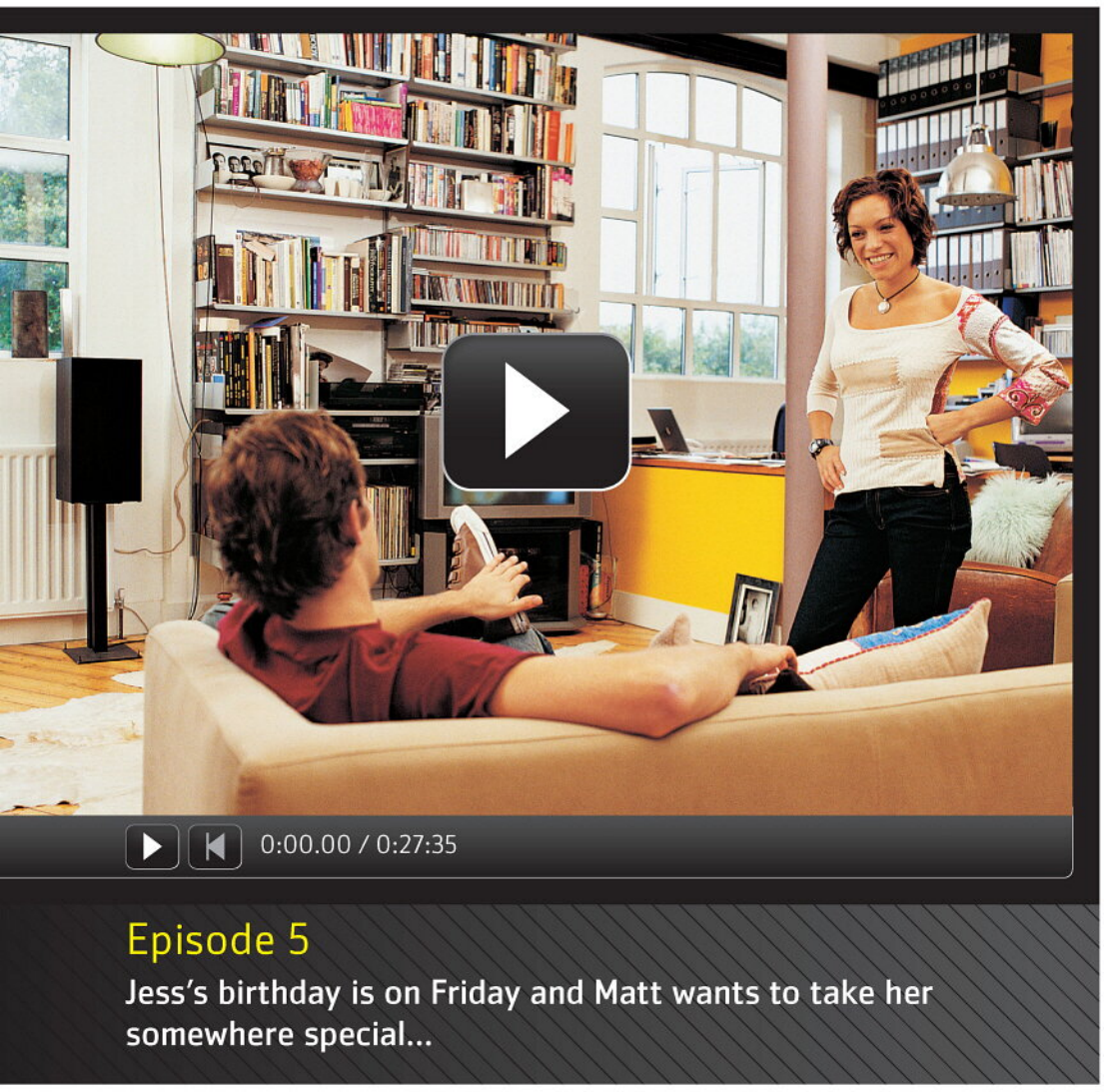
Yes, I have. I went there last year.

12B I've never been there!

1 LISTENING

a Are you following a TV series right now? Which one? Why do you like it?

b 5 51 Look at the information about an episode from an American TV series. Listen to part of the episode. Then answer questions 1 and 2.



Episode 5

Jess's birthday is on Friday and Matt wants to take her somewhere special...

1 Which restaurants has Jess eaten at before? Check (✓) or put an ✗ in the boxes.

☐ The Peking Duck ☐ Appetito ☐ Luigi's

2 Do they agree on which restaurant to go to?

c Listen again and answer the questions.

1 When did Jess go to *The Peking Duck* and who with?
2 How many times has she been to *Appetito*?
3 What did Matt say happened when they went to *Luigi's*?
4 Why is Jess angry?
5 Who does Jess think Matt went with to *Luigi's*?
6 What does Matt say? Do you believe him?

2 GRAMMAR

present perfect or simple past?

a Look at part of the conversation between Matt and Jess. In pairs, answer the questions.

Matt Have you been to *The Peking Duck*?
Jess Yes, I have.
Matt Oh, no! When did you go there?
Jess Last month. I went with some people from work.

1 What tense is Matt's first question?
2 What tense is Matt's second question?
3 Which of the two questions is about a specific time in the past?

b ➤ **p.146 Grammar Bank 12B.** Learn more about the present perfect and simple past and practice them.

c Play *Guess where I've been.*

Guess where I've been

1 Write down the names of **six** cities in your country or abroad (three you **have been to** and three you **haven't been to**.)

2 Exchange lists with your partner. Check (✓) the three cities you think your partner has been to, but don't tell him / her.

3 Ask *Have you been to...?* for each place to check your guesses. Did you guess correctly?

Have you been to Boston?

4 Now ask some simple past questions for the cities your partner *has* been to.

When did you go to...?

Did you like it?

3 VOCABULARY & PRONUNCIATION

more irregular past participles

a Look at some more irregular past participles. Write the base form and the simple past.

1	*buy*	*bought*	bought
2	_____	_____	drunk
3	_____	_____	found
4	_____	_____	given
5	_____	_____	heard
6	_____	_____	had
7	_____	_____	known
8	_____	_____	lost
9	_____	_____	made
10	_____	_____	met
11	_____	_____	paid
12	_____	_____	sent
13	_____	_____	spent
14	_____	_____	thought
15	_____	_____	won

b 5 54 Listen and check.

c ➤ **p.165 Irregular verbs** Check (✓) all the ones you know. Try to learn the new ones.

d 5 55 Put three irregular past participles in each column. Listen and check.

bought broken cost done driven
drunk forgotten given gone got
known lost made paid spoken
sung taken written

clock	fish	train
up	phone	saw

e Play past participle *Bingo*.

4 SPEAKING

a Look at question 1 below. What words are missing in the present perfect question? What words are missing in the simple past question? What form do you need of the verb in **bold**?

Recently...

	Present perfect	Simple past
1	/ **be** to the movie theater recently?	What / see? / like it?
2	/ **buy** any new clothes recently?	What / buy?
3	/ **have** a really good meal recently?	Where / go? What / have?
4	/ **be** to a sports event recently?	/ your team win?

In your life...

	Present perfect	Simple past
5	/ ever **be** on TV?	What TV show / it?
6	/ ever **lose** your cell phone?	Where / lose it? / find it?
7	/ ever **win** a cup or medal?	What / win it for?
8	/ ever **speak** to a famous person?	Who / it? What / say?

b Work in pairs. **A** ask **B** the questions. If **B** answers *Yes, I have*, ask the simple past questions, too. Then change roles.

G review: question formation
V review: word groups
P review: sounds

12C The *American English File* questionnaire

1 READING

a Read the information about Sir Ian McKellen. Have you seen any of his movies? Did you like them?

Sir Ian McKellen is one of Britain's greatest actors. He was born in Burnley in the north of England on May 25, 1939. He first became well known as an actor for his roles in Shakespeare's plays, e.g., *Hamlet* and *Macbeth*. In recent years, he has had many important movie roles including James Whale in *Gods and Monsters*, Gandalf in *The Lord of the Rings* trilogy, and Magneto in *X-Men*.

b Sir Ian McKellen agreed to be interviewed especially for *American English File*. Read the interview and write a heading from the list below in each section.

YOUR ABILITIES
YOUR WORK EXPERIENCES
YOUR HOME
YOUR LIFESTYLE
YOUR PLACES
~~YOUR TASTES~~

c Read the interview again. Then mark the sentences **T** (true) or **F** (false). Say why the **F** ones are false.

1 He became an actor when he was a student.
2 He lives outside London.
3 He gets up early every day.
4 He's never been to India.
5 He spends a long time on the Internet every day.
6 He read *The Lord of the Rings* when he was young.
7 His desk isn't very neat.
8 He doesn't like animals.
9 He relaxes by playing games.
10 He doesn't have any ambitions.

INTERVIEW WITH SIR IAN MCKELLEN

1 *YOUR TASTES*

What kind of music do you like?
I hardly ever listen to music at home – I prefer going to concerts. I enjoy classical music and pop, but my favorite kind of music is traditional American jazz.

What book are you reading right now?
I'm reading *The Hammersteins*, a biography of the American theater family written by Oscar Andrew Hammerstein.

Who's your favorite historical character?
Perhaps William Shakespeare.

2 _____

What time do you usually get up in the morning?
If I am working, I get up one hour before I have to leave the house. If I am not working, and I went to bed late the night before, I get up at about 10 in the morning.

How much time do you spend a day on the Internet?
I can very easily spend three or four hours on the Internet, answering emails, reading the news, etc. I think of the Internet as a wonderful encyclopedia of information.

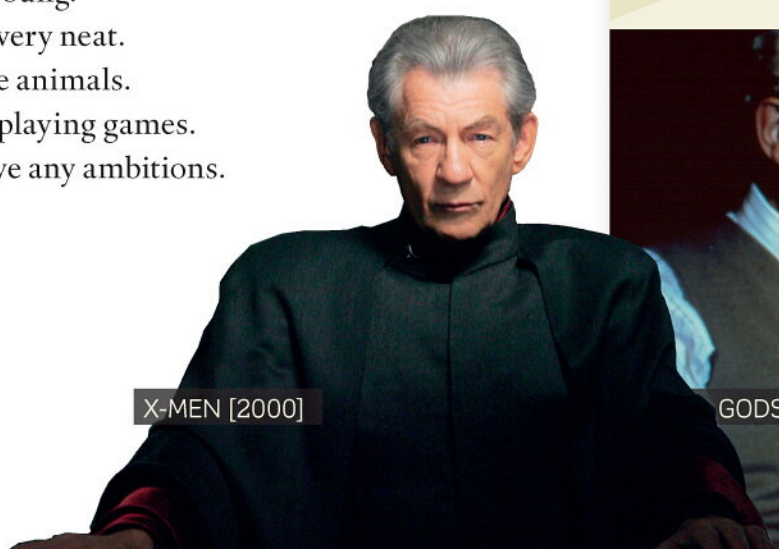
How do you relax?
I enjoy a late night sudoku, but especially being with friends.

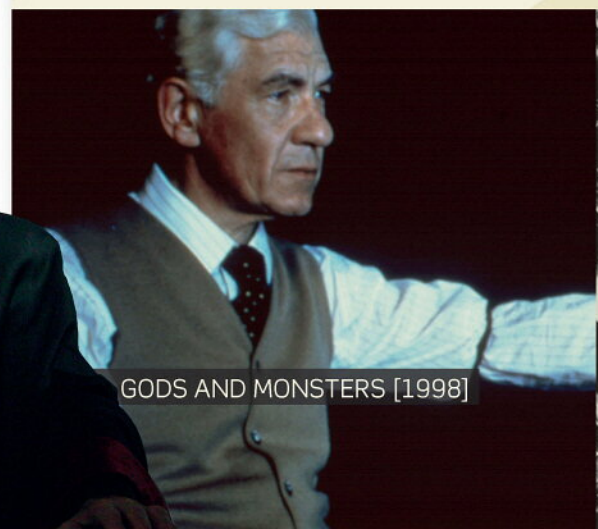
3 _____

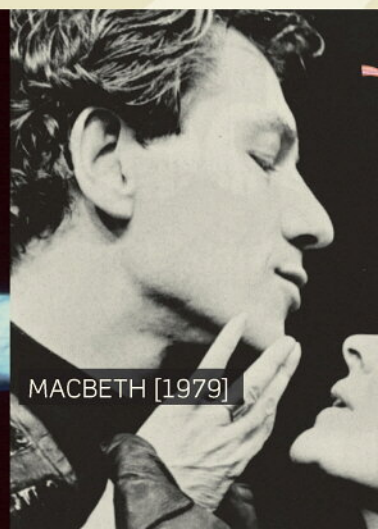
What's your favorite room in the house?
Perhaps the living room where I cook and eat, and from where I can see the River Thames in London.

What do you always have on your desk?
I always have too many letters, papers, and books which are waiting for me to read.

Do you have any pets? I love dogs, but I can't have one because I'm often away from home.


X-MEN [2000]


GODS AND MONSTERS [1998]


MACBETH [1979]

4

What languages do you speak?
I only speak English, but I can remember a little of the French I learned at school.

Can you play a musical instrument? No.

Is there something you would like to learn to do? Yes – many things, e.g., to sing well, to play the piano, and to speak foreign languages.

5

What's your favorite place in London?
I love the River Thames and the views from its many bridges.

Where are you going to go for your next vacation? I'm going to go to India for the first time in February.

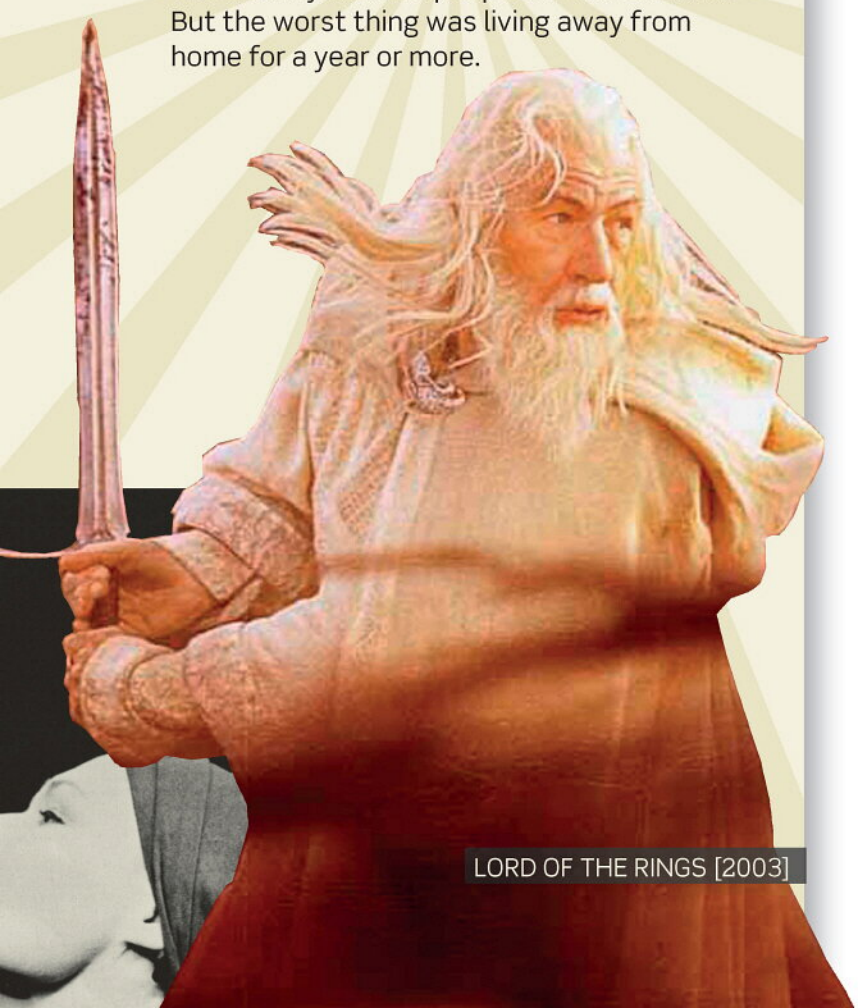
What's the most beautiful city you've ever visited? I can't choose between Edinburgh, Prague, and Venice.

6

What was your first job?
The first money I earned as a professional actor was when I was a student at Cambridge University in 1959. I played small parts in audio recordings of Shakespeare's plays.

When did you first read *The Lord of the Rings*?
I read it first when I was preparing to play Gandalf in the movie trilogy.

What was the best and worst thing about filming *The Lord of the Rings*?
The best thing about filming was discovering the countryside and people of New Zealand. But the worst thing was living away from home for a year or more.



LORD OF THE RINGS [2003]

2 VOCABULARY review: word groups

a Put these words from the interview in the right column.

actor | books | desk | go to bed | living room | small

Rooms	Things	Jobs
Furniture	**Adjectives**	**Daily routine**

b With a partner, add three more words to each column.

3 PRONUNCIATION review: sounds

a Look at some words from the interview. Which word has a different sound?

1 school choose cook too

2 first earn worst year

3 say wait can't favorite

4 friends many people ever

5 enjoy bridge dog languages

6 hour home perhaps hardly

7 thing three the think

8 information school traditional professional

b 5 56 Listen and check. Practice saying the words.

4 GRAMMAR & SPEAKING
review: question formation

a Without looking back at the interview, try to remember the questions for these answers.

1 Perhaps William Shakespeare.
2 I'm going to go to India for the first time in February.
3 I only speak English…
4 I can't choose between Edinburgh, Prague, and Venice.
5 I read it first when I was preparing to play Gandalf…

b Choose eight questions from the questionnaire to ask a partner.

11&12 Review and Check

GRAMMAR

Circle a, b, or c.

1 You speak _____.
  a very slow
  b very slowly
  c very slower

2 She plays tennis _____.
  a really well
  b really good
  c really goodly

3 My husband works _____.
  a incredible hard
  b incredibly hard
  c incredibly hardly

4 I'd like _____ a Ferrari.
  a drive b to drive c driving

5 What do we need _____ next?
  a to do b do c doing

6 She wants to pass her exams, but she doesn't like _____.
  a study b studing c studying

7 _____ usually drive fast in this country.
  a The men b Men c The man

8 I saw _____ good movie last night.
  a the b a c –

9 It's _____ best place to eat in the city.
  a the b a c –

10 Do you go to _____ bed late on weekends?
  a the b a c –

11 I've read the book, but I _____ the movie.
  a don't see
  b haven't saw
  c haven't seen

12 **A** Have you _____ anyone famous?
  B Yes, I have. A famous movie actor.
  a ever met b ever meet c met ever

13 _____ he been to New York?
  a Has b Did c Have

14 We _____ to Canada last year.
  a have gone b have been c went

15 She _____ in a restaurant before.
  a did never worked
  b have never worked
  c has never worked

VOCABULARY

a Write the opposite adjective or adverb.

1 quickly _____ 3 well _____ 5 formal _____
2 safe _____ 4 noisy _____ 6 healthily _____

b Complete the sentences with these verbs.

need learn promise want

1 I'd like to _____ to dance the tango.
2 You don't _____ to wash it. You've only worn it once.
3 I can't _____ to be on time. It depends on the traffic.
4 Do you _____ to go to a restaurant or to a cafe for lunch?

c Complete the sentences with these Internet words.

attachment wifi download online website

1 I do a lot of shopping _____ these days.
2 I can _____ the song for you tonight.
3 You can find all the information on the hotel's _____.
4 Don't open an _____ when you don't know who it's from.
5 We have _____ at home so I can send emails from my bedroom.

d Complete the sentences with *for*, *in*, *with*, or *up*.

1 Log _____ with your username and password.
2 I looked _____ *U2* on Wikipedia – they started in 1976.
3 You can search _____ all kinds of information on the Internet.
4 Have you ever seen a movie _____ subtitles?

e Write the past participle of the following verbs.

1 see saw _____ 3 know knew _____ 5 fall fell _____
2 go went _____ 4 give gave _____ 6 take took _____

PRONUNCIATION

a Circle the word with a different sound.

1 done sung gone won
2 said been any left
3 want had father watch
4 choose soon food book
5 worst wore prefer search

b Underline the stressed syllable.

1 po|lite|ly 2 dan|ge|rous|ly 3 de|cide 4 a|ttach|ment 5 web|site

CAN YOU UNDERSTAND THIS TEXT?

a Read the text and mark the sentences **T** (true) or **F** (false).

1 It is more expensive to live in the US than in the UK.
2 It is less expensive to be sick in the UK.
3 Waiters are better in UK restaurants.
4 It's more difficult to make friends in the US.
5 Americans are more direct than the British.

b Look at the highlighted words or phrases in the text and guess their meaning.

Amy Johnson is an English woman who lives and works in the US. We asked her to tell us about her first impressions of the US.

One of my first impressions was that the US is cheaper than the UK. I live in Ohio and the cost of living (rent, bills food, etc.) is lower than in Oxford, where I'm from in the UK. The only thing that's more expensive here is healthcare. You need to have health insurance, which can be very expensive. Of course in the UK, it's free to go to the doctor's or to the hospital.

Eating out is less expensive in the US as well and the service is better, but you can eat very well in England. There's a wide variety of food from all around the world (Chinese, Japanese, Italian, Turkish, etc.). And generally, I'd say British food is healthier than American food, and the portions are a lot smaller, too.

As for the people, I find Americans very positive and optimistic about the future compared to British people, who can be pessimistic. Also, when I'm in Ohio, I talk to everybody: salespeople, the person behind me in the supermarket line, the person sitting next to me in the restaurant. I can't do that in the UK – people are much more reserved. But, on the other hand, I think it's easier to make real friends in the UK than in the US.

I also think British people are not very good at telling you what they really think or (in a work situation) saying something negative about you. Americans just say things as they are!

CAN YOU UNDERSTAND THESE PEOPLE?

VIDEO

5 57 **On the street** Watch or listen to five people and answer the questions.

Arja

James

Ruth

Ben

Justin

1 Arja is visiting the US for _____.
   a a month
   b four days
   c for the first time
2 James would like to _____.
   a have a beautiful garden
   b build a great park
   c be a gardener in a park
3 When Ruth talks about *Mamma Mia*, she doesn't mention _____.
   a the actors b the soundtrack c the story
4 Ben thinks that women drive _____ than men.
   a more slowly b less dangerously c better
5 Justin went to a karaoke bar _____.
   a a long time ago b quite recently c last year

CAN YOU SAY THIS IN ENGLISH?

Do the tasks with a partner. Check (✓) the box if you can do them.

Can you...?

1 ☐ say how people in your country a) drive b) dress
2 ☐ say three things you would like to do in the future
3 ☐ say which of the following you prefer and why
   - classical music or pop music
   - summer vacations or winter vacations
   - Chinese food or Japanese food
4 ☐ say what things you do on the Internet and how often
5 ☐ answer the questions below
   - What city have you been to recently?
   - When did you go there?
   - What did you do there?
   - What's the best / worst thing about your town?

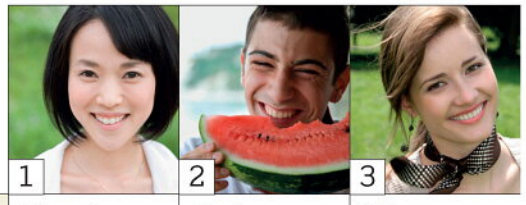
VIDEO **Short movies** historic theater
Watch and enjoy the movie.

Communication

1B WHERE ARE THEY FROM? Student A

a Ask **B** the questions about person 1.

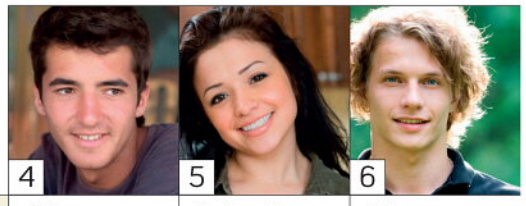
- Where's Masako from?
- Where in (country)?



	1	2	3
Name	Masako	Carlo	Erica
From	_____ (_____)	_____ (_____)	_____ (_____)

b Answer **B**'s questions about person 4.

c Repeat for the other people.



	4	5	6
Name	Ali	Antonia	Oliver
From	Turkey (Ankara)	Mexico (Acapulco)	Germany (Berlin)

1C WHAT'S HIS / HER REAL NAME? Student A

a Look at the names of your four people. Two are their real names and two aren't. Put an ✗ by the names you think are not their real names.

Tom Hanks, actor	Marc Anthony singer	Angelina Jolie, actress	Katy Perry, singer
_____	_____	_____	_____

b Check your answers. Tell **B** *I think* _____ *is / isn't his / her real name.* If **B** says *No, it isn't*, ask **B** *What's his / her real name? How do you spell it?* and write the name under the photo.

c Answer **B**'s questions.

Jude Law, actor	Tina Turner, singer ✗	Eminem, singer ✗	Scarlett Johansson, actress
✓ real name	Anna Mae Bullock	Marshall Mathers	✓ real name

2A WHAT'S ON THE TABLE? Students A+B

a Look at the picture for one minute. Try to remember the things on the table.

b Close your books and write down the ten things on the table.

c Now compare with your partner. Did he / she remember more things than you?

2C WHAT'S THE MATTER? Student A

a Read the conversation.

A What's the matter?
B I'm sad.
A Don't be sad. Cheer up.
B Thanks.

b Have four conversations with **B**. Ask **B** *What's the matter?* **B** answers. Then choose a phrase below.

Relax. Take a vacation. Open the window.
Have a drink. Don't worry.

c Change roles. **B** asks you *What's the matter?* You answer with **1** below. **B** responds with a phrase. Then you respond, e.g., *Thanks, OK, Good idea*, etc.

1 I'm bored.
2 I'm cold.
3 I'm tired.
4 I'm hungry.

d Cover the phrases and do all eight conversations again from memory.

PE2 WHAT'S THE TIME? Student A

Ask and answer questions with **B** to complete the times on the clocks. Then compare your clocks.

Clock 1: What's the time / What time is it?

4B NICO'S DAY Student A

a Ask **B** the questions below. **B** must find the answers in the text.

1 What time does Nico get up? (*He gets up at 6:30 a.m.*)
2 What does he have for breakfast? (*He has a coffee and cereal.*)
3 What two things does he check at the restaurant? (*He checks the reservations and his emails.*)
4 What time do all the customers arrive? (*They arrive at 1:30 p.m.*)
5 How many customers do they have in the restaurant at lunchtime? (*They have 85 customers.*)
6 What does Nico ask the customers? (*He asks if they are happy with the food.*)
7 What does Nico do after lunch? (*He goes back to the kitchen and plans the food for the evening menu.*)
8 What time does he go home in the afternoon? (*He goes home at 5:30 p.m.*)
9 What does Nico do at 7:30 p.m.? (*He goes back to the restaurant and checks that everything is OK.*)
10 What time does Nico go home? (*He goes home at 10 o'clock.*)

b Look at the text. Find the answers to **B**'s questions.

4C SHORT LIFE, LONG LIFE? Students A+B

Interview your partner. **A** ask the questions in the questionnaire. **B** answer and give more information if you can. Then change roles.

How often do you...?

1 have breakfast
a hardly ever / never
b sometimes / usually
c always

2 eat fresh fruit and vegetables
a hardly ever
b once a day
c three times a day

3 eat fast food
a often
b sometimes
c hardly ever / never

4 exercise
a hardly ever / never
b once or twice a week
c three or four times a week

5 feel tired or stressed
a always / often
b sometimes
c hardly ever / never

6 relax
a hardly ever / never
b sometimes
c every day

7 see your friends
a sometimes
b often
c very often

How many...?

8 hours do you usually sleep a day
a 0 to 4
b 5 to 6
c 7 to 9

9 cups of coffee do you drink a day
a more than five
b usually only one or two
c I don't drink coffee

10 Which of these is true for you?
a I'm not very positive about life.
b I'm usually positive about life.
c I'm always positive about life.

Now calculate your partner's score.
a = 5 b = 7 c = 10 **Total score** = number of years you live

Communication

5A DO YOU WANT TO BE FAMOUS? Students A+B

Interview each other with the questionnaire. Ask *Can you…?* If the answer is *Yes, I can*, ask *How well?* Do you think your partner can be famous?

You want to be **famous** – but what can you do?

✓ = yes
✗ = no

3 = very well
2 = well
1 = not very well

Music	✓/✗	How well?	Words	✓/✗	How well?
sing	☐	☐	write short stories	☐	☐
play an instrument	☐	☐	write poems or song lyrics	☐	☐
dance	☐	☐	speak foreign languages	☐	☐
read or write music	☐	☐	speak in public	☐	☐
Art			**Sports**		
take artistic photos	☐	☐	run a half marathon	☐	☐
draw cartoons	☐	☐	play a team sport	☐	☐
paint pictures	☐	☐	do a winter or water sport	☐	☐
design websites or logos	☐	☐	do an individual sport	☐	☐

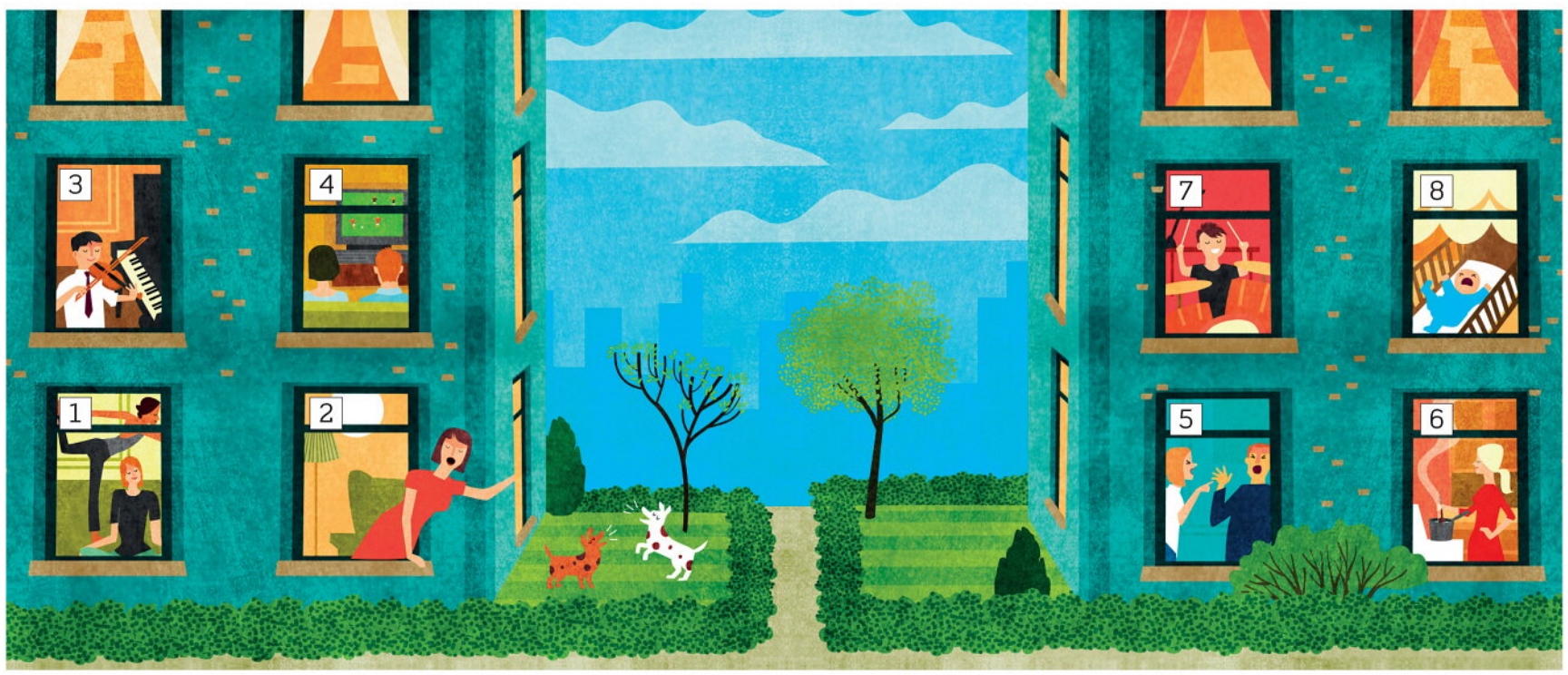
5B SPOT THE DIFFERENCES Student A

You and **B** have the same picture but with eight differences.

a Tell **B** what is happening in apartments 1–4 and in the yard on the left. **B** will tell you what is different in his / her picture. Circle the differences.

b Listen to **B** telling you what is happening in apartments 5–8 and in the yard on the right. Look at your picture and tell **B** if it is the same or different. If it is different, tell **B** what is happening. Circle the differences.

c When you finish, compare the two pictures.



Communication

5C WHAT DO YOU DO? WHAT ARE YOU DOING NOW? Student A

a Ask **B** your questions.

- What do you do?
- What are you doing now?
- Are you wearing a watch today?
- Do you usually wear a watch?
- What kind of books do you usually read?
- What are you reading right now?

b Answer **B**'s questions.

6A READING IN ENGLISH Students A+B

How do you usually read?
a on paper b on screen c on an eReader

What kind of things do you read?
a books
b newspapers
c magazines
d websites
e work documents
f others (what?)

When and where do you usually read?
a at work / school
b when you are on a bus or train
c on vacation
d before you go to bed

Do you ever need to read in English? What?

7A WHERE WERE YOU? Student A

a Ask **B** your questions. Ask *Where were you at…?*

- 9 o'clock yesterday morning
- 11:30 yesterday evening
- 3 o'clock yesterday afternoon
- 12 o'clock last night
- 6:30 yesterday evening
- 7 o'clock this morning

b Answer **B**'s questions.

Useful language
at home / work / school
in bed / the library / my car / college
on the bus / the train / the street

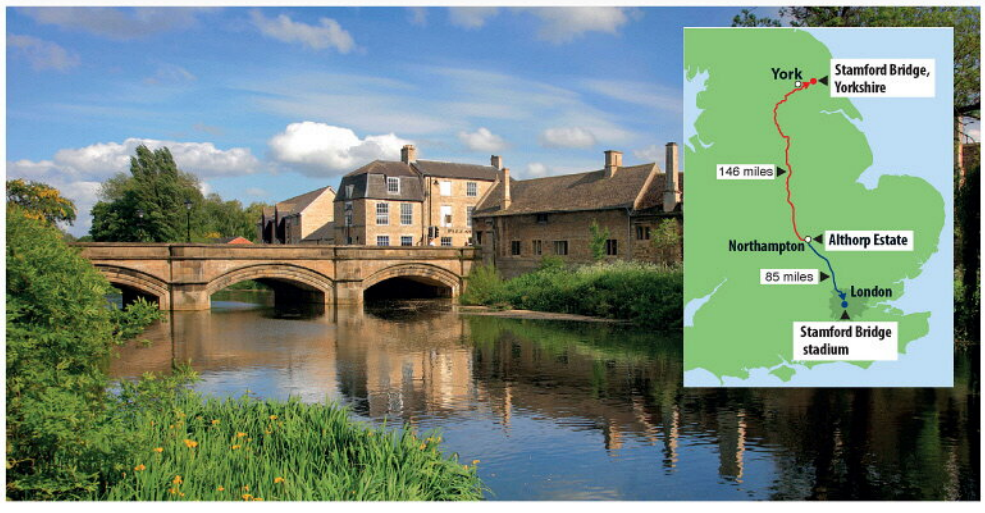
7B STAMFORD BRIDGE Students A+B

Tourist Information

STAMFORD BRIDGE

Stamford Bridge is a small village in the North of England, near York. It is about 230 miles (370 kilometers) from London. It has a population of 3,500 people. It is famous for a battle between the English and the Vikings in 1066.

NOTE: *Don't confuse Stamford Bridge near York with Stamford Bridge in London, the stadium of Chelsea Football Club!*



7C A NIGHT TO REMEMBER Student A

a Ask **B** the questions about Mehmet's night.

1. When and where was it? (*Last year, in Istanbul.*)
2. Who was he with? Why? (*His friends. It was his best friend's birthday.*)
3. What color T-shirt did he wear? (*Black.*)
4. What is Cezayir? (*It's an old building with a restaurant.*)
5. What did they do after dinner? (*They had some coffee and then they went to the beach to swim.*)
6. Was the water cold? (*No, it was warm.*)
7. Why did he go home in his friend's car? (*Because he couldn't find his car keys.*)
8. What time did he get home? (*Really late, at five o'clock in the morning.*)

b Answer **B**'s questions about Maggie's night.

c Whose memory is better?

8A POLICE INTERVIEW
Student A

Work in pairs with another **A**. You are police officers. There was a robbery last night. **B** and **B** are two friends. You think they were responsible. They say that they went out for dinner and went to the movies last night. You want to know if this is true.

a Look at the police interview form and prepare to ask the **B**s the questions. Think of more questions to get more details about the evening, e.g., *What did you wear? What did you eat and drink? What movie was it?*

b Interview one of the **B**s. Write down his / her answers in the form. (Your partner interviews the other **B**.)

c Compare with your partner. Did the two **B**s tell exactly the same story? If not, arrest them!

POLICE INTERVIEW FORM

Name: _____ **Date:** _____

	What time?	Where?	More details:
/ meet?			
/ have dinner?			
/ go to the movies?			
What / do after the movies?			
What time / get home?			

8C THE GHOST ROOM Student A

a Look at the picture for a minute. Try to remember what's in the room.

b Ask **B** the questions.

- / a TV? (*No, there wasn't.*)
- / a double or a single bed? (*There was a single bed.*)
- / a mirror? Where was it? (*Yes, there was. It was on the table.*)
- / any plants? (*No, there weren't.*)
- / any books in the room? (*No, there weren't.*)
- How many windows / ? (*There were two.*)

c Close your books. Answer **B**'s questions.

Communication

9C QUIZ NIGHT Student A

a Complete your sentences 1–8 with the comparative of the **bold** adjectives.

1 **small** Brazil is _____ than the US.
(*True. Brazil is 3.3 million square miles and the US is 3.79 million square miles.*)

2 **long** The Amazon River is _____ than the Nile River.
(*False. The Amazon is about 4,000 miles long and the Nile is about 4,130 miles long.*)

3 **old** Oxford University is _____ than Cambridge University.
(*True. Oxford University was founded in 1167 and Cambridge 43 years later.*)

4 **short** The English alphabet is _____ than the Arabic alphabet.
(*True. There are 26 letters in the English alphabet and 28 in the Arabic alphabet.*)

5 **dangerous** K2 is _____ to climb than Mount Everest.
(*True. 25% of climbers who get to the top of K2 die, but only 9% of climbers of Everest die.*)

6 **large** A gigabyte is _____ than a megabyte.
(*True. A megabyte is 1,000 bytes, but a gigabyte is 1,000 megabytes.*)

7 **dry** The Sahara Desert is _____ than the Atacama Desert.
(*False. Sahara Desert average rainfall = 0.79 inches; Atacama Desert average rainfall = 0.004 inches.*)

8 **far** New Zealand is _____ south than Australia.
(*True. It's about 1,242 miles southeast of Australia.*)

b Play *Quiz Night*. You are the host.

- Read your sentence 1 to **B**. **B** says if it's true or false.
- Tell **B** if he / she is right and give the extra information in parentheses.
- If **B** is right, he / she wins 500 dollars. Then read sentence 2 for 1,000 dollars, sentence 3 for 2,000 dollars, sentence 4 for 4,000 dollars, etc.
- If **B** gets a question wrong, he / she loses the money, but continues to play. The prize starts again from 500 dollars.

c Play *Quiz Night* again. You are the contestant.

10A CITIES QUIZ Student A

a Complete your questions with the superlative of the adjectives in parentheses.

1 What's the _____ city in the world? (noisy)
a **Tokyo** b Madrid c Santiago

2 What's the _____ city in the world? (hot)
a Rio de Janeiro b **Bangkok** c Nairobi

3 Which city has the _____ monument in the world? (popular)
a New York b **Paris** c Istanbul

4 What's the _____ city in the US? (wet)
a Chicago b San Diego c **New Orleans**

5 Which city has the _____ traffic jams in the world? (bad)
a São Paulo b **Beijing** c Mexico City

b Answer **B**'s questions.

c Ask **B** your questions. Does he / she know the answers? (The correct answers are in **bold**.)

What's the noisiest city in the world—Tokyo, Madrid, or Santiago?

10B WHAT ARE YOU GOING TO DO? Student A

a Ask **B** the questions below.

Tonight
- What / do tonight?
- / study English? Why (not)?

Tomorrow
- What time / get up tomorrow?
- Where / have lunch?

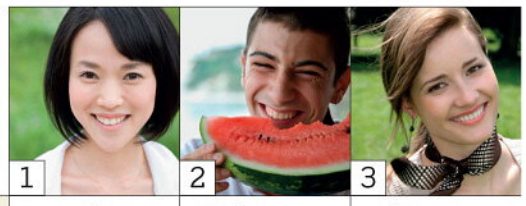
Next weekend
- / go away next weekend? Where to?
- What / do on Saturday night?

b Answer **B**'s questions.

Communication

1B WHERE ARE THEY FROM? Student B

a Answer **A**'s questions about person 1.



	1	2	3
Name	Masako	Carlo	Erica
From	Japan (Osaka)	Peru (Lima)	the US (Denver)

b Ask **A** the questions about person 4.

- Where's Ali from?
- Where in (country)?

	4	5	6
Name	Ali	Antonia	Oliver
From	_____ (_____)	_____ (_____)	_____ (_____)

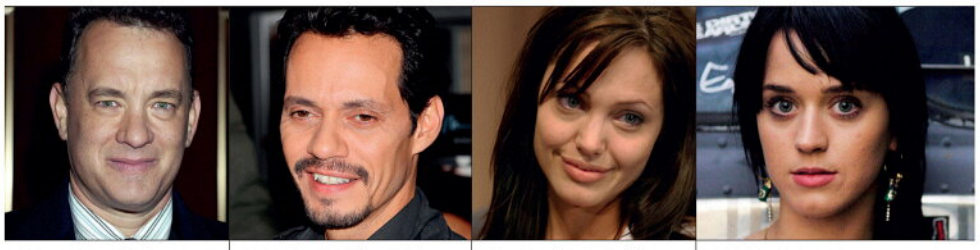
c Repeat for the other people.

1C WHAT'S HIS / HER REAL NAME? Student B

a Look at the names of your four people. Two are their real names and two aren't. Put an ✗ by the names you think are not their real names.

Jude Law, actor	Tina Turner, singer	Eminem, singer	Scarlett Johansson, actress
_____	_____	_____	_____

b Answer **A**'s questions.



Tom Hanks, actor	Marc Anthony, singer ✗	Angelina Jolie, actress	Katy Perry, singer ✗
✓ real name	Marco Muñiz	✓ real name	Katheryn Hudson

c Check your answers to **a**. Tell **A** *I think _____ is / isn't his / her real name*. If **A** says *No, it isn't*, ask **A** *What's his / her real name? How do you spell it?* and write the name under the photo.

2C WHAT'S THE MATTER? Student B

a Read the conversation.

A What's the matter?
B I'm sad.
A Don't be sad. Cheer up.
B Thanks.

b Have four conversations with **A**. **A** asks you *What's the matter?* You answer with **1** below. **A** responds with a phrase. Then you respond, e.g., *Thanks*, *OK*, *Good idea*, etc.

1 I'm hot. 2 I'm thirsty. 3 I'm worried. 4 I'm stressed.

c Have four more conversations. Ask **A** *What's the matter?* **A** answers. Then choose a phrase below.

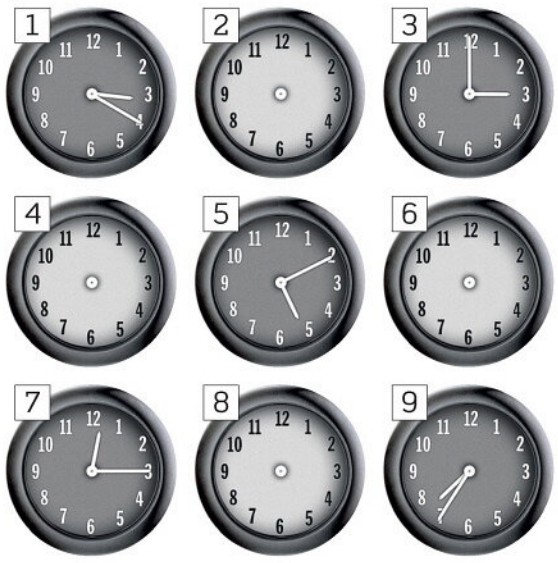
Close the window.
Have a sandwich.
Read a book.
Sit down.

d Cover the phrases and do all eight conversations again from memory.

PE2 WHAT'S THE TIME? Student B

Ask and answer questions with **A** to complete the times on the clocks. Then compare your clocks.

Clock 2: What's the time / What time is it?



4B NICO'S DAY Student B

a Look at the *Father & Daughter* text. Find the answers to **A**'s questions.

b Ask **A** the questions below. **A** must find the answers in the text.

1 What part of the newspaper does Nico read? (*He reads the sports section.*)
2 Where does he go after breakfast? (*He goes to the market.*)
3 What time does he start cooking the food for lunch? (*He starts cooking at 10:30 a.m.*)
4 How many cups of coffee does he have in the morning? (*He has three cups of coffee.*)
5 What time does Nico have lunch? (*He has lunch at 3:30 p.m.*)
6 Why doesn't Nico enjoy his lunch? (*Because he doesn't have time to relax.*)
7 How long does he spend with the children in the afternoon? (*He spends a couple of hours / two hours with them.*)
8 What do Nico and the children do between 5:30 p.m. and 7:30 p.m. (*The children do their homework and Nico makes their dinner.*)
9 What is the first thing Nico does when he gets home? (*He takes a shower.*)
10 What time does he go to bed? (*He goes to bed at 11 o'clock.*)

5B SPOT THE DIFFERENCES Student B

You and **A** have the same picture but with eight differences.

a Listen to **A** telling you what is happening in apartments 1–4 and in the yard on the left. Look at your picture and tell **A** if it is the same or different. If it is different, tell **A** what is happening. Circle the differences.

b Tell **A** what is happening in apartments 5–8 and in the yard on the right. **A** will tell you what is different in his / her picture. Circle the differences.

c When you finish, compare the two pictures.

5C WHAT DO YOU DO? WHAT ARE YOU DOING NOW? Student B

a Answer **A**'s questions.

b Ask **A** your questions.

- Do your parents work? What do they do?
- What do you think they are doing now?
- Do you watch a series on TV?
- What TV series are you watching right now?
- Is it raining now?
- Does it rain a lot at this time of year?

7A WHERE WERE YOU? Student B

a Answer **A**'s questions.

A *Where were you at nine o'clock yesterday morning?* **B** *I was in bed.*

b Ask **A** your questions. Ask *Where were you at…?*

- 8:30 yesterday morning
- 6:30 yesterday evening
- 11:30 yesterday morning
- 10 o'clock last night
- 5 o'clock yesterday afternoon
- 6:30 this morning

Useful language
at home / work / school
in bed / the library / my car / college
on the bus / the train / the street

7C A NIGHT TO REMEMBER Student B

a Answer **A**'s questions about Mehmet's night.

b Ask **A** the questions about Maggie's night.

1 Where was she with her family? (*In New York City.*)
2 Who did she want to see? (*Her favorite actor, Nick Jonas.*)
3 Who got the tickets for the Broadway show? (*Her father got the tickets.*)
4 What color coat did she wear? (*Red*)
5 Who opened the door for them? (*A theater worker.*)
6 Why was she excited? (*Because Nick Jonas spoke to her.*)
7 What else happened? (*Nick took some pictures with them and wished her sister a happy birthday.*)
8 What was the weather like? (*It was a cold, cloudy night*).
9 What time did she get back to the hotel? (*At eleven o'clock in the evening.*)

c Whose memory is better?

8A POLICE INTERVIEW Student B

Work in pairs with another **B**. You are friends. Last night you met, had dinner, and went to the movies. There was a robbery last night. **A** and **A** are police officers. They think you were responsible, and they want to interview you separately. If you both tell the same story, you are innocent!

a Prepare your story. Use these questions. Think of extra details, e.g., *What did you wear? What did you eat and drink? What movie was it?*

- What time / where did you meet?
- What time / where did you have dinner?
- What time / where did you go to the movies?
- What did you do after the movies?
- What time did you get home?

b Answer **A**'s questions.

c Did you and your friend tell the same story?

Communication

8C THE GHOST ROOM Student B

a Look at the picture for a minute. Try to remember what's in the room.

b Close your books. Answer **A**'s questions.

c Ask **A** the questions.

- / a clock? Where was it? (*Yes, there was. It was next to the window.*)
- / a rug on the floor? (*No, there wasn't.*)
- / a lamp or light? Where was it? (*Yes, there was. It was on the wall.*)
- / any pictures on the wall? What of? (*Yes, there was one. It was of a woman.*)
- / any cupboards? (*No, there weren't.*)
- How many chairs / ? (*There was one.*)

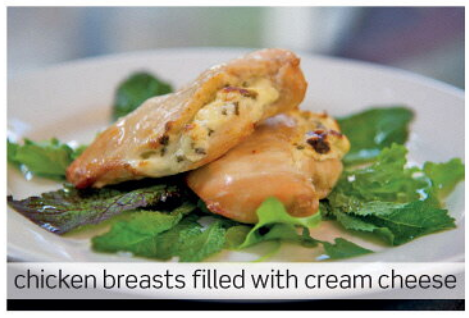
9A GET READY! COOK! Students A+B

Jack's Meal

Appetizer

carrot and orange soup

Main course



chicken breasts filled with cream cheese

Dessert

pancakes with chocolate sauce

Liz's Meal

Appetizer

carrot and onion salad

Main course

pasta with creamy chicken sauce

Dessert

chocolate and orange mousse

9B SUGAR AND SALT Students A+B

How much sugar?

According to the American Heart Association, a woman should have no more than 20g (grams) of sugar a day (= 5 teaspoons) and a man no more than 36g (= 9 teaspoons).

- a can of Coke has approximately 39g of sugar
- an apple has approximately 23g of sugar
- a small (40g) bar of dark chocolate has approximately 7g of sugar
- an egg doesn't have any sugar

How much salt?

According to UK Government studies, an adult should eat no more than 6g of salt a day.

- a small bag of potato chips has approximately .15g of salt
- a slice of white bread has approximately 0.5g of salt
- a bottle of water has approximately 0.0023g of salt
- a bottle of olive oil doesn't have any salt

9C QUIZ NIGHT Student B

a Complete your sentences 1–8 with the comparative of the **bold** adjectives.

1 **old** The pyramids in Egypt are _____ than the Parthenon in Greece.
(True. The pyramids are about 4,500 years old and the Parthenon is about 2,500 years old.)

2 **short** World War I was _____ than World War II.
(True. World War I lasted four years (1914–1918), but World War II lasted six years (1939–1945).)

3 **high** The mountains on Earth are _____ than the mountains on Mars.
(False. Olympus Mons on Mars is 16 miles high; Everest is about 5 miles high.)

4 **big** China is _____ than Canada.
(False. Canada is about 3,800,000 square miles; China is about 3,700,000 square miles.)

5 **popular** Coffee is _____ with women than men in the US.
(False. On average, men drink 1.9 cups of coffee a day and women drink 1.4 cups of coffee a day.)

6 **warm** The Mediterranean Sea is _____ than the Red Sea.
(False. Mediterranean Sea average temperature = 75–78 °F; Red Sea average = 78–86 °F.)

7 **good** It's _____ to do exercise in the morning than in the afternoon.
(False. In the afternoon between 4 and 5 p.m., the body temperature is at its maximum, which means it is the perfect time to exercise.)

8 **hot** The earth is _____ than the moon.
(False. The average temperature of the moon is about 225 °F during the day; the average temperature of the earth is 55–62 °F.)

b Play *Quiz Night*. You are the contestant.

- **A** will read you his / her sentence 1. You say if it's true or false.
- **A** will tell you if you are right, and give you extra information.
- If you are right, you win 500 dollars. **A** then reads you sentence 2 for 1,000 dollars, sentence 3 for 2,000 dollars, sentence 4 for 4,000 dollars, etc.
- If you get a question wrong, you lose all the money, but continue to play. The prize starts again from 500 dollars.

c Play *Quiz Night* again. You are the host. Use your questions 1–8.

10A CITIES QUIZ Student B

a Complete your questions with the superlative of the adjectives in parentheses.

b Ask **A** your questions. Does he / she know the answers? (the correct answers are in **bold**.)

1 Which city has the _____ quality of life in the world? (good)
a Tokyo b **Copenhagen** c Miami

2 Which US city has the _____ population? (big)
a **New York** b Chicago c San Francisco

3 Which city has the _____ airport in the world? (busy)
a London b **Atlanta** c Singapore

4 What's the _____ capital city in the world? (high)
a **La Paz, Bolivia**
b Kathmandu, Nepal
c Lima, Peru

5 Which city has the _____ public transportation in the world? (expensive)
a Seoul b Mexico City c **London**

c Answer **A**'s questions.

Which city has the best quality of life in the world—Tokyo, Copenhagen, or Miami?

10B WHAT ARE YOU GOING TO DO? Student B

a Answer **A**'s questions.

b Ask **A** the questions below.

Tonight	• What / have for dinner tonight? • What / do after dinner?
Tomorrow	• / go to work (or school) tomorrow? • What / do in the evening?
Next weekend	• / go out on Friday night? What / do? • What / do on Sunday?

Writing

1 COMPLETING A FORM

a Look at the information about capital letters.

> **Capital letters**
> In English these words start with a CAPITAL letter.
> - first and last names *Melissa Rogers*
> - countries, nationalities, and languages *Japan, Japanese*
> - towns and cities *New York City*
> - days of the week *Monday*
> - the first word in a sentence *Her father is from Miami.*
> - the pronoun *I* *She's Vietnamese and I'm Mexican.*

b Complete the form with your information.

c Write this text again with capital letters where necessary.

my name's alberto. i'm from salvador in brazil, and i speak portuguese, english, and a little french. my teacher is american. her name's kate. my english classes are on mondays and wednesdays.

d Write a similar text about you. Check the capital letters are correct. Then check for any other mistakes.

◀ p.9

APPLICATION FOR A STUDENT VISA

About You

First name | Last name (Family name)

Mr. ☐ Mrs. ☐ Ms. ☐ Gender Male ☐ Female ☐

Date of birth Month ☐☐ Day ☐☐ Year ☐☐☐☐

Marital status Married ☐ Single ☐ Divorced ☐ Separated ☐

Nationality

Place of birth

Country | Town / City

Contact Details

Home address | Email address

Phone number

home

cell phone

Passport / Identity card number

Signature | Date

2 A PERSONAL PROFILE

a Read Jamie's profile. Do you have similar interests?

b Look at the examples below.

> ***and, but,* and *or***
> **and** I speak English **and** a little Italian.
> I watch the news **and** soccer on the weekend.
> **but** I speak English, **but** I don't speak Italian.
> I'm from Chicago, **but** I live in San Francisco.
> **or** I don't speak English **or** Italian.
> I don't like classical music **or** jazz.
> **e.g.** *e.g.* = for example. We often use it when we write informally. *I like rock music, e.g., Coldplay.*

c Write a profile of yourself. Use the same headings (Hometown, Music, etc.). Attach a photo if you can. Use *and*, *but*, and *or* to join your ideas together.

d Check your profile for mistakes (e.g., capital letters and spelling).

◀ p.25

Netfriends Worldwide

Jamie Hamilton

Wall
Profile
Photos (51)
Notes
Friends

My profile Edit

Hometown I'm from Chicago, but I live in San Francisco.

Occupation I'm a graphic designer. I work for an international company.

Languages I speak English and a little Italian.

Interests Edit

Music I like pop and rock. I don't like classical music or jazz.

Films I like American and Asian movies. I love old Japanese movies, e.g., Kurosawa's *Seven Samurai*.

TV I watch the news in the evening and soccer on the weekend.

Sports I play tennis and I go to the gym.

Writing

3 A MAGAZINE ARTICLE

a Read Cristina's article. Is her Saturday like yours?

b Look at the examples below.

> ***after* and *then***
> Use *after* + another word, e.g., ***after*** *lunch*, ***after*** *work*, ***after*** *that*, etc.
> Use *then* to say what happens next, e.g., *I get up and* ***then*** *I have breakfast.*

c Read her article again and check that you understand the highlighted words. Then use them to complete the sentences below.

1 Jack usually gets up at 7:30. _____ he takes a shower.
2 _____ lunch, I often sleep for half an hour.
3 She always takes a bath _____ she goes to bed.
4 _____ the week I work _____ 9:00 _____ 5:00.
5 I usually get home at about midnight, and _____ I go to bed.
6 We usually watch TV _____ it's time to go to bed.

d You are going to write an article for a magazine called *My Favorite Day*. Write four paragraphs. First, look at the questions and make notes of what you can say.

1 What's your favorite day of the week? Why?
2 What do you usually do in the morning?
3 Where do you have lunch? What do you usually do after lunch?
4 What do you usually do in the evening?

e Now write your article. Choose which of your ideas you want to use. Don't forget to use some of the highlighted words to link together your ideas.

f Check your article for mistakes. Show your article to another student. Find one thing in your partner's article that is the same for you.

◀ p.31

My favorite day

Cristina,
a college student
from Mexico City

My favorite day of the week is Saturday because it's the first day of the weekend!

I get up very early during the week, so on Saturday it's nice to get up late, and I always stay in bed until about 10:30. Then I usually go shopping with a friend. In Mexico stores are sometimes closed on Sundays, so Saturday is the best day for shopping. We don't always buy anything, but we have fun just looking.

I often have lunch with my mother and my brother. It's great because my mom is a really good cook and she always makes things we like, and my brother and I have time to talk about our week. After lunch, I sometimes study from about 4:00 to 6:00, especially if I have exams.

In the evening, I usually go out with my friends. We often go to the movies, and then we have a pizza or tacos. I never go to bed before 1:00, or sometimes later.

4 SOCIAL NETWORKING

a Jun is traveling around the world. He writes posts and puts photos from different places on a social networking site. Read his posts and match them to the photos. What countries do you think he is in?

A ☐	I'm standing above Niagara Falls... Wow! Check out my photos!
B ☐	I'm sitting on the beach looking at the sunset and watching a game of beach volleyball. I have three more days here – paradise!
C ☐	I'm on the bullet train going to Mount Fuji. It's really fast – 186 miles per hour – just like the trains at home! ha ha ☺
D ☐	I'm having lunch at a little trattoria just one minute from the Trevi fountain. I have my three coins ready to throw in – but my wish is a secret...
E ☐	I'm watching a cricket match in the park in Oxford. A very strange sport – I think they're stopping to have tea now! Can you believe it?

b Imagine you are on vacation in your country or abroad. Write four different posts of about 20–25 words saying what you're doing.

c Check your posts for mistakes.

◀ p.41

5 AN INFORMAL EMAIL

To practice your English, you can write to a pen pal in another country. You can find pen pal websites on the Internet.

a Read the email. Then cover it. Can you remember what information Chiara gives in the three main paragraphs?

From: Chiara [chiararossi@hitmail.com]
To: Stefan [stefan7541200@moebius.ch]
Subject: Hi from Italy!

Hi Stefan,

My name's Chiara. I'm 19, and I'm from Milan, in Italy. I'm a receptionist at a hotel. I'm studing English becuse I need it for my job.

I live with my parents and my brother and sister. My father is an arkitect and my mother works in a clothing store. My brother and sister are at school.

I don't have very much free time because I work six days a week. I usualy go shoping on my day off. In the evening, I like listening to music, or talking with freinds. I really like hip hop – do you like it?

Please write soon.

Best wishes

Chiara

b Look at the six underlined spelling mistakes. Can you spell these words?

Informal emails
beginning: *Hi* + name
middle: Use contractions, e.g., ***I'm*** *from Milan.*
end: *Best wishes*, or *Love* (for a good friend)

c You are going to write a similar email to your teacher. First, make notes about the following information.

Paragraph 1	Your name, age, and where you are from. What you do, and why you are studying English.
Paragraph 2	Who you live with. Your family.
Paragraph 3	What you like doing in your free time.

d Now write your email. Use your notes and the language in the information box.

e Check your email for mistakes.

◀ p.49

Writing

6 DESCRIBING YOUR HOME

a Read the website and the description of an apartment in Hermosa Beach, California. Would you like to stay there?

b Number the information in the order it comes in the description.

- ☐ Details about some of the rooms
- ☐ How far it is from Los Angeles
- ☐ What floor the apartment is on
- ☐ What rooms there are
- ☐ What services there are nearby
- ☐ What you can see from the apartment
- ☐ Where it is

c Look at the information about *so*.

> **so**
> *There's a sofa bed in the study, so you can use it as an extra bedroom.*
> We can use *so* to express a result or consequence, e.g.,
> *I was very tired, so I went to bed early.*
> *My office is near my house, so I walk to work.*

d You are going to write a description of your house or apartment for the website. First, make notes on the topics in **b**.

e Now write your description. Choose which of your ideas you want to use. Don't forget to say where you would like to go.

f Check your description for mistakes. Show it to other students. Whose house or apartment would you like to stay in?

◀ p.63

house swap

Home | How it works | Search | News and views | Join our community | Help

Do you want a cheap vacation? Write a description of your house or apartment, and say where you want to go. Post the description on our website, and find someone to swap homes with.

My home

Apartment near the beach

My apartment is on a quiet street in Hermosa Beach, California. It's on the second floor. It has two bedrooms, two bathrooms, a living room, a study, and a kitchen. The kitchen is small, but it has a stove, a refrigerator, and a dishwasher. There's a sofa bed in the study, so you can use it as an extra bedroom. The bedrooms have a great view of the beach and the Pacific Ocean. The apartment doesn't have a yard, but it has a community swimming pool. It's a 5-minute walk from stores, restaurants, and a bus stop. It's also about a 30-minute car ride from downtown Los Angeles.

Where I want to go

New York City, Buenos Aires, Phuket

7 A FORMAL EMAIL

a Read the advertisement and Marco's email. Complete the email with the words in the list.

about confirm Dear double from
hope Sincerely reservation would

b Look at the information box and then write a similar email to the Bay House Bed and Breakfast.

- Decide how many nights you want to stay and the kind of room you need.
- Ask an *Is there | Are there…?* question.

Formal emails (e.g., to a hotel or Bed and Breakfast, a language school, etc.)

Beginning
Dear Mr. / Mrs. / Ms. + last name, or
Dear Sir / Madam if you don't know the person's name
Use a comma (,) NOT a colon (:)
Dear Mr. Brown, NOT ~~*Dear Mr. Brown:*~~

Middle
Don't use contractions.
I would like to make a reservation.
NOT ~~*I'd like to…*~~

End
Use a comma (,)
Sincerely,
Your first name + last name

◀ *p.79*

The Bay House

Bed and Breakfast in Bath, Maine

Gary and Rebecca Brewster and their family welcome you to their 100-year-old home in a small town in Maine.

5 double bedrooms, 3 single, and a family suite TV WiFi

The Bay House – reservation
From: Marco Perez [marco84@gomail.com]
To: thebayhouse@bedbreakfastonline.net

[1]_____ Mr. and Mrs. Brewster,

I [2]_____ like to make a [3]_____ for a [4]_____ room and a single room for two nights, [5]_____ June 24th to June 26th.

We [6]_____ to arrive by car at [7]_____ 5:00 in the afternoon on the 24th. Is there a place where we can park near your house?

Could you please [8]_____ the reservation?

[9]_____,

Marco Perez

Listening

1 13

1 **A** A cheese and tomato sandwich, please.
B That's 7 dollars and 20 cents.
2 **A** So Anna, your classes are on Tuesday and Thursday mornings.
B Yes, that's fine. Thank you.
3 JetBlue flight to Los Angeles is now boarding at gate number 9.
4 **A** Where to, madam?
B Manchester Road, please. Number 16.
5 **A** Here's your key, sir. Room 12.
B Thank you.
6 **A** Here we are.
B Oh no. It's closed.
A Look, it says "Closed on Mondays"!

1 29

1 The train waiting at platform 13 is the Metroliner to Washington, D.C.
2 **A** Excuse me! How far is it to Miami?
B It's about 40 miles.
B Thanks a lot.
3 15 love.
4 Will all passengers on flight BA234 to New York please go to gate 60 immediately.
5 **A** How much is that?
B A pizza and two waters. That's 17 dollars.
6 **A** What's your address?
B It's 80 Park Road.
A Sorry? What number?
B 80, 8 zero.
7 **Teacher** OK. Can you be quiet, please? Open your books to page 90.
Student 1 What page?
Student 2 Page 90.

1 39

Receptionist Hello. Are you a new student?
Darly Yes, I am.
Receptionist Sit down, please. I'm the receptionist and my name's Mark. I'm just going to ask you a few questions.
Darly OK.
Receptionist Great. What's your first name?
Darly Darly.
Receptionist How do you spell that?
Darly D-A-R-L-Y
Receptionist D-A-R-L-Y?
Darly Yes, that's right.
Receptionist And what's your last name?
Darly Bezerra.
Receptionist Bezerra. Is that B-E-Z-E-R-A?
Darly B-E-Z-E-R-R-A.
Receptionist B-E-Z-E-R-R-A. OK. Where are you from?
Darly I'm from Brazil.
Receptionist Where in Brazil?
Darly From Rio.
Receptionist And how old are you?
Darly I'm 20.
Receptionist What's your address?
Darly In Rio?
Receptionist Yes.
Darly It's 350 Avenida Princesa Isabel.
Receptionist That's 350 Avenida Princesa Isabel.
Darly Yes.
Receptionist What's your zip code?
Darly Sorry?
Receptionist The zip code, you know, a number? Or postcode?
Darly Ah, yes. It's 22011-010.
Receptionist 22011-010. Great. What's your email address?
Darly It's dbezerra@mail.com.
Receptionist And what's your phone number?
Darly My cell phone number or my home number in Rio?
Receptionist Both – home and cell phone.
Darly My phone number in Rio is 55 – that's the code for Brazil – 219 560733.
Receptionist 55 219 560733.
Darly Yes, that's right. And my cell phone number is 970-555-3784. It's an American cell phone.
Receptionist 970-555-3784. That's great, Darly. Thank you. OK, so you're in level 6. Your first class is on Monday.

1 44

Rob Hi. My name's Rob Walker. I live here in London, I work in London, and I write about London! I work for a magazine called *London 24seven*. I write about life in London. The people, the theater the restaurants... It's fun! I love London. It's a great city.
Jenny Hi. My name's Jenny Zielinski. I'm from New York. The number one city in the world. I'm the assistant editor of a magazine, *New York 24seven*. I'm the new assistant editor. But this week, I'm on a business trip to London. This is my first time in the UK. It's very exciting!

1 48

Waitress Is your tea OK?
Jenny Yes, thank you. It's very quiet this evening.
Waitress Yes, very relaxing! Are you on holiday?
Jenny No, I'm here on business.
Waitress Where are you from?
Jenny I'm from New York. What about you?
Waitress I'm from Budapest, in Hungary.
Jenny Really? Oh, sorry.
Waitress No problem.
—
Jenny Hello?
Rob Is that Jennifer?
Jenny Yes.
Rob This is Rob. Rob Walker...From *London 24seven*?
Jenny Oh, Rob, yes, of course. Hi.
Rob Hi. How are you?
Jenny Oh, I'm fine, thanks. A little tired, that's all.
Rob I can meet you at the hotel tomorrow morning. Is nine OK for you?
Jenny That's perfect.
Rob Great. OK, see you tomorrow at nine.
Jenny Thanks. See you then. Bye.
Waitress Would you like another tea?
Jenny No, thanks. It's time for bed.
Waitress Good night, and enjoy your stay.
Jenny Good night.

1 55

1 I have a big table, and on the table I have a computer and a printer, pens and pieces of paper, uh, photos, and a lamp. Lots of things. My table isn't neat. It's very messy.
2 On my desk I have a lamp, a phone, books, a laptop, a photo of my family, pens and pencils, and a lot of pieces of paper. I think my desk is neat. Not very neat, but neat.
3 On my desk I have a lamp, a calendar, a Spanish-English dictionary, a computer, DVDs, and some pens. Oh, and tissues. Right now, my desk is very neat.

1 70

Receptionist Good evening, sir. Good evening, madam.
Dad Good evening. Can we have two double rooms, please?
Receptionist Do you have a reservation?
Dad No, we don't.
Receptionist I'm sorry, sir. The hotel is full.
Mom Oh, no!
Dad Come on. Let's go. I know another hotel near here.
Police officer Excuse me, sir. Is this your car?
Dad Yes, it is. What's the problem?
Police officer This is no parking, sir. Look at the sign.
Dad I'm very sorry.
Police officer Can I see your driver's licence, please?

2 10

Announcer And now on WKOT, *His job, her job.*
Host Good evening and welcome again to the jobs quiz, His job, her job. And our team tonight is David, a teacher…
David Hello.
Host …Kate, who's unemployed…
Kate Hi.
Host …and Lorna, who's a writer.
Lorna Good evening.

Host And our first guest tonight is…
Wayne Wayne.
Host Hello, Wayne. Welcome to the show. What's your wife's name, Wayne?
Wayne Her name's Tanya.
Host Tanya? Nice name. OK team, you have one minute to ask Wayne questions about his job and then one minute to ask him about Tanya's job, starting now. Let's have your first question.
David Hi, Wayne. Do you work in an office?
Wayne No, I don't.
Lorna Do you work in the evening?
Wayne It depends. Yes, sometimes.
Kate Do you make things?
Wayne No, I don't.
Lorna Do you wear a uniform or special clothes?
Wayne Uh, yes – I wear special clothes.
Kate Do you drive in your job?
Wayne No, I don't.
Lorna Do you work with other people?
Wayne Yes, I do. Ten people.
Kate Do you have special qualifications?
Wayne Qualifications? No, I don't.
David Do you speak foreign languages?
Wayne No, only English.
Host You only have time for one more question team.
David Uh, do you earn a lot of money?
Wayne Yes, I do.
Host Your time's up...

2 11

Host Now you have a minute to ask Wayne about Tanya's job.
Kate Wayne, does Tanya work outside?
Wayne It depends. Outside and inside.
Lorna Does she work on the weekend?
Wayne Yes, she does.
Kate Does she work with computers?
Wayne No, she doesn't.
David Does she wear a uniform or special clothes?
Wayne Yes, she does. She wears special clothes.
Kate Does she travel?
Wayne Yes, she does. A lot.
Lorna Does she earn a lot of money?
Wayne Yes, she does. A lot.
Host That's time. OK team…

2 12

Host OK team. So, what's Wayne's job?
Kate OK, so you wear special clothes, you work with ten other people, you earn a lot of money. Are you a soccer player, Wayne?
Wayne Yes, I am.
Host Very good! And Tanya's job?
David Let's see. She works outside and inside. She works on the weekend. She doesn't work with computers. She wears special clothes. She travels a lot. She earns a lot of money. We think she's a flight attendant.
Host Is that right, Wayne?
Wayne No, that's wrong. Tanya is a model.

2 19

Kevin Do you like Star Wars?
Samantha No, I don't.
Kevin Why not? It's a fantastic movie.
Samantha I don't like science fiction.
Kevin What kind of movies do you like?
Samantha I love foreign movies, French, Italian, Spanish.
Kevin Oh.
Samantha My salad's very good.
Kevin Oh. My burger's good, too.
Samantha What kind of music do you like?
Kevin Music? I love heavy metal. What about you?
Samantha Opera.
Kevin Opera – that's not really my thing!
Kevin What do you do on the weekend?
Samantha I go to restaurants, I cook. I love good food. And you?
Kevin Well, I don't cook! I meet friends and we play video games.
Samantha You meet friends and you play video games. Wow.
Kevin Do you want some more water?
Samantha Oh, excuse me. Hi. Oh? Why? Now? OK. See you in a minute. Sorry Kevin. I need to go. Nice to meet you. Bye.
Kevin Oh. Bye.
Waiter Here's your check.
Kevin The check! Hey, Samantha. Wait!

2 25

Rob Um... Jennifer?
Jenny Rob?
Rob Yes, hello. Nice to meet you, Jennifer.
Jenny Call me Jenny. Good to meet you, too.
Rob Welcome to London. Am I late?
Jenny Um... just a little.
Rob What time is it?
Jenny Nine fifteen.
Rob I'm really sorry. The traffic is terrible today.
Jenny No problem.
Rob How are you? How's the hotel?
Jenny The hotel's very nice. But breakfast isn't great. I'd like a good cup of coffee. Not hotel coffee, real coffee.
Rob OK, let's get a coffee.
Jenny Do I have time? I have a meeting at nine-thirty.
Rob With Daniel?
Jenny Yes.
Rob Don't worry. We have lots of time, the office is very near. So, Jenny, where do you live in New York?

2 28

Rob Here we are. This is the office. And this is Karen.
Jenny Hello, Karen.
Rob Karen, this is Jennifer Zielinski from the New York office.
Karen Hello, Jennifer.
Jenny Nice to meet you.
Rob Karen is our administrator. We all depend on her.
Karen Don't listen to Rob.
Rob But it's true!
Karen Is this your first time in the UK, Jennifer?
Jenny Yes, it is. But it isn't my first time in Europe. I have family in Poland.
Karen Really? And where do you live in New York?
Jenny In Manhattan. Do you know New York?
Karen Yes. My sister lives in Brooklyn.
Jenny I have family in Brooklyn, too. Where does your sister live?
Daniel Jennifer!
Jenny Daniel?
Daniel How nice to meet you, at last. Would you like something to drink? Tea, coffee, water?
Jenny No, I'm fine, thanks.
Daniel Great. Oh, Karen. What time is my next meeting?
Karen At twelve o'clock.
Daniel That's good, we have time. OK, come into my office, Jennifer.
Jenny Thank you.
Daniel Talk to you later, Rob.
Rob Yeah. Sure.

2 35

Anna Who's that?
Isabel That's my boyfriend, Alex.
Anna He's good-looking. How old is he?
Isabel Twenty-six.
Anna What does he do?
Isabel He's a police officer.
Anna Really? Does he like it?
Isabel Yes, he loves it. And this is my dad.
Anna He looks very young.
Isabel Well, he's fifty-five this year.
Anna He doesn't look fifty-five! Is that your mother?
Isabel No, that's Gloria, my stepmother.
Anna Is she nice?
Isabel Yes, she's great. She's a hair stylist – she does my hair for free!
Anna How nice! Who's that?
Isabel That's Natalie.
Anna Who's she?
Isabel My brother's girlfriend.
Anna She's pretty!
Isabel Do you think so?
Anna Yes. Don't you like her?
Isabel Not very much. She thinks she's very intelligent, but she isn't really.
Anna What does she do?
Isabel She's a student. She studies Spanish – but she can't speak it very well…

2 40

Interviewer What time do you get up in the morning?
Amelia Me levanto a las seis y media. Nunca me quiero levantar porque es tan temprano. I get up at six thirty. I never want to get up because it's very early.
Interviewer Do you have breakfast?
Amelia Yes, a quick breakfast, and then I go to school.
Interviewer How do you go to school?

Amelia By bus. We have these yellow school buses – we call them *liebres*.
Interviewer What time do you start school?
Amelia At 8 o'clock. In the first class everyone is really sleepy.
Interviewer How many classes do you have?
Amelia In the morning we usually have five but sometimes six.
Interviewer What time do you have lunch?
Amelia At 1 o'clock.
Interviewer That's a very long morning!
Amelia Yes, it is. We're very hungry at lunchtime.
Interviewer Where do you have lunch?
Amelia We have lunch at school in the cafeteria. We only have fifty minutes, so we don't have much time to relax. We just eat our food and then run to the next class.
Interviewer How many classes do you have in the afternoon?
Amelia On a good day only three, on a bad day five. After the second class everybody is tired and we don't concentrate on what the teacher is telling us.
Interviewer What time does school finish?
Amelia At five thirty.
Interviewer Do you go home then?
Amelia It depends. On Mondays and Wednesdays I go to extra classes to prepare for college entrance exams, and on Tuesdays and Thursdays I have basketball practice.
Interviewer What do you do when you get home?
Amelia I just want to relax, but it's impossible. I have homework and exams, so I need to study! So I sit down at my desk and start working again. After dinner, I go back to my room and study until 11 o'clock, or sometimes later.
Interviewer What time do you go to bed?
Amelia About eleven thirty. I lie in bed and think about the next day and the classes I have. Luckily, it's Friday today! No school tomorrow!

2 57

GARY
Gary (sings)
Judge 1 Very nice Gary.
Judge 2 Yes, I like it. Good job.

JUSTIN
Justin (sings)
Judge 1 In a word... "terrible!"
Judge 2 Justin, you have a very pretty face, but I'm sorry, you can't sing!

NAOMI
Naomi (sings)
Judge 1 Thank you, Naomi. Very nice.
Judge 2 Naomi, you have a beautiful voice, but I can't hear the feeling.
Judge 1 OK. Justin and Naomi. Thank you very much, but no thank you. Gary, congratulations. See you on the show next week.
Gary Awesome! That's great. Thank you.

3 7

Interviewer Do you have a problem with noisy neighbors, Rebecca?
Rebecca No, I don't, not at all. But sometimes my neighbors have problems with me! I live in an apartment building and the house rules here are really strict.
Interviewer What kind of house rules do you have?
Rebecca Well, for example, during the week you can't make noise between 12:30 and two o'clock because this is when young children are asleep and the same is true after ten o'clock at night. So, for example, after ten o'clock you can't listen to loud music without headphones, or play a musical instrument. I think it's because people in Switzerland get up early in the morning, so they go to bed very early.
Interviewer Can you watch TV after ten o'clock?
Rebecca Yes, you can, just not really loudly. So, I watch TV, but with the volume low and the windows closed so that's not a problem. But the problem is I can't use my bathroom, because the water makes a noise, and my bathroom is next to my neighbor's bedroom.
Interviewer So you can't take a shower or a bath?
Rebecca No, not after ten o'clock. This isn't true in all apartments in Switzerland, but in my apartment it is. Maybe because the apartments are small.
Interviewer What about on the weekend?
Rebecca On Saturday, the rules are the same. No noise after ten o'clock in the evening.
Interviewer What happens if you want to have a party?
Rebecca You can have a party, but the music can't be loud after ten.
Interviewer What happens if you make a lot of noise after ten?
Rebecca Well, the neighbors complain and if it's really loud, they can call the police.
Interviewer What about on Sunday?
Rebecca Sunday is a day of rest in Switzerland, so you can't make any noise in your apartment at all. For example, in my building you can't move furniture, or put a picture on the wall, or turn on the washing machine.
Interviewer What do you think of these rules?
Rebecca Well, I like the rules that control noise during the week and on Sunday. I think it's a good idea. But I think they need to be more flexible on Saturdays. I mean if a party is still a little loud after ten, I don't think you need to call the police.
Interviewer Does that really happen?
Rebecca Yes, it happened to me.

3 10

The best thing about the weather in New York City is that it's always changing. In the summer, it's usually hot and sometimes sunny and sometimes cloudy, with temperatures of about 85 degrees Fahrenheit. And of course, it sometimes rains.

In the winter, the temperature is usually between 30 degrees and 40 degrees. It can be windy and cold, but it doesn't snow often.

In the spring and in the fall the weather is very changeable – you can have all the four seasons in one day! It can be sunny or foggy in the morning, cloudy at lunchtime, raining in the afternoon, and then cold and windy in the evening. I always tell tourists to take their sunglasses and their jackets when they go out!

3 15

Rob Hey, Jenny!
Jenny Oh, hi, Rob. Is that coffee for me?
Rob Yes. A double espresso.
Jenny Oh, wow, thanks. That's really nice of you.
Rob No problem. Do you have a meeting with Daniel?
Jenny Yes, another meeting. And you?
Rob I'm going to the office, too. I have an interview in twenty minutes.
Jenny Oh really? With who?
Rob A theater director.
Jenny Sounds interesting.
Rob What time is your meeting with Daniel?
Jenny At half past nine.
Rob Ugh!
Jenny Oh, no. Are you OK? I'm so sorry!
Rob I'm fine!
Jenny I'm really sorry. You can't wear that shirt to an interview!
Rob Don't worry, there's a clothes shop over there. I can buy a new one.
Jenny OK. I can help you choose one.
Jenny Oh, that's my phone. Sorry, I need to answer this. See you in there?
Rob OK.

3 19

Eddie So, Jenny, what do you think of London?
Jenny I love it, Eddie! It's so cool!
Eddie What about the people in the office?
Jenny They're really nice. And they're very polite!
Eddie What are you doing right now? You aren't in the office. I can hear traffic.
Jenny Right now? I am standing outside a men's clothing store.
Eddie You're what?
Jenny I'm waiting for Rob.
Eddie Who's Rob? Do you have a new boyfriend already?
Jenny Don't be silly. He's just a guy from the office. He's buying a new shirt.
Eddie Wait a minute. So you're waiting for a guy named Rob outside a men's clothing store?
Jenny Stop it. I don't have time to explain it all now. Oh, here he is now. I have to go.
Eddie OK. Have fun.
Jenny Bye, Eddie. Love you.
Rob So, what do you think?
Jenny You cannot be serious!
Rob What's wrong? You don't like my new shirt?

Jenny No way! You can't wear that to an interview! Come on, let's go back into the store and change it.
Rob OK.

3 33

Interviewer What's your favorite time of day?
Martin It depends. During the week it's seven in the evening, because that's when I get home from work and when I can relax. But on the weekend, my favorite time is breakfast time. I have a big breakfast, and I have time to read the papers and listen to the radio.
Interviewer What's your favorite day of the week?
Martin My favorite day of the week is Friday, because then I know the weekend is near.
Interviewer What's your favorite month?
Martin Probably May. It's when the weather starts to get warm and the evenings are long.
Interviewer What's your favorite season?
Martin Spring, because it means that winter is finally over. I love riding my bike, and spring is a great time for bike riding – not too hot and not too cold.
Interviewer What's your favorite holiday?
Martin Probably New Year's Eve, because you don't need to worry about buying presents or cooking a big lunch, and everybody's in a good mood.

3 49

1 He was an English writer.
He was born in the 16th century.
He was married with three children.
He was born in Stratford-upon-Avon.
He is famous for his plays, for example, *Hamlet* and *Macbeth*.
2 She was born in London in 1932 to American parents.
She was a famous actress.
She was dark-haired and very beautiful.
She was best friends with Michael Jackson.
She was famous for her dark blue eyes.

3 52

... and finally on the news today the story of two soccer fans who missed the big match.

Last week, Chelsea played Arsenal at Chelsea's famous stadium, Stamford Bridge in west London. It was the match that soccer fans all over the world wanted to watch. Charles Spencer's daughter and a friend were among the lucky people with tickets. The girls were in Althorp, which is about 85 miles from London, and they decided to go by taxi. But when the taxi stopped in a small village, it was clear that something was wrong. They were in Stamford Bridge, but not at the Chelsea stadium. The driver had typed Stamford Bridge into his GPS. But unfortunately, Stamford Bridge is also a small village in the north of England – and that's where they were! Of course, they missed the match.

3 60

Interviewer When was your memorable night?
David Te puedo decir exactamente, fue el once de julio del dos mil diez. I can tell you exactly, it was July 11th, 2010.
Interviewer Why do you remember the date?
David Because it was the final of the World Cup, Spain against Holland.
Interviewer Where were you?
David Well, I'm a flight attendant and that day I was in Acapulco in Mexico.
Interviewer Who were you with?
David I was with three other Spanish flight attendants.
Interviewer Where did you go to watch the match?
David We didn't go out. We watched the match in the hotel restaurant.
Interviewer And what did you wear to watch the match?
David We wore Spanish soccer shirts that we bought in a store, and we also had red and yellow scarves.
Interviewer Tell me about the night. What did you do?
David Well, the match was on in the afternoon Mexican time. We went down to the hotel restaurant early to get a good seat. There was a big screen. The restaurant was full of Spanish tourists. There was a great atmosphere.
Interviewer And Spain won the match, of course.
David Yes. It wasn't a good match, but when Spain got their winning goal everybody shouted and jumped up. It was amazing! When the match finished we all went out. We wanted to celebrate. We went to another restaurant near the beach, and it was full of Spanish people. Everyone was really happy. We had a great party!
Interviewer What was the weather like? Do you remember?
David Yes, it was a warm night. About 20 degrees Celcius, I think.
Interviewer What time did you get back to your hotel?
David I can't remember exactly but very late, about three in the morning. Luckily, I had a free day the next day, so I didn't need to get up early.
Interviewer Why was this night so memorable?
David First, of course, because Spain won their first World Cup, but also because of the circumstances – we were very far away from Spain, thousands of kilometers away in another country, but we all felt very Spanish that night!

3 64

Rob So, Jenny, we have a free morning. What do you want to do?
Jenny Well, you're the expert on London life! What do you suggest?
Rob Well, we can go cycling.
Jenny I don't have a bike.
Rob We can rent bikes. It's easy.
Jenny That's cool.
Rob OK, great. So we can cycle through the parks, and you can see a bit of London. Oh, hang on. Uh, oh. It's Daniel. Daniel, hi!
Daniel Hi, Rob. You need to do an interview this morning, with an artist. He's at the Tate Modern.
Rob Can I do the interview on Monday?
Daniel Sorry, he can only do this morning.
Rob OK, send me the details.
Daniel Thank you very much, Rob.
Rob I'm sorry.
Jenny That's OK, I understand. Work is work!
Rob But I can meet you later, outside the Tate Modern. It's on the South Bank.
Jenny I can find it. I have a map, I can cycle there.
Rob Let's meet at twelve o'clock then.
Jenny Great.

3 68

Rob Sorry about the weather.
Jenny Yeah... but what a view! It's a great bridge too.
Rob It's the Millennium Bridge. It's not for cars, only for people. It was the first new bridge over the Thames in 100 years.
Jenny You sound like a tour guide!
Rob Sorry... I interviewed the architect last year. So what would you like to visit?
Jenny What is there to see?
Rob Well, we could see the Tate Modern first as we're here, and then we could go to the Globe Theatre. Do you like Shakespeare?
Jenny Not really. I studied too much Shakespeare in college. It's Daniel. Sorry. Hi, Daniel.
Daniel Hi, Jennifer. How's your free day? Are you enjoying London?
Jenny Absolutely. It's fantastic.
Daniel Listen, I have some free time today. Would you like to meet for lunch?
Jenny That's really nice of you, Daniel, but I'm sorry, I can't. I'm really far away from the office right now.
Daniel That's OK. No problem. Maybe another time?
Jenny Definitely. Bye.
Rob What did he want? Anything important?
Jenny Not at all. Hey, let's go inside the Tate Modern now.
Rob Yes, of course. There's a great restaurant on the top floor. The view is fantastic. The Tate Modern was a power station until 1981. Did you know that?
Jenny I didn't. Do you know anything else about the Tate Modern?
Rob Thank you for asking. I know a lot about it actually.
Jenny Oh, great!

4 6

Then the detective questioned Barbara Travers.

Detective What did you do after dinner yesterday evening?
Barbara After dinner? I played cards with Gordon, and then I went to bed.
Detective What time was that?
Barbara It was about eleven thirty. I remember I looked at my watch.
Detective Did you hear anything in your father's room?
Barbara No. I didn't hear anything.
Detective Miss Travers, did you have any problems with your father?
Barbara No, I didn't have any problems with him at all. My father was a wonderful man and a wonderful father. I'm sorry, Detective.
Detective Don't worry, Miss Travers. No more questions.

4 7

Next, the detective questioned Gordon Smith.

Detective What did you do after dinner, Gordon?
Gordon I played cards with Barbara. Then she went to bed.
Detective Did you go to bed then?
Gordon No. I stayed in the living room and I had a cup of tea. Then I went to bed.
Detective What time was that?
Gordon I don't remember exactly. I didn't look at the time.
Detective Did you hear anything during the night?
Gordon No, I didn't. I was very tired. I slept very well.
Detective You and Mr. Travers were business partners, weren't you?
Gordon Yes, that's right.
Detective And it's a very good business I understand.
Gordon Yes, Detective, it is.
Detective And now, it is your business.
Gordon Listen, Detective, I did not kill Jeremy. He was my partner and he was my friend.

4 8

Finally, the detective questioned Claudia Simeone.

Detective What did you do yesterday evening, after dinner?
Claudia I went to my room and I took a bath and I went to bed.
Detective What time was that?
Claudia About 11 o'clock.
Detective Did you hear anything?
Claudia Yes. I heard somebody go into Jeremy's room. It was about 12 o'clock.
Detective Who was it?
Claudia It was Amanda, his wife.
Detective Are you sure? Did you see her?
Claudia Well, no, I didn't see her. But I'm sure it was Amanda.
Detective You were Mr. Travers's assistant, Claudia.
Claudia Yes, I was.
Detective Were you just his assistant?
Claudia What do you mean?
Detective Were you in love with Mr. Travers?
Claudia No, I wasn't.
Detective The truth please, Claudia.
Claudia Fine, Detective. Yes, I was in love with him, and he said he was in love with me. He said he wanted to leave his wife – Amanda – and marry me. I was stupid. I believed him. He used me, Detective! I was very angry with him.
Detective Did you kill him?
Claudia No, Detective, I loved Jeremy.

4 9

Before dinner, Gordon met with Jeremy in the library.

Gordon Happy birthday, Jeremy.
Jeremy Ah, thanks, Gordon.
Gordon Listen, Jeremy, I want to talk to you about Barbara.
Jeremy Barbara? What's the problem?
Gordon It's not exactly a problem. I am in love with her, and I want to marry her.
Jeremy Marry Barbara? Marry my daughter! Are you crazy? Never! You don't love Barbara. You only want her money!
Gordon That's not true, Jeremy. I love her.
Jeremy Listen to me. If you marry Barbara, when I die all my money goes to Claudia.
Gordon To Claudia? To your assistant?
Jeremy Yes.
Gordon Is that your last word, Jeremy?
Jeremy Yes, it is.
Amanda Dinner everybody!
Reader At midnight, Gordon was in the living room. He finished his tea and went upstairs.
Jeremy Who is it? Gordon?

4 14

Barbara Let's go upstairs. Follow me. Be careful. The ceiling is very low here.
Leo It's a very old house.
Barbara Yes, the house is three hundred years old. My family lived here for nearly eighty years. There are six bedrooms. This was my father's bedroom.
Kim Is there heat in the house?
Barbara Yes, there is. Why do you ask? Are you cold?
Kim Yes, it's very cold in here.
Leo That's because we're from California.
Barbara Let's go and see the other bedrooms.
Leo Yes, of course.
Leo Well, what do you think, Kim? I love it! Don't you?
Kim I'm not sure. There's something about the house I don't like.
Leo Kim, it's perfect for the kids. Think of the yard. And it's a real authentic country house. What do you say?
Kim I suppose so. If you're sure.
Leo I am sure! Mrs…uh, Barbara. We want it. We want to rent the house.
Barbara Excellent.
Leo When can we move in?
Barbara As soon as you like.

4 15

Leo Hello.
Waiter Good evening, sir, madam. What can I get you?
Kim How about a coffee? I'm still cold.
Waiter Yes, madam. And you, sir?
Leo You know, I'm cold, too. I'll also have a coffee, thanks.
Waiter Here you are!
Leo Well, here's to our new house!
Kim Yes!
Waiter You're new around here, aren't you?
Leo Yes, that's right.
Kim We just rented the big house on Darwin Road.
Waiter Which house? The Travers family's house?
Leo Yes.
Waiter Oh.
Leo Is something wrong?
Waiter Who showed you the house?
Kim Barbara. The old lady who lived there before.
Waiter Ahh, Barbara. Old Mr. Travers's daughter. Some people thought that she was the one who did it. She never married, of course.
Kim The one who did what? What happened? Why didn't she marry?
Waiter Didn't she tell you?
Leo Tell us what?
Waiter About the murder.
Leo & Kim Murder??
Waiter Yes, Mr. Travers was murdered in that house in 1958… in his bed.
Kim Oh, how horrible!
Waiter The man who killed Mr. Travers was Barbara's lover. The family never lived there again. They tried to sell the house, but nobody wanted to buy it. Not after a murder. That's why that house is always rented.
Leo Kim.
Kim Yes.
Leo Are you thinking what I'm thinking?
Kim Yes – I don't want to sleep in a house where somebody was murdered. Come on. Let's go to a hotel.
Waiter Hey, your coffee! You didn't drink your coffee! Ah, well.

4 24

I arrived at Gosforth Hall late in the evening. I don't believe in ghosts, but yes, I felt a little nervous. I checked in, and the front-desk clerk gave me the key and showed me to my room.

I left my things in the room and came downstairs. There weren't many other guests in the hotel. There were only three. I sat in the lounge and I talked to the manager, Sara Daniels, about her hotel. Then I had a drink and at 12 o'clock, I went upstairs to my room.

Room 11 was on the top floor. I opened the door and turned on the light.

It was a very big room, very old, and yes, it was a little spooky. There was an old TV on a table – but there wasn't a remote control. I turned on the TV.

There was a movie on. I was happy to see that it wasn't a horror movie. I decided to watch the movie, but I was tired after my long trip and after half an hour, I went to sleep.

4 25

Stephen In the middle of the night, I suddenly woke up! I looked at my watch. It was two o'clock in the morning. The TV was off! But how? There was no remote control, and I didn't get up and turn it off. The light was on, but suddenly the light went off, too. Now I was scared! I couldn't see anything strange, but I could feel that there was somebody or something in the room. I got out of bed and turned on the light and TV again. Little by little I started to relax, and I went to sleep again. When I woke up, it was morning. I had breakfast and checked out. I left the hotel about ten o'clock.

Interviewer So the question is, did you see the ghost?

Stephen No, I didn't see the ghost, but I definitely felt something or somebody in the room when I woke up in the night.

Interviewer Were you frightened?

Stephen Yes, I was! Very frightened!

Interviewer Would you like to spend another night in the hotel?

Stephen Definitely, yes.

Interviewer Why?

Stephen Well, I'm sure there was something strange in that room. I can't explain the television and the light. I want to go back because I want to see the ghost.

4 32

Host Good afternoon and welcome to today's edition of *Get Ready! Cook!* And a big round of applause for today's contestants, Jack and Liz. Hello, Jack. So, do you like cooking?

Jack I love it. I cook dinner every evening at home.

Host How about you, Liz?

Liz Yes, I'm the cook in my family, too. I cook every day of course, but what I really like is cooking for friends on the weekend.

Host OK, so you know the rules. In the bag there are six ingredients, just six ingredients. You have an hour to make three dishes, an appetizer, a main course, and a dessert. Apart from the ingredients in the bag, you can also use basic ingredients like pasta, rice, eggs, sugar, salt, pepper, and so on. OK? Are you ready? Let's open the bag. And today's ingredients are a chicken, some carrots, some onions, three oranges, some cream cheese, and some dark chocolate. OK, Jack and Liz. You have five minutes to decide what to make, and then it's Get ready! Cook!

4 33

Host Liz and Jack, you have two more minutes, so I hope you're almost ready. OK. Time's up. Stop cooking now, please. OK, Jack. What did you make?

Jack For the appetizer, there's carrot and orange soup, for the main course I made chicken breasts filled with cream cheese, and for dessert I made pancakes with chocolate sauce.

Host That all looks delicious. And you, Liz?

Liz I made a carrot and onion salad with orange dressing. Then for the main course, I made pasta with creamy chicken sauce, and for dessert, chocolate and orange mousse.

Host It all looks good, too. But now, the moment of truth. Let's taste your dishes…

4 34

Host OK, Jack. Let's try your soup. Mmm, that's delicious. It's a great combination, carrot and orange. Is there any onion in the soup?

Jack Yes, one onion.

Host It's very good, but next time maybe you could add a little cream, not much, just a little. OK, now the chicken. Mmm, that's nice. Not very original, but very tasty. And finally, the pancakes. They look beautiful… and they taste great. Now Liz, let's try your dishes. The salad first. Mmm, it's nice, but the taste of onion is very strong. How many onions did you use?

Liz Three.

Host I think maybe two are enough for this salad. OK, the pasta. Mmm, it's very good but it needs a little more salt and pepper. And finally, the mousse. That's a beautiful mousse, Liz.

Liz Thank you.

Host Mmm, and it tastes wonderful, absolutely delicious.
Well, congratulations to you both. I loved all your dishes – but only one of you can win – and today's winner is…Jack!

4 42

Host Question 1. What is the approximate population of Vietnam? Is it a 68 million, b 78 million, or c 88 million?

Contestant 1 I think it's c, 88 million.

Host c is the right answer! Question 2. How many calories are there in a Big Mac? Is it a 670, b 540, or c 305?

Contestant 2 I think it's a, 670.

Host Final answer?

Contestant 2 Final answer, 670.

Host I'm sorry, the right answer is b. A Big Mac has 540 calories. And Question 3. How far is it from New York City to Los Angeles? Is it a about 2,500 miles, b about 1,500 miles, or c about 3,100 miles?

Contestant 3 About 2,500 miles.

Host Are you sure?

Contestant 3 Yes. I'm sure.

Host a is the right answer!

4 45

Host Good evening. Welcome to *Quiz Night*. Tonight's show comes from New York City. And our first contestant is Colleen from Miami. Hi, Colleen. Are you nervous?

Colleen Yes, a little.

Host Well, just try to relax. The rules are the same as always. I'm going to read you some sentences, and you have ten seconds to say if the sentence is true or false. If you get the first answer right, you win 500 dollars. Then for each correct answer you double your money, so if you get the second answer right, you win 1,000 dollars, and for the third correct answer you win 2,000 dollars. For eight correct answers you win 64,000 dollars. But if you get an answer wrong, you lose all the money. Remember you can also call a friend, so if you're not sure about one of the answers, you can call your friend to help you. Is that OK, Colleen?

Colleen Yes, OK.

4 46

Host OK Colleen, first question for 500 dollars. The North Pole is colder than the South Pole. True or false?

Colleen The North Pole is colder than the South Pole. Uh, false.

Host Correct. The South Pole is much colder, because it's much higher than the North Pole. In the summer, the average temperature at the North Pole is 32 degrees Fahrenheit, but at the South Pole it's minus 15. Now, for 1,000 dollars, carrots are sweeter than tomatoes. True or false?

Colleen Uh, I think it's true.

Host Correct. It's true. Carrots are about five percent sugar, but tomatoes, even though they are a fruit and not a vegetable, don't have any sugar at all. OK, for 2,000 dollars, a proton is heavier than an electron.

Colleen I think it's true.

Host Correct. A proton is more than 1,800 times heavier than an electron. Next, for 4,000 dollars, The White House is bigger than Buckingham Palace. True or false?

Colleen The White House is bigger than Buckingham Palace. Uh, false.

Host Correct. Buckingham Palace has 775 rooms, but the White House has only 132 rooms. Next, for 8,000 dollars, oranges are healthier than strawberries. True or false?

Colleen Uh, true. No, uh, false.

Host Do you want to call a friend?

Colleen No, I think it's false.

Host Correct. An orange has 70 milligrams of vitamin C, but a cup of strawberries, a normal serving, has 98. OK, for 16,000 dollars, female mosquitoes are more dangerous than male mosquitoes.

Colleen Uh, true.

Host Correct. Female mosquitoes are the ones that bite. Male mosquitoes don't bite. OK, Colleen, for 32,000 dollars, in judo a green belt is better than a blue belt. True or false?

Colleen Uh, I'm sure that's false. My brother does judo. False.

Host Correct. The order of belts in the lower stages of judo is white for a beginner, then yellow, orange, green, blue, brown, and black. And finally, the last question. Be very careful, Colleen. If you get it right, you win 64,000 dollars, but if you get it wrong, you get nothing. Are you ready?

Colleen Yes, ready.
Host OK, for 64,000 dollars, hepatitis A is worse than hepatitis B. True or false?
Colleen Uh… uh…
Host Quickly, Colleen, your time is almost up.
Colleen I want to call a friend.
Host OK, Colleen. So, who do you want to call?
Colleen Kevin.
Host Is he your boyfriend?
Colleen Yes.
Host OK then. Hello, Kevin?
Kevin Yes.
Host I'm calling from *Quiz Night*. Colleen needs some help. You have 30 seconds, Kevin. Here she is.
Colleen Hi Kevin.
Kevin Hi Colleen.
Colleen Listen, Kevin. It's the last question. Hepatitis A is worse than hepatitis B. True or false?
Kevin Uh, I think it's true. Hepatitis A, yes, that's the serious one.
Colleen Are you sure?
Kevin Yes, definitely!
Host Time's up. OK Colleen, true or false?
Colleen True.
Host Final answer?
Colleen Final answer. True.
Host I'm sorry, Colleen, it's false. Hepatitis B is much more serious. You can die from it. You had 32,000 dollars, but now you go home with nothing.
Colleen Ooh, Kevin. You wait until I see him…

4 49

Jenny Thanks for showing me around London yesterday. I had a great time.
Rob Me, too. So, what did you do last night?
Jenny Nothing really. I had a lot of work to do. Emails, phone calls… What did you do?
Rob I wrote my article about the artist that I interviewed yesterday morning.
Jenny Can I see it?
Rob Sure, it's on my laptop. Hang on a second. There.
Jenny Sorry. Hi, Eddie.
Eddie Happy birthday, Jenny!
Jenny Thanks! But listen, I can't talk right now.
Eddie Oh, sure.
Jenny I'm in the office.
Eddie I'll call you back.
Jenny Yeah, later.
Eddie OK.
Jenny OK. Sorry, but it's my birthday today.
Rob Really?! Happy birthday! Maybe we could have dinner tonight?
Daniel Jennifer.
Jenny Oh, hi Daniel.
Daniel I'd like to take you out for dinner this evening.
Jenny This evening?
Daniel Yes, for a working dinner. We have a lot to talk about before you go back to New York. I know a very good restaurant.
Jenny Oh, uh… yes, of course.
Daniel Great. See you later.
Jenny Yes, sure. Sorry, Rob.

4 55

Daniel So, Jenny, I hear it's your birthday today.
Jenny Yes, that's right.
Daniel Well, Happy Birthday! How do you normally celebrate?
Jenny Oh, nothing special. Maybe I go out for dinner with friends or see a movie.
Daniel Well, we could go out somewhere, after dinner.
Waiter Would you like a dessert?
Jenny Not for me, thanks.
Daniel OK, no.
Waiter Coffee?
Jenny A decaf espresso.
Daniel The same for me, please.
Waiter Two decaffeinated espressos. Certainly, sir.
Daniel You know Jenny, you've got beautiful eyes.
Jenny I get them from my mother. Anyway, what are your plans for the July edition of the magazine?
Daniel The, er, July edition? I um…
Jenny I have to take this. Sorry.
Daniel No problem.
Jenny Hi, Barbara.
Barbara Jenny, just a quick call. We really like your idea about Rob Walker. He's a great writer.
Jenny So can I ask him?
Barbara Yes. Go ahead.
Jenny That's great.
Barbara Good luck. I hope he says yes.
Jenny Me, too.
Daniel Good news?
Jenny Uh, yeah. That was Barbara my boss from the New York office. She just gave me a little birthday present.
Daniel So, would you like to go somewhere else?
Jenny I'm sorry, Daniel. I'm a little tired.
Daniel Yes, of course. Waiter, could I have the bill, please?

5 8

Host On today's travel program, Alan Marks is going to tell us about CouchSurfing, a new way of traveling. Alan, what exactly is CouchSurfing?
Alan Well, CouchSurfing is an exciting and cheap way of traveling and seeing new places. It's a very simple idea. When you visit another city, you stay in somebody's apartment or house. That person, the host, gives you a room and a bed, and if he or she doesn't have a bed, then you can sleep on their couch, or sofa.

5 9

Host Do you have to pay for the bed?
Alan No, you don't. It's completely free. CouchSurfers usually take a small present for the host or maybe they can help with the housework or make a meal. But you never pay any money.
Host How do you find these people?
Alan Well, there is a website called CouchSurfing.org. First, you go there and create a profile. Then you search for the city you want to visit, and you look for people there who are offering a bed. When you find somebody, you send them an email and then you can agree on the day or days that you want to stay. The website is free.
Host And do you have to offer a bed in your house?
Alan No, not if you don't want to. You can just be a guest or you can be a host and offer a room in your house, or you can do both things. It's up to you.
Host Is CouchSurfing safe?
Alan Yes, it is. You have a lot of information on the website about the person you are going to stay with. Every time a person stays with a host, they write a report, either positive or negative, and you can read all these reports. Also, you can email the person before you go and ask any questions you want.
Host Does the host usually show you his or her city?
Alan Well, it depends on the person. Some hosts take their guests to see some of the sights, but others don't. It depends when you visit, too. Some hosts take their guests out on the weekends, but are too busy during the week. But hosts usually recommend things to do, so you often see things that tourists don't usually see.
Host And can I CouchSurf all over the world?
Alan Of course. In fact, you can visit 230 countries and more than 70,000 cities.

5 15

Part 2

"Well I have a problem with my boyfriend. We argue all the time. I'm not sure that he loves me. I want to know if we're going to stay together." "Please choose five cards, but don't look at them." Jane took five cards. The fortune-teller put them on the table face down. He turned over the first card. "Ah, this is a good card. This means you're going to be very lucky." "But am I going to stay with my boyfriend?" Jane asked. "Maybe," said the fortune-teller. "We need to look at the other cards first."

5 17

Part 4

The fortune-teller turned over a card with two rings. "Now I can see everything clearly. You are going to leave your boyfriend and go away with the other man, with Jim…to another country. And very soon you're going to get married." "Married? To Jim? But am I going to be happy with him?" "You're going to be very happy together. I'm sure of it." Jane looked at her watch. "Oh, no, look at the time. I'm going to be late for work." She stood up, left a $50 bill on the table, and ran out of the room.

5 30

One of the first things I noticed in Valencia is that people eat out a lot. They spend a lot of time in cafes. You find people having

breakfast or tea, not just lunch and dinner. People who work go out to have coffee, they don't have it in their office. In restaurants, one thing that really surprised me was that when people go out in big groups, the men all sit at one end of the table and the women at the other.

Another thing I notice, maybe because I'm a woman myself, is what Spanish women are like, or Valencian women maybe. Of course, I'm a foreigner, but I find that the women here talk very fast and very loudly, much more than the men. Women dress very well, especially older women, and they always look immaculate!

Finally, there's a myth that the Spanish don't work hard, but I don't think it's true, it's just that they work different hours. People have a long lunch break, but they leave work very late.

5 36

Interviewer Today, most people spend a lot of time every day online, but do men and women use the Internet in the same way?

Expert Research shows that in general, they use the Internet in different ways. For example, men and women both use the Internet to send emails, but men send more work emails, while women send more personal emails to friends and family.

Interviewer What about online shopping?

Expert As you can imagine, women do more Internet shopping than men. They often use online stores to buy things for the house, clothes, toys, and so on. Men, on the other hand, prefer buying things on auction sites like eBay.

Interviewer What other sites are more popular with men?

Expert News sites are more popular with men than with women. Men also like visiting sports sites where they can find out, for example, game scores. In general, men use the Internet a lot for fun. They download music and play games much more than women do.

Interviewer What do women do more than men?

Expert Well, women often use the Internet to get information about health and medicine. And they are also more interested in websites that give them advice, for example, websites that give advice about how to be good parents, or diet websites that help them to lose weight. They also use the Internet for directions much more than men. They use websites like Google maps when they need to go somewhere new. And they use social networks like Facebook more than men do.

Interviewer Are there some things that both men and women do?

Expert Yes, they both use the Internet to book tickets for trains and planes, and to book hotels. They also both use online banking, for example, to pay bills or make transfers.

5 38

Jenny Rob!

Rob Jenny, hi. Sorry I'm a bit late.

Jenny No problem.

Rob Really?

Jenny Really!

Rob I got your message.

Jenny Would you like a coffee or something?

Rob No, I'm fine thanks. So what did you want to talk about? You think London is the best city in the world and you don't want to go home.

Jenny Not exactly. We'd like you to come to New York.

Rob Me? To New York?!

Jenny I talked to Barbara about you. You know, Barbara, my boss? She loves your articles, too. So, would you like to come over to New York and work for us? Just for a month. And write a column for *New York 24seven*. And maybe a daily blog?

Rob Wow, sounds great! What could I call it? *An Englishman in New York*?

Jenny Why not! Are you interested?

Rob Yes, very. It's amazing! But I need to think about it.

Jenny Of course.

Rob When do I need to decide?

Jenny Before the end of the week?

Rob OK, great. Thank you.

Jenny And now, I really have to go.

5 42

Jenny Where is it? Where's my phone?!

Rob Are you looking for this?

Jenny Rob! I can't believe it! My phone! You're a hero, thank you so much.

Rob No problem. It gave me a chance to see you again. And I had more time to think about your offer.

Jenny And?

Rob I'd love to accept. I really want to come and work in New York.

Jenny That's great, Rob! I'm so happy.

Rob Me, too. Oh, you had a call from Eddie. I didn't answer it. Is he going to meet you at the airport?

Jenny Eddie? No. He's at college in California.

Rob In California? Does he teach there?

Jenny Teach? No, he's a student.

Rob A student?

Jenny Well, he's only 19. Eddie's my brother.

Announcement Next departure flight 232 to New York is now ready for boarding.

Jenny I need to go.

Rob Well, have a good journey.

Jenny Thanks, Rob. Bye.

Rob Bye. And see you in New York!

5 49

1 Yes, I have. I don't usually see movies more than once or twice, but I've probably seen *It's a Wonderful Life*, the old Frank Capra movie, at least six or seven times because it's on TV every Christmas. It's usually on just after lunch on Christmas Day, which is when I'm full and a little sleepy, and I want to sit on the sofa and watch a movie. Actually, I think it's a great movie.

2 Yes, *The Empire Strikes Back*, the second *Star Wars* movie, well, the fifth episode in the series. I've seen it about twenty times probably. It's my favorite movie of all time, and when I meet a girl, I always watch it with her. It's a kind of test. If she doesn't like the movie, then I think that our relationship isn't going to work.

3 Yes, I have. *Flashdance*. I've seen it, oh, more than a hundred times. I absolutely love it. I love the music, and the movie just makes me feel good. Whenever I feel depressed I think, OK, I'm going to watch *Flashdance*. It always makes me feel better. I've bought the DVD three times because after you've played a DVD a lot, it doesn't work well.

5 51

Jess So, where are you going to take me for my birthday?

Matt I want to take you somewhere really nice. Have you been to *The Peking Duck* on 24th Street?

Jess On 24th Street. Yes, I have.

Matt Oh, no! When did you go there?

Jess Last month. I went with some people from work.

Matt OK. Somewhere else. Have you ever eaten at *Appetito* on 2nd Avenue? They make delicious pasta.

Jess I know. I've been there twice. But we could go there. I love Italian food.

Matt No, listen. Why don't we go back to *Luigi's*? We had an amazing meal last time. Do you remember? The Italian waiter sang for you. It was so romantic!

Jess No, I don't remember.

Matt You don't?

Jess No, I don't remember because it wasn't me. I've never been to *Luigi's*.

Matt Oh. My bad memory again.

Jess So, who did you go there with? With your ex-girlfriend?

Matt No, no, I went there with…my sister. Yes, with my sister.

Jess Your sister, huh? Let's forget it. I don't think I want to go out on my birthday.

1

1A present tense verb *be* [+], subject pronouns: *I*, *you*, etc.

[+] = affirmative form 1 5

Full form	Contraction
I am your teacher.	**I'm** your teacher.
You are in room 7.	**You're** in room 7.
He is Mike.	**He's** Mike.
She is Hannah.	**She's** Hannah.
It is a school.	**It's** a school.
We are students.	**We're** students.
You are in Class 2.	**You're** in Class 2.
They are teachers.	**They're** teachers.

- Always use a subject pronoun (*you, he,* etc.) with a verb, e.g., ***It**'s a school.* **NOT** ~~*Is a school.*~~ ***They**'re teachers.* **NOT** ~~*Are teachers.*~~
- Always use capital *I*, e.g., *He's Mike and **I**'m Sally.* **NOT** ~~*i'm Sally.*~~ With other pronouns only use a capital letter when it's the first word in a sentence.
- *you* = singular and plural.
- Use *he* for a man, *she* for a woman, and *it* for a thing.
- Use *they* for people and things.

Contractions

- In contractions ' = a missing letter, e.g., *'m = am.*
- We use contractions in conversation and in informal writing, e.g., an email to a friend.

1B present tense verb *be* [-] and [?]

I'**m not** Brazilian. 1 23
She **isn't** from Los Angeles.
They **aren't** Spanish.
Are you Peruvian? Yes, I **am**.
Is she South Korean? No, she **isn't**.

[-] = negative form

Full form	Contraction	
I **am not**	I'**m not**	Italian.
You **are not**	You **aren't**	Spanish.
He / She / It **is not**	He / She / It **isn't**	Mexican.
We **are not**	We **aren't**	
You **are not**	You **aren't**	
They **are not**	They **aren't**	

- Put *not* after the verb *be* to make negatives.
- You can also contract *are not* and *is not* like this: *You**'re not** Italian. She**'s not** Spanish.*

[?] = question form

Am I	Chinese?
Are you	American?
Is he / she / it	Turkish?
Are we	
Are you	
Are they	

[✓] = affirmative short answer		[✗] = negative short answer	
Yes,	I **am**.	No,	I'**m not**.
	you **are**.		you **aren't**.
	he / she /it **is**.		he / she / it **isn't**.
	we **are**.		we **aren't**.
	you **are**.		you **aren't**.
	they **are**.		they **aren't**.

- In questions, put *am, are, is,* before *I, you, he,* etc. ***Are you** German?* **NOT** ~~*You are German?*~~ *Where **are you** from?* **NOT** ~~*Where you are from?*~~
- Don't use contractions in affirmative short answers. *Are you Iranian? Yes, **I am**.* **NOT** ~~*Yes, I'm.*~~

1C possessive adjectives: *my, your,* etc.

I'm Chinese.	**My** family is from Beijing. 1 41
You're in level 1.	This is **your** classroom.
He's the director.	**His** name is Michael.
She's your teacher.	**Her** name is Tina.
It's a school.	**Its** name is McQueen's Language School.
We're an international school.	**Our** students are from many different countries.
They're new students.	**Their** names are David and Emma.

- *his* = of a man, *her* = of a woman, *its* = of a thing.
- *their* = of plural people or things.
- Possessive adjectives don't change with plural nouns. ***our** students* **NOT** ~~*ours students*~~

***it's* or *its*?**
Be careful with *it's* and *its*.
it's = it is ***It's** a school.*
its = possessive ***Its** name is McQueen's Language School.*

1A

a Complete with *am*, *is*, or *are*.

I *am* Mike.
1 We _____ from Boston.
2 He _____ early.
3 They _____ teachers.
4 Today _____ Wednesday.
5 I _____ sorry.
6 It _____ a hotel.
7 You _____ in room 402.
8 She _____ a student.
9 My name _____ Carla.
10 I _____ in a taxi.

b Write the sentences with contractions.

He is late. *He's late.*
1 It is Friday. _____
2 They are in school. _____
3 I am very well. _____
4 You are in my class. _____

c Write the sentences with a subject pronoun and a contraction.

Mike and Hannah are students. *They're* students.
1 **John is** in room 5. _____
2 **Sam and I are** early. _____
3 **Julia is** a teacher. _____
4 **The school is** in Santiago. _____

◀ p.5

1B

a Write the sentences in the negative.

She's Australian. *She isn't Australian.*
1 I'm American. _____
2 They're Brazilian. _____
3 It's in South America. _____
4 You're French. _____

b Make questions and short answers.

	/ you Russian?	?	*Are you Russian?*	✓ *Yes, I am.*
1	/ I in room 10?	?	_____?	✓ _____
2	/ it Italian?	?	_____?	✗ _____
3	/ they students?	?	_____?	✗ _____
4	/ he from the US?	?	_____?	✓ _____
5	/ you sure?	?	_____?	✗ _____

c Complete the dialogue. Use contractions if possible.

A Hi. I'*m* Mark.
B Hello, Mark. My name [1]____ Maria.
A [2]____ you Spanish, Maria?
B No. I [3]____ from Mexico.
A [4]____ you from Mexico City?
B No. I [5]____ from Tijuana.
A [6]____ Tijuana near Mexico City?
B No, it [7]____. It [8]____ in the north.
A [9]____ you a student?
B No. I [10]____ a teacher.

◀ p.7

1C

a Complete the sentences with a possessive adjective.

My name's Darly. I'm from Brazil.
1 The students are from Italy. ____ names are Susanna and Tito.
2 She's in my class. ____ name is Rebecca.
3 We're in class 2. ____ teacher is Richard.
4 London is famous for ____ parks.
5 How do you spell ____ last name, Anna?
6 This is my teacher. ____ name is Brad.
7 I'm from Boston. ____ address is 31 Kent Road.
8 Sit down and open ____ books, please.
9 Laura is in my class. ____ desk is near the window.
10 We're from Beijing. ____ last name is Wong.

b Circle the correct word.

Mark and Simon are friends. *They* / *Their* are in class 2.
1 She's a new student. *She* / *Her* name's Carla.
2 Is *they* / *their* teacher British?
3 My name's Soraya. I'm in *you* / *your* class.
4 Where are *you* / *your* friends from?
5 We're French. *We* / *Our* names are Marc and Jacques.
6 Is *she* / *her* Japanese?
7 Peter is a teacher. *He* / *His* is from Canada.
8 What's *he* / *his* name?
9 I'm Karen. *I* / *My* last name is White.
10 *She* / *Her* is from Seoul.

◀ p.9

2

2A *a / an*, plurals; *this / that / these / those*

a / an, plurals

It's **a** bag. 1 52
It's **an** umbrella.
They're **books**.
They're **watches**.

a / an (indefinite article)

It's	**a**	bag. pen.
	an	ID card. umbrella.

- Use *a | an* with singular nouns.
- Use *an* with a noun beginning with a vowel (*a, e, i, o, u*).
- Use *a* with nouns beginning *u* when *u* = /yu/, e.g., *university*.

regular plurals

Singular	Plural	Spelling
a book a key	book**s** key**s**	add *-s*
a wat**ch** a bo**x**	wat**ches** bo**xes**	add *-es* after *ch, sh, s, x*
a countr**y** a dictionar**y**	countr**ies** dictionar**ies**	consonant + *y* > *ies*

- Add *-s* (or *-es* or *-ies*) to make plural nouns: *It's a pen. They're pens.*
- Don't use *a | an* with plural nouns: *They're keys.* **NOT** ~~*They're a keys.*~~

irregular plurals

Singular	Plural
a man /mæn/ a woman /ˈwʊmən/ a child /tʃaɪld/ a person /ˈpərsn/	men /mɛn/ women /ˈwɪmən/ children /ˈtʃɪldrən/ people /ˈpipl/

this / that / these / those

1

1 What's **this**? It's a ticket. 1 57
These watches are Japanese.
2 **That** car is Italian.
What are **those**? They're headphones.

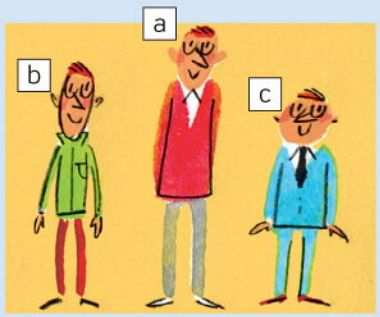
2

1 Use *this | these* for things near you (*here*).
2 Use *that | those* for things which aren't near you (*there*).
- *this | that* = singular; *these | those* = plural.
- *this, that, these,* and *those* can be adjectives (***this*** *watch*) or pronouns (*What's* ***this****?*).

2B adjectives

1 The **White** House is in the US. 1 63
They're **blue** jeans.
2 He's **strong**.
It isn't **easy**.
Is it **American**?
3 It's a **very big** city.
She's **really small**.

1 When we use an adjective with a noun, the adjective goes before the noun: *It's a big house.* **NOT** ~~*It's a house big.*~~
Adjectives don't change before a plural noun: *They're blue jeans.* **NOT** ~~*They're blues jeans.*~~
2 We can also use adjectives without a noun, after the verb *be*.
3 We often use *very* before adjectives:
a *He's very tall.*
b *He's tall.*
c *He isn't very tall.*



2C imperatives, *let's*

1 **Open** the door. **Turn** right. 1 71
Don't worry. **Don't stop**.
Be quiet, please. Please **sit down**.
2 **Let's go** home. **Let's wait**.

1 Use imperatives to give orders or instructions.
- [+] imperatives = verb (base form).
  [–] imperatives = *don't* + verb (base form).
- Add *please* to be polite: *Open the door, please.*
- We often use *be* + adjective in imperatives: *Be quiet, Be careful,* etc.
- Don't use a pronoun with imperatives: *Be quiet.*

2 Use *Let's* + verb (base form) to make suggestions.
Use *Let's not* + verb to make a negative suggestion: *Let's not wait.*

2A

a Complete with *a* or *an*. Write the plural.

	singular	**plural**
	a photo	*photos*
1	____ city	_____
2	____ email	_____
3	____ person	_____
4	____ box	_____
5	____ woman	_____

b Write sentences with *It's* or *They're* (and *a* or *an* if necessary).

	pen	*It's a pen.*
	buses	*They're buses.*
1	children	_____
2	change purse	_____
3	men	_____
4	umbrella	_____
5	sunglasses	_____

◀ p.12

c Complete the dialogues with *this*, *these*, *that*, or *those*.

Teacher What's [1]_____, Jenny?
Jenny It's an iPod.
Teacher And what are [2]_____, Jenny?
Jenny They're headphones.
Teacher Give them to me, please, Jenny.

Boy 1 Who's [3]_____ man over there?
Boy 2 He's my father.
Boy 1 And are [4]_____ your dogs?
Boy 2 Yes, they are.
Boy 1 Wow!

◀ p.13

2B

a Underline the adjectives in these sentences.

He's a rich man.
1 They're Japanese tourists.
2 It's an international school.
3 That isn't the right answer.
4 We're good friends.
5 Hi, Anna. Nice to meet you.
6 Those animals are dangerous.
7 This is a big country.
8 My phone is very cheap.

b Put the words in the right order.

is Chinese he ? *Is he Chinese?*
1 a day very it's hot
2 your Australian is teacher?
3 car fast isn't that very
4 a idea bad it's
5 a are student you good?
6 easy is English very
7 strong my is brother very
8 watch expensive is this an

◀ p.14

2C

a Complete with a verb from the list. Use a [+] or a [-] imperative.

be go have open park read speak take turn on worry

A It's hot. **B** *Open* the window.
A I'm very sorry **B** *Don't worry*. It isn't a problem.
1 **A** I'm bored. **B** _____ the TV.
2 **A** *No entiendo.* **B** This is an English class. Please _____ Spanish.
3 **A** I'm tired. **B** It's late. _____ to bed.
4 **A** Is this book good? **B** No, it isn't. _____ it.
5 **A** I'm hungry. **B** _____ a sandwich.
6 **A** Look at those animals. **B** _____ careful. They're dangerous.
7 **A** It's raining. **B** _____ an umbrella.
8 **A** Where is our hotel? **B** It's over there. _____ here.

b Complete with *Let's* and a verb from the list.

close go open sit down stop turn off

It's hot. *Let's open* the window.
1 Come on. _____.
2 It's late. _____ the TV and go to bed.
3 I'm tired. _____.
4 It's very cold in here. _____ the window.
5 There's a service station. _____ and have a coffee.

◀ p.17

3

3A simple present [+] and [-]

Americans **like** fast food. (2 4)
They **live** in houses with yards.
My husband **works** from 9:00 to 5:00.
Ann **has** three children.

[+]	[-]
I **work**.	I **don't work**.
You **work**.	You **don't work**.
He / She / It **works**.	He / She / It **doesn't work**.
We **work**.	We **don't work**.
You **work**.	You **don't work**.
They **work**.	They **don't work**.

- We use the simple present for things that are generally true or that habitually happen.

- Contractions: *don't = do not, doesn't = does not.*
- To make negatives use *don't / doesn't* + verb (base form).
  He doesn't ***work***. **NOT** ~~*He doesn't works.*~~

spelling rules for *he / she / it*	
I work / play / live.	He work**s** / play**s** / live**s**.
I watch / finish / go / do.	She watch**es** / finish**es** / go**es** / do**es**.
I study.	She stud**ies**.

- The spelling rules for the *he / she / it* forms are the same as for the plurals (see **Grammar Bank 2A p.126**).

Be careful with some *he / she / it* forms
I have — *He has* **NOT** *He haves*
I go — *He goes* /goʊz/
I do — *He does* /dʌz/
I say — *He says* /sɛz/

3B simple present [?]

Do you work in an office? No, I **don't**. (2 14)
Does she work outside? Yes, she **does**.

[?]	[✓]		[✗]	
Do I work?	Yes,	I **do**.	No,	I **don't**.
Do you work?		you **do**.		you **don't**.
Does he / she / it work?		he / she / it **does**.		he / she / it **doesn't**.
Do we work?		we **do**.		we **don't**.
Do you work?		you **do**.		you **don't**.
Do they work?		they **do**.		they **don't**.

- Use *do* (or *does* with *he, she, it*) to make questions.

do* and *does
do = /du/, *does* = /dʌz/
Do and *does* can be:
1 the auxiliary verb to make simple present questions. ***Do*** *you speak English?* ***Does*** *she live here?*
2 a normal verb. *I* ***do*** *my homework in the evening. He* ***does*** *housework every day.*

- The word order for simple present questions is auxiliary (*do, does*), subject (*I, you, he, she*, etc.), base form (*work, live*, etc.).

3C word order in questions

Question word / phrase	Auxiliary	Subject	Base form of verb (2 20)
	Do	you	live near here?
	Does	your mother	work?
What	do	you	do?
Where	does	he	live?
How many children	do	you	have?
What kind of music	does	she	like?
How	do	you	spell your last name?

- The word order for simple present questions with *do* and *does* is auxiliary, subject, base form, e.g., *Do you live here?* **OR** question word, auxiliary, subject, base form, e.g., *Where do you live?*
- We often use question phrases beginning with *What*, e.g., *What color…? What size…? What make…? What time…?*, etc.

Word order in *be* questions
Remember the word order in questions with *be*. Put *be* before the subject. *Where are you from? What's your name? Is he Japanese?*

3A

a Change the sentences.

My mom drinks coffee. *I drink coffee.*
1 I go to the movies. She _____.
2 We live in an apartment. He _____.
3 She has two children. They _____.
4 My dad doesn't like cats. I _____.
5 The stores close at 9:30 p.m. The supermarket _____.
6 We don't study French. My sister _____.
7 I do housework. My husband _____.
8 I want a guitar. My son _____.
9 I don't work on Saturdays. My friend _____.
10 Our classes finish at 5 o'clock. Our English class _____.

b Complete the sentences with a [+] or [-] verb.

eat have listen play read
speak study wear work

[+] They *study* economics.
1 [-] Pedro _____ in an office.
2 [+] Eva _____ books in English.
3 [+] You _____ Arabic very well.
4 [-] I _____ games on my phone.
5 [+] Paolo _____ glasses.
6 [+] We _____ to music on the bus.
7 [-] They_____ fast food.
8 [+] Julia _____ two children.

◀ p.20

3B

a Complete the questions with *do* or *does*.

Do you work with a computer?
1 _____ she have any qualifications?
2 _____ you speak a foreign language?
3 _____ Jamie play the guitar?
4 _____ you like Mexican food?
5 _____ you study another language?
6 _____ school children wear a uniform?
7 _____ your dad cook?
8 _____ people in your country work long hours?

b Make questions.

A She works at night. **B** *Does she work* on the weekend?
A I don't play the guitar. **B** *Do you play the* piano?
1 **A** He likes sports. **B** _____ tennis?
2 **A** She speaks foreign languages. **B** _____ Chinese?
3 **A** I don't eat fast food. **B** _____ pizzas?
4 **A** They cook Italian food. **B** _____ lasagna?
5 **A** Teresa doesn't live in an apartment. **B** _____ in a house?
6 **A** I want a new phone. **B** _____ an iPhone?
7 **A** My dad drives a Ferrari. **B** _____ fast?

◀ p.22

3C

a Order the words to make questions.

you live where do? *Where do you live?*
1 phones how many do you have?
2 interesting is job it an?
3 you drink how do coffee much ?
4 brother your where from is ?
5 you with work computers do?
6 read of what do kind you magazines?
7 do what does weekend he on the?
8 want you do drink another?
9 your where does sister live?
10 do how that you say English in?

b Complete the questions.

What's *your name?* My name's Andrew.
1 How many children _____? Three, two girls and a boy.
2 What kind of movies _____? He likes science-fiction movies.
3 Where _____? We're from New York.
4 What _____ your father _____? He's a lawyer.
5 What kind of food _____? I like Japanese food.
6 Where _____? She works in an office.
7 Where _____? Our apartment is near the mall.
8 How many foreign languages _____? I speak French and Spanish.
9 When _____ to the gym? I go on Mondays, Wednesdays, and Fridays.
10 How old _____? I'm 21.

◀ p.25

4

4A *Whose...?*, possessive 's

1 He's George Clooney**'s** father. (2 31)
It's James**'s** house.
2 They're my parent**s'** friends.
3 **Whose** bag is this? It's Maria**'s**.
4 The end of the movie is fantastic.
I live near the city park.

1 We use *'s* with a person to talk about family and possessions:
*George Clooney**'s** mother* **NOT** ~~*the mother of George Clooney*~~
2 We use *s'* not *'s* with regular plural nouns, e.g.,
*They're my parent**s'** friends.* **NOT** ~~*They're my parent's friends.*~~
- With irregular plural nouns, e.g., *children*, *men*, use *'s*:
the children's room, *men's clothes*.

3 We use *Whose...?* to ask about possessions.
We can ask *Whose is this bag?* **OR** *Whose bag is this?*
You can answer *It's Maria's bag.* **OR** *It's Maria's.*
4 We don't usually use a thing + 's, e.g., *the end **of** the movie*
NOT *the movie's end, the city park* **NOT** *the city's park.*

's
Be careful with 's. It can be two things:
Maria's mother ('s = of Maria)
Maria's Spanish ('s = is)
Whose* / *Who's
Who's = Who is, e.g., ***Who's** that girl? She's my sister.*
Whose = of who, e.g., ***Whose** is this bag? It's Jack's.*
Whose and *Who's* are pronounced the same.

4B prepositions: (*at, in, on, to*)

Time

in	on	at (2 42)
the morning	Monday	three o'clock
the afternoon	Tuesday (morning)	noon / midnight
the evening	the weekend	lunchtime
the summer		night

- We use *in* for parts of the day and seasons.
- We use *on* for days and *the weekend*.
- We use *at* for times of the day and *night*.

Other uses of *in* and *on*
We also use **in** with months and years.
e.g., ***in** December*, ***in** 2015*
We also use **on** with dates.
e.g., ***on** January 1*
(See **Grammar Bank 7A** p.136)

Movement and place

1 He goes **to** work at 8:00. (2 43)
2 He has lunch **at** work.
He works **in** an office.

1 We use *to* for movement or direction: *She goes **to** the gym.*
NOT ~~*She goes at the gym.*~~
We don't use *to* before *home*: *go home* **NOT** ~~*go to home*~~
2 We use *at* and *in* for position.
- We use *at* + *work, home, school*.
- We use *in* + other places: *an apartment, an office, a room*, etc.
- We can use *in* or *at* with some public places: *a restaurant, the movies*, etc.
*On Saturdays he usually has lunch **in** / **at** a restaurant.*

4C adverbs and expressions of frequency

1 I **always** have toast for breakfast. (2 49)
Do you **usually** go to work by bus?
She doesn't **often** go to the movies.
They're **sometimes** late.
She **hardly ever** watches TV.
He is **never** stressed.

2 I have English classes **twice a week**.
She doesn't work **every day**.

1 We use adverbs of frequency to say how often you do something.
- Adverbs of frequency go <u>before</u> all main verbs (except *be*).
<u>after</u> *be*.
- Use a [+] verb with *never* and *hardly ever*. *He **never smokes**.*
NOT ~~*He doesn't never smoke.*~~
- In negative sentences, the adverb of frequency goes between *don't* / *doesn't* and the verb.
2 Expressions of frequency usually go at the end of a sentence or verb phrase.

4A

a Circle the correct form.

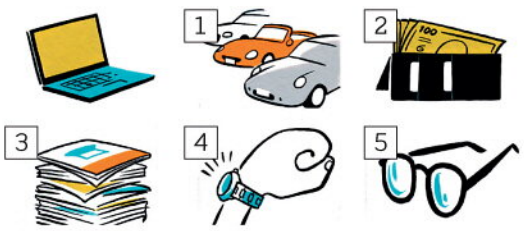
Monica Cruz is *Penelope Cruz's sister* / *sister's Penelope Cruz.*

1 It's *my mother's birthday* / *my birthday's mother.*
2 That's *her house's parents* / *her parents' house.*
3 I'm tired when I go home at *the end of the day* / *the day's end.*
4 Those are *friends' my sister* / *my sister's friends.*
5 That's *Anne's bag* / *Annes' bag.*
6 Those are *the students' desks* / *the student's desks.*

b Look at the pictures. Answer the questions with a short sentence.

Whose is the laptop? *It's Bill's.*

1 Whose are the cars? _____
2 Whose is the wallet? _____
3 Whose are the magazines? _____
4 Whose is the watch? _____
5 Whose are the glasses? _____



c Complete with *Whose* or *Who's*.

Whose car is this? *Who's* the man with dark hair?

1 _____ book is this?
2 _____ keys are these?
3 _____ your favorite singer?
4 _____ Kevin's girlfriend?
5 _____ bag is this?
6 _____ their English teacher?

◀ p.28

4B

a Complete with *in*, *on*, or *at*.

on Saturday

1 _____ the evening
2 _____ September 22nd
3 _____ the summer
4 _____ 7:30
5 _____ night
6 _____ Monday mornings
7 _____ the weekend
8 _____ January

b Complete with *to*, *at*, *in*, or – .

We go *to* school by bus. They get _–_ home late.

1 Sorry, John's not here. He's ____ work.
2 It's a great day. Let's go ____ the beach.
3 Laura's husband works ____ an office.
4 My brother studies math ____ the University of Chicago.
5 I go ____ the gym on Tuesdays and Thursdays.
6 What time do you go ____ home?
7 We live ____ an apartment.
8 It's Monday. The children are ____ school.
9 My father's a doctor. He works ____ a hospital.
10 Jack isn't ____ the store. He's on vacation.

◀ p.31

4C

a Put the adverb or expression of frequency in the right place.

They drive – they don't have a car. **never**
They never drive – they don't have a car.

1 Do you wear glasses? **usually** _____
2 I'm bored. **hardly ever** _____
3 She does housework. **sometimes** _____
4 We go to the movies. **once a week** _____
5 Why are you late? **always** _____
6 I walk to work. **every day** _____
7 My friend is stressed. **never** _____
8 Does it rain in the winter? **often** _____

b Order the words to make sentences.

always she at six up gets
She always gets up at six.

1 for late never I am class
2 eat ever fast hardly we food
3 what work you usually time do finish ?
4 parents radio often the my listen don't to
5 always brother lunchtime is my hungry at
6 don't homework always our we do
7 you work every day to do drive ?
8 hardly teacher angry is our ever

◀ p.32

5

5A *can / can't*

1 **I can** sing, but **I can't** dance. 2 58
2 **I can** come on Tuesday, but **I can't** come on Wednesday.
3 **You can** park here. **You can't** park there.
4 **Can you** help me? **Can I** open the window?

- *can* + base form of verb has different meanings:
  1 *I can* = I know how to.
  I can't = I don't know how to.
  2 *I can* = It's possible for me.
  I can't = It's impossible for me.
  3 *You can* = It's OK / It's permitted.
  You can't = It's not OK / It's not permitted.
  4 *Can you …?* = Please do it.
  Can I …? = Is it OK if I do it?

+		
I / You / He / She / It / We / They	**can**	swim. come. help.

−		
I / You / He / She / It / We / They	**can't**	swim. come. help.

?		
Can	I / you / he / she / it / we / they	swim? come? help?

✓		
Yes,	I / you / he / she / it / we / they	**can.**

✗		
No,	I / you / he / she / it / we / they	**can't.**

- *can* and *can't* are the same for all persons (*I, you, he*, etc.). **NOT** ~~*He cans.*~~
- Contraction: *can't* = *cannot*.
- Don't use *to* after *can*.
  I can swim. **NOT** ~~*I can to swim.*~~

5B present continuous: *be* + verb + *-ing*

They're having a party in apartment 4. 3 4
Oh, no! The baby**'s crying**.
It's raining.
A What **are you doing**?
B **I'm waiting** for my brother.

- We use the present continuous for things that are happening now.
- We also use the present continuous with longer periods of time, e.g., *today, this week*.
  I'm working *at home* ***this week*** *because my daughter's not feeling well.*

+	−	
I'm You**'re** He / She / It **'s** We**'re** They**'re**	**I'm not** You **aren't** He / She / It **isn't** We **aren't** They **aren't**	**having** a party.

?	
Am I **Are** you **Is** he / she / it **Are** we **Are** they	**having** a party?

✓	
Yes,	I **am.** you **are.** he / she / it **is.** we **are.** they **are.**

✗	
No,	**I'm not.** you **aren't.** he / she / it **isn't.** we **aren't.** they **aren't.**

spelling rules for the *-ing* form

base form	verb + *-ing*	spelling
cook study	cook**ing** study**ing**	add *-ing*
dance	danc**ing**	~~e~~ + *-ing*
shop	shop**ping**	one vowel + one consonant = double consonant +*-ing*

5C simple present or present continuous?

simple present	present continuous 3 12
My sister **works** in a bank.	Today she**'s working** at home.
What **do you** usually **wear** to work?	What **are you wearing** now?
It **rains** a lot here in the spring.	Look! **It's raining**.

- We use the simple present to say what we usually do, or things that are normally true.
- We often use the simple present with adverbs and expressions of frequency, e.g., *always, often, once a week*, etc.
- We use the present continuous to say what is happening now.
- We often use the present continuous with *right now, today, this week*.

What do you do?* or *What are you doing?
A *What* ***do you do****? (= What's your job?)*
B *I'm a teacher.*
A *What* ***are you doing****? (= now, at the moment)*
B *I'm waiting for a friend.*

5A

a Rewrite the sentences using the correct form of *can* or *can't*.

I know how to play the piano. I *can play the piano.*

1 It's possible for her to meet me after work.
She _____.

2 Please open the door.
_____ you _____, please?

3 My boyfriend doesn't know how to ski.
My boyfriend _____.

4 Is it OK if I use your car?
_____ I _____?

5 It isn't possible for us to come to your party.
We _____.

b Complete the sentences with *can* or *can't* and the verbs.

I'm sorry. I *can't remember* your name. (remember)

1 She _____ French, but not Spanish. (speak)

2 _____ you _____ me? These bags are very heavy. (help)

3 I _____ you tonight. I'm very busy. (see)

4 _____ I _____ the window? It's cold in here. (close)

5 _____ you _____ your address, please? (repeat)

6 It says "No parking". We _____ here. (stop)

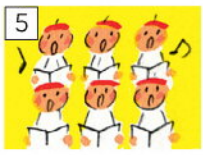
7 Andy doesn't want to go to the beach because he _____. (swim)

8 _____ I _____ your phone? I want to call my dad. (use)

◀ p.36

5B

a Write a question and answer.



What's she doing? *She's crying.*

1 _____? _____.

2 _____? _____.

3 _____? _____.

4 _____? _____.

5 _____? _____.

b Put the verbs in parentheses in the present continuous.

A (*On the telephone*) Hi, Frank. It's Tina.

B Hello, Tina. It's good to hear from you. Where are you?

A I'm here in Boston. I'm on vacation, so I*'m visiting* (visit) my parents. I [1]_____ (stay) with them all this week. They're retired. Right now they [2]_____ (work) in the yard and I [3]_____ (sit) in the sun. And you, Frank? What [4]_____ you _____ these days? (do)

B I [5]_____ (look) for a job.

A Good luck! What about your parents. How are they?

B Fine. My mom [6]_____ (learn) to drive! She [7]_____ (not enjoy) it much because she's very nervous. Right now, she [8]_____ (make) dinner and my dad [9]_____ (help) her.

A It's great to talk to you, Frank. Can we meet?

B Yes. Let's have dinner tonight.

◀ p.39

5C

a Circle the correct form.

A What *do you cook / are you cooking*? I'm really hungry.

B Spaghetti. We can eat in ten minutes.

1 **A** Hello. Is Martin at home?
B No, *he plays / he's playing* soccer with his friends.

2 **A** *Do your parents live / Are your parents living* near here?
B Yes. They *have / are having* an apartment in the same building as me.

3 **A** How often *do you go / are you going* to the hair stylist?
B About once a month. When *I think / I'm thinking* my hair's too long.

4 **A** Don't make a noise! Your father *sleeps / is sleeping*!
B Is he OK? He *doesn't usually sleep / isn't usually sleeping* in the afternoon.

b Put the verbs in parentheses in the simple present or present continuous.

Look. It*'s raining*. (rain)

1 **A** Hi, Sarah! What _____ you _____ here? (do)
B I _____ for a friend. (wait)

2 **A** Let's have lunch. _____ you _____ hamburgers? (like)
B No, sorry. I'm a vegetarian. I _____ meat. (not eat)

3 **A** Listen! The neighbors _____ a party again. (have)
B They _____ a party every weekend! (have)

4 **A** What _____ your husband _____? (do)
B He's a teacher. He _____ at the local school. (work)

5 **A** Hi, Lisa. Where _____ you _____? (go)
B To the gym. I _____ to the gym every evening. (go)

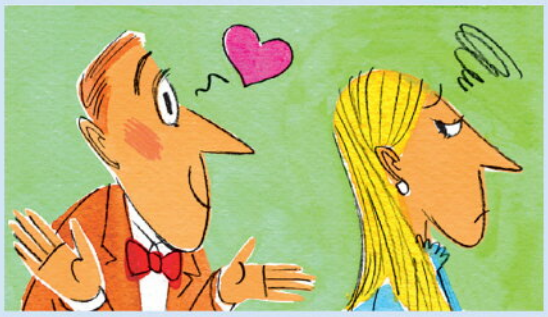
◀ p.41

6

6A object pronouns: *me, you, him,* etc.

subject pronoun	object pronoun	3 21
I	**me**	Can you help **me**?
you	**you**	I know **you**.
he	**him**	She isn't in love with **him**.
she	**her**	He calls **her** every day.
it	**it**	I don't like **it**.
we	**us**	Wait for **us**!
they	**them**	Call **them** this evening.

- Pronouns take the place of nouns.
- We use **subject** pronouns when the noun is the subject of a verb (i.e., the person who does the action): ***John*** *is a doctor.* ***He*** *lives in Chicago.*
- We use **object** pronouns when the noun is the object of a verb (i.e., the person who receives the action): *Anna meets* ***John****. She invites* ***him*** *to a concert.*
- Object pronouns go after the verb:
  I ***love you****.* **NOT** ~~*I you love.*~~
- We also use object pronouns after prepositions (*with, to, from*, etc.):
  Listen to ***me****! I'm in love with* ***her****.* **NOT** ~~*I'm in love with she.*~~



He loves her, but she doesn't love him.

6B *like* (+ verb + *-ing*)

			3 34
I **love**	**shopping**.		
I **like**	**going** to the movies.		
I **don't mind**	**getting** up early.		
I **don't like**	**doing** housework.		
I **hate**	**driving** at night.		

- We use verb + *-ing* after *like, love, don't mind*, and *hate*.

spelling rules for the *-ing* form		
base form	verb + *-ing*	spelling
cook study	cook**ing** study**ing**	add *-ing*
dance	danc**ing**	~~e~~ + *-ing*
shop	shop**ping**	one vowel + one consonant = double consonant + *-ing*

6C *be* or *do*?

be

1 Hi. I'**m** Jim. 3 36
She **isn't** very friendly.
Are you Brazilian?
2 I can't talk. I'**m** driving.
They **aren't** working today.
Is it raining?

1 We use *be* as a main verb.
2 We also use *be* to form the present continuous. *Be* here is an auxillary verb.

do / does

Do you speak English? 3 37
Where **do** they live?
They **don't** have children.

Does your sister have a job?
What **does** your father do?
Alan **doesn't** like jazz.

- We use *do / does* and *don't / doesn't* to make questions and negatives in the simple present.
- Remember the word order for simple present questions: auxiliary, subject, base form **OR** question word, auxiliary, subject, base form.
  (See **Grammar Bank 3C** p.128).

do as a main verb
Remember, we also use *do* as a main verb.
I'm ***doing*** *my homework.*
Does he ***do*** *the housework?*

6A

a Change the highlighted words to object pronouns.

I call my mother once a week.
I call her once a week.

1 I can't find my wallet.
_____

2 She speaks to her father in Japanese.
_____

3 He meets his friends after work.
_____

4 Can you help my friend and me?
_____

5 Paulo is in love with his girlfriend.
_____

6 My son doesn't like cats.
_____

b Complete the sentences with a subject pronoun (*I*, *he*, etc.) or object pronoun (*me*, *him*, etc.).

John is American. *He* lives in California with his parents. *He* argues with *them* a lot.

1 Susan has a big apartment. _____ likes _____ a lot. We often visit _____ on Sundays because she invites _____ for lunch.
2 I am very happy with my neighbors. _____ often help _____ with my children. They often take _____ to school when I'm working.
3 Mark loves Ruth, but she doesn't love _____. He calls _____ every day, but _____ doesn't want to speak to _____.
4 My brother has two dogs. _____ takes _____ for a walk twice a day. I don't like _____ very much because _____ bark at _____.
5 We often take my grandfather some magazines, but _____ never reads _____. _____ watches TV all day and never turns _____ off.

◀ p.44

6B

a Write the *-ing* form of the verbs in the chart.

come cook dance eat get have
run sleep stop study swim write

work > working	
live > living	*writing*
shop > shopping	

b Write sentences about Bob with *love*, *not like*, *like*, *not mind*, or *hate* and a verb.

in an office a computer

the newspaper housework

lunch at work home late

tennis to the movies

TV music

He loves working in an office.

1 _____ 6 _____
2 _____ 7 _____
3 _____ 8 _____
4 _____ 9 _____
5 _____

◀ p.47

6C

a Put the phrases in the correct column.

hungry like heavy metal tired
waiting for a friend stressed
have a car speak Spanish
listening to me know those people

Are you...?	Do you...?
hungry	

b Complete the dialogues with *do* / *does* or *am* / *is* / *are*.

A *Do* you speak Spanish? **B** Yes, but I *don't* speak it very well.
1 **A** Where _____ Gemma going? **B** She _____ going to the gym.
2 **A** _____ you live in a house? **B** Yes, but it _____ have a yard.
3 **A** _____ Matt like shopping? **B** He _____ mind it.
4 **A** Why _____ you crying? **B** Because I _____ feeling sad.
5 **A** _____ your boyfriend cook? **B** Yes. He _____ making dinner now.
6 **A** _____ you busy? **B** Yes. We _____ doing our homework.
7 **A** How old _____ your father? **B** He's 66, but he _____ want to retire.
8 **A** _____ you watching TV? **B** No. I _____ playing a video game.

◀ p.48

7

7A simple past of *be*: *was / were*

President Reagan's wife was an actress. 3 44
She **wasn't** in class yesterday. **Was** she sick?
The Beatles **were** famous in the 1960s.
Where **were** you last night? You **weren't** at home.

- We use *was / were* to talk about the past.
- We often use *was / were* with past time expressions, e.g., *yesterday, last night, in 1945*, etc.
- We use *was / were* with *born*: *I **was born** in Vietnam.*

+	
I / He / She / It You / We / They	**was** there. **were** there.

−	
I / He / She / It You / We / They	**wasn't** there. **weren't** there.

?			✓	✗
Was	I / he/she/ it	famous?	Yes, I **was.**	No, I **wasn't.**
Were	you / we / they		Yes, you **were.**	No, you **weren't.**

7B simple past: regular verbs

I **played** tennis this morning. 3 53
We **watched** a good movie on TV last night.
My grandfather **lived** in São Paulo when he was young.
I **studied** Korean when I was at school.

- We use the simple past for finished actions in the past.

spelling rules for regular verbs		
base form	**past**	**spelling**
watch play	watch**ed** play**ed**	add *-ed*
live	live**d**	add *-d*
stop	stop**ped**	one-syllable verbs: one vowel + one consonant = double consonant
study	stud**ied**	consonant + *y* > *ied*

+	
I / You / He / She / It / We / They	**worked** yesterday.

−	
I / You / He / She / It / We / They	**didn't work** yesterday.

?			✓			✗		
Did	I / you / he / she / it / we / they	**work** yesterday?	Yes,	I / you / he / she / it / we / they	**did.**	No,	I / you / he / she / it / we / they	**didn't.**

- **Contraction:** *didn't = did not.*
- Regular verbs in the past + end in *-ed*, e.g., *worked, lived, played.*
- The simple past is the same for all persons (*I, you, she*, etc.).
- Use auxiliaries *did / didn't* + base form for simple past ? and −. *Did* is the past of *do.*

7C simple past: irregular verbs

I **went** to Canada last month. 3 59
I **didn't go** to Toronto.
Did you **go** to Montreal?

base form	past +	past −
go	**went**	**didn't go**
have	**had**	**didn't have**
get	**got**	**didn't get**
teach	**taught**	**didn't teach**
hear	**heard**	**didn't hear**
feel	**felt**	**didn't feel**
leave	**left**	**didn't leave**
lose	**lost**	**didn't lose**
meet	**met**	**didn't meet**
see	**saw**	**didn't see**
wear	**wore**	**didn't wear**
speak	**spoke**	**didn't speak**
do	**did**	**didn't do**

- Use the irregular past form only in + sentences:
  I ***saw*** *a movie last night.*
- Use the base form after *did / didn't*:
  Did *you* ***see*** *a movie last night?* **NOT** ~~*Did you saw…?*~~
  I ***didn't go*** *out last night.* **NOT** ~~*I didn't went…*~~
- Remember the word order in questions:
  auxiliary, subject, base form, e.g., *Did you go out last night?* or
  question word, auxiliary, subject, base form, e.g., *Where did you go?*
- There is a list of irregular verbs on page 165.

could
Past of *can* = *could.*
− = *couldn't* **NOT** ~~*didn't can*~~
? = *Could you…?* **NOT** ~~*Did you can…?*~~

7A

a Complete the simple past sentences with *was / wasn't* or *were / weren't*.

simple present	simple past
My father's a painter.	My grandfather *was* a painter, too.
1 Today is Monday.	Yesterday _____ Sunday.
2 Where are you now?	Where _____ you yesterday?
3 I'm in Brazil.	I _____ in Peru last month.
4 Is it hot today?	_____ it hot yesterday?
5 The cafe isn't open now.	It _____ open this morning.
6 My neighbors aren't at home.	They _____ at home yesterday.
7 We're in Tokyo now.	We _____ in Kyoto yesterday.
8 They're tired.	They _____ tired last week.

b Complete the dialogues with *was, wasn't, were*, or *weren't*.

A *Were* you and Miguel at the concert last night?
B Yes, we [1]_____.
A [2]_____ it good?
B No, it [3]_____. The singer [4]_____ terrible.
A [5]_____ the tickets expensive?
B Yes, they [6]_____.
A Where [7]_____ your mother born?
B She [8]_____ born in Argentina in 1955.
A [9]_____ her parents Argentinian?
B No, they [10]_____. Her father [11]_____ German and her mother [12]_____ from the US.

◀ p.52

7B

a Rewrite the sentences in the simple past with *yesterday*.

Present	Past
I watch TV.	*I watched TV yesterday.*
1 We study English.	_____
2 Do you listen to the news?	_____
3 He doesn't cook dinner.	_____
4 Does she play sports?	_____
5 They work late.	_____
6 I use the Internet at work.	_____
7 She talks to her friends.	_____
8 My brother doesn't dance.	_____

b Complete the sentences with a verb in the simple past.

not call | cry | dance | finish | not listen | play

We *finished* work late yesterday.
1 I _____ my mother on her birthday.
2 The movie was very sad. _____ you _____?
3 My brother _____ video games all day yesterday.
4 I _____ to the news this morning because I was late.
5 _____ Sarah _____ with Martin at the party?

◀ p.54

7C

a Complete the text with the verbs in parentheses in the simple past.

Last weekend, I *went* (go) to New York City with some friends. We [1]_____ (meet) at the train station at 7:30 a.m. Our train [2]_____ (leave) at 7:45 a.m. In the morning, we [3]_____ (buy) some souvenirs. Then, we [4]_____ (have) lunch at a Chinese restaurant. In the evening, we [5]_____ (see) a play at Lincoln Center. We [6]_____ (get) home very late that night. We all [7]_____ (feel) very tired but very happy.

b Complete the questions in the simple past.

Did you go out last night? Yes, I did.
1 What _____? I wore jeans.
2 Where _____ your friends? We met in a cafe.
3 What time _____? We got home late.
4 How _____ home? We went home by taxi.
5 _____ a good time? Yes, we had a great time.

c Correct the information using the word in parentheses.

They got home at midnight. (11 p.m.)
They didn't get home at midnight. They got home at 11.
1 She wore a red dress. (blue)
_____
2 I left work early. (late)
_____
3 We went by train. (bus)
_____
4 He lost his cell phone. (wallet)
_____
5 You had a sandwich. (salad)
_____

◀ p.57

8

8A simple past: regular and irregular verbs

1 *be* 4 11

[+] I **was** born in Japan.
They **were** late for class yesterday.
[-] She **wasn't** at home last night.
You **weren't** very nice to her.
[?] **Were** you sick yesterday?
When **was** he born?

2 regular verbs

[+] I really **liked** the present.
She **wanted** to be a doctor.
[-] She **didn't enjoy** the concert.
They **didn't arrive** until very late.
[?] **Did** you **watch** the game last night?
When **did** you **finish** the book?

3 irregular verbs

[+] I **went** to Seoul last summer.
She **slept** on the sofa.
[-] He **didn't come** home last night.
They **didn't hear** the music.
[?] **Did** you **speak** to your sister yesterday?
Where **did** you **have** lunch?

1 The past of *be* is *was/were*. We add *not* to make negatives and invert the subject and verb to make questions.
2 Regular verbs add *-ed* or *-d* in the simple past [+], e.g., *like–like**d**, want–want**ed***.
3 Irregular verbs change their form in the simple past [+], e.g., *go–went, see–saw.*

- Regular and irregular verbs (except *can*) use:
  – *didn't* + base form to make negatives, e.g., *I didn't like it. She didn't see him.*
  – *did* + subject + base form to make questions, e.g., *Did you want to come? Where did she go?*

can / could
The past of *can* is *could*. We add *not* to make negatives (*I couldn't find my glasses.*) and reverse the subject and verb to make questions (*Could you use your cell phone on the mountain?*).

8B *there is / there are, some / any* + plural nouns

	Singular	Plural 4 16
[+]	**There's** a garage.	**There are** some pictures on the wall.
[-]	**There isn't** a swimming pool.	**There aren't** any plants in the room.
[?]	**Is there** a bathroom downstairs?	**Are there** any neighbors with children?
[✓]	Yes, **there is**.	Yes, **there are**.
[✗]	No, **there isn't**.	No, **there aren't**.

there is / there are

- We use *there is / there are* to say that somebody or something exists. We use *there is* + a singular noun and *there are* + plural nouns.
- *There is* is often contracted to *There's*. *There are* is not usually contracted.
- When we talk about a list of things, we use *there is* if the first word in the list is singular or *there are* if the first word in the list is plural:
  *In my bedroom, **there's a** bed, two chairs, and a desk.*
  *In the living room, **there are** two armchairs and a sofa.*

a / an, some* and *any

- We often use *there is / there are* with *a / an, some*, and *any*.
- Use *some* and *any* with plural nouns. *Some* = not an exact number.
- Use *some* in [+] sentences and *any* in [-] and [?].

***There is* or *It is*?**
Be careful. *There is* and *It is* are different.
***There's** a key on the table. **It's** the key to the kitchen.*

8C *there was / there were*

	Singular	Plural 4 27
[+]	**There was** an old TV.	**There were** only three guests.
[-]	**There wasn't** a remote control.	**There weren't** any more people.
[?]	**Was there** a ghost?	**Were there** any windows?
[✓]	Yes, **there was**.	Yes, **there were**.
[✗]	No, **there wasn't**.	No, **there weren't**.

- *there was / were* is the past of *there is / are*.

8A

a Complete the dialogue using the simple past of the verbs in parentheses.

A Where *were* (be) you last night at 8:00?
B I [1]_____ (be) at home, Detective. With my wife. We [2]_____ (be) at home all evening.
A What [3]_____ you _____ (do)?
B We [4]_____ (watch) TV and then we [5]_____ (have) a light dinner. We [6]_____ (not be) hungry. After that, we [7]_____ (go) to bed.
A What time [8]_____ you _____ (go) to bed?
B About 10 o'clock.
A [9]_____ you _____ (hear) a noise during the night?
B No, I [10]_____ (not hear) anything.

b Complete the text with the simple past of the verbs in parentheses.

Last night, I *was* (be) asleep in my room when a strange noise [1]_____ (wake) me up. I [2]_____ (not want) to leave my room because I [3]_____ (feel) very scared. Then I [4]_____ (hear) the noise again, so I [5]_____ (decide) to go and investigate. When I [6]_____ (turn on) the light in the kitchen, a bird [7]_____ (fly) out of the window.
I [8]_____ (close) the window so that the bird [9]_____ (not can) come in again, and then I [10]_____ (go) back to bed.

◀ p.61

8B

a Complete with [+] or [?] of *There's* or *There are*.

There's a dishwasher in the kitchen.
Are there any people in the room?

1 _____ any books on the shelf?
2 _____ a toilet downstairs?
3 _____ some stairs over there.
4 _____ a rug on the floor.
5 _____ some pictures on the wall.
6 _____ a shower in the bathroom?
7 _____ some chairs in the yard.
8 _____ a lamp in the bedroom?
9 _____ a bicycle in the garage.
10 _____ any glasses in the cupboard?

b Write [+], [-], or [?] sentences with *there is / are + a / an, some* or *any*.

[+] trees / the yard *There are some trees in the yard.*
1 [+] table / the kitchen _____.
2 [?] fireplace / the living room _____?
3 [-] plants / your apartment _____.
4 [?] people / the hall _____?
5 [+] pictures / your bedroom _____.
6 [-] TV / the kitchen _____.
7 [+] computer / the study _____.
8 [-] chairs / the dining room _____.
9 [?] mirror / the bathroom _____?
10 [-] car / the garage _____.

◀ p.63

8C

a Complete the dialogue with the correct form of *there was* or *there were*.

A How many guests *were there* in the hotel?
B [1]_____ _____ four including me. [2]_____ _____ a Brazilian tourist and [3]_____ _____ two businessmen.
A [4]_____ _____ a restaurant?
B No, [5]_____ _____, but [6]_____ _____ a coffee shop.
A [7]_____ _____ a refrigerator in your room?
B Yes, [8]_____ _____, but [9]_____ _____ any drinks in it.
A How many beds [10]_____ _____?
B One. A double bed.

b Complete the sentences with *there was / were / wasn't / weren't + a / an*, or *some / any*.

There were some ghosts in the haunted hotel I stayed in.

1 My sister didn't take a shower because _____ spider in the bathtub.
2 We couldn't watch the news because _____ TV in our room.
3 I couldn't sleep on the plane because _____ noisy children behind me.
4 They couldn't play tennis because _____ tennis balls.
5 She didn't have a coffee because _____ cups.
6 He took a photo because _____ beautiful view.
7 They couldn't park near the restaurant because _____ parking lot.
8 I couldn't work in the hotel because _____ computer.

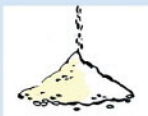
◀ p.65

9

9A countable / uncountable nouns

an apple

three apples


rice

meat

- There are two kinds of nouns in English, countable (C) and uncountable (U).
  C = things you can count, e.g., *apples*. C nouns can be singular (***an** apple*) or plural (*apples*).
  U = things you can't count.
  butter, meat **NOT** ~~*two butters, three meats*~~
  U nouns are usually singular.
- Some nouns can be C or U, but the meaning is different.

an ice cream (C)

some ice cream (U)

a / an, some / any

	countable	uncountable 4 30
+ We need	**an** apple. **some** apples.	**some** butter.
− We don't need	**a** tomato. **any** tomato**es**.	**any** rice.
? Do we need	**an** orange? **any** orange**s**?	**any** sugar?

- We use *a / an* with singular C nouns; *a / an* = one.
- We use *some* + with plural C nouns and with U nouns; *some* = not an exact number or quantity.
- We use *any* in − and ? with plural C nouns and with U nouns.

some in ?
We use *some* in ? to ask for and offer things.
*Can I have **some** apples, please?*
*Would you like **some** coffee?*

9B quantifiers: *how much / how many, a lot of*, etc.

uncountable (singular)	short answers	full answers 4 37
How much sugar do you eat?	**A lot.** **A little.** **Not much.** **None.**	I eat **a lot of** sugar. I eat **a little** sugar. I don't eat **much** sugar. I don't eat **any** sugar.
countable (plural)		
How many cookies do you eat?	**A lot.** **A few.** **Not many.** **None.**	I eat **a lot of** cookies. I eat **a few** cookies. I don't eat **many** cookies. I don't eat **any** cookies.

- We use *How much…?* with uncountable (U) nouns and *How many…?* with plural countable (C) nouns.
- We use:
  a lot (of) with C and U nouns for a **big quantity**.
  a little / not…much with U nouns for a **small quantity**.
  a few / not…many with C plural nouns for a **small quantity**.
  not…any (*none* in short answers) for **zero quantity**.

a lot of and *much / many*

- In + sentences we usually use *a lot of*.
- In − sentences and ?, we usually use *much* and *many*:
  *I don't drink **much** water. Do you drink **much** coffee?*
- It is also possible to use *a lot of* in − and ? : *Do you drink **a lot of** coffee? I don't eat **a lot of** vegetables.*

9C comparative adjectives

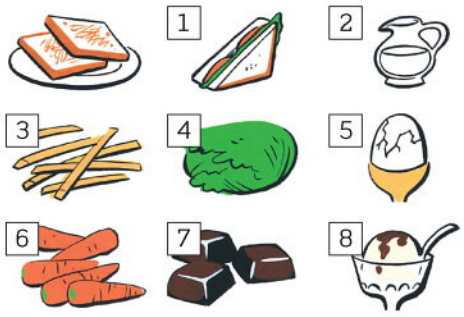
Is your sister **older than** you? 4 47
Buckingham Palace is **bigger than** the White House.
Female mosquitoes are **more dangerous than** males.
My new job is **better than** my old one.
The traffic is always **worse** in the evening.

- Use comparative adjectives + *than* to compare two things, people, etc.

adjective	comparative	spelling
old cheap	old**er** cheap**er**	one-syllable adjectives: add *-er*
big hot	big**ger** hot**ter**	adjectives ending one vowel + one consonant: double consonant, add *-er*
dry healthy	dr**ier** health**ier**	one- or two-syllable adjectives ending consonant + *y* > *-ier*
famous expensive	**more** famous **more** expensive	two- or more syllable adjectives: *more* + adjective
good bad far	**better** **worse** **farther / further**	irregular

9A

a Write *a*, *an*, or *some* + a food / drink word.



some bread

1 _____ 5 _____
2 _____ 6 _____
3 _____ 7 _____
4 _____ 8 _____

b Complete the dialogue with *a*, *an*, *some*, or *any*.

A What can we make for your brother and his girlfriend?
B Let's make *a* lasagna.
A Good idea. Are there [1]____ onions?
B Yes. And there are [2]____ tomatoes, too.
A Great!
B Oh, no! There isn't [3]____ pasta!
A Oh. Wait a minute. I bought [4]____ chicken yesterday. Are there [5]____ potatoes?
B Yes, there are.
A Good. So we can have chicken and mashed potatoes. Do we have [6]____ fruit?
B Yes. I think we have [7]____ oranges. Why?
A You can make [8]____ fruit salad for dessert. There's [9]____ apple and [10]____ bananas, too.
B OK. Let's start cooking.

◀ p.69

9B

a Complete with *How much* / *How many*.

How much sugar do you put in your tea?
1 _____ butter do you use?
2 _____ cans of soda did she drink?
3 _____ oil do I need?
4 _____ chocolates were in that box?
5 _____ rice do you want?
6 _____ coffee does he drink?
7 _____ bottles of water did you buy?
8 _____ cans of tuna do we have?
9 _____ orange juice is there in that carton?
10 _____ cookies did you eat?

b Circle the correct word or phrase.

I don't put *much* / *many* salt on my food.
1 We don't eat *a lot of* / *a lot* candy.
2 **A** How much chocolate do you eat? **B** *A little* / *A few*.
3 My friends don't drink *much* / *many* coffee.
4 **A** How much fruit do you buy? **B** *A lot* / *A lot of*.
5 We eat *a lot of* / *much* fish. We love it!
6 **A** Do your children drink any milk? **B** No. *Not much* / *Not many*.
7 Donna ate her hamburger, but she didn't eat *much* / *many* French fries.
8 **A** How many vegetables do you eat? **B** *Any* / *None*. I don't like them.
9 I have a cup of tea and *a few* / *a little* cereal for breakfast.
10 **A** Do you eat *much* / *many* meat?
B No, I don't eat *no* / *any* meat. I'm a vegetarian.

◀ p.70

9C

a Write the comparative form of these adjectives.

	big	*bigger*
1	high	_____
2	dirty	_____
3	dangerous	_____
4	good	_____
5	thin	_____
6	slow	_____
7	healthy	_____
8	far	_____
9	comfortable	_____
10	bad	_____

b Complete with a comparative adjective + *than*.

My sister is *younger than* me. She's only 18. (young)
1 The farmer's market is _____ the supermarket for vegetables. (cheap)
2 Italian is _____ for Spanish students _____ it is for English students. (easy)
3 It rains a lot in the spring. April is _____ July. (wet)
4 This restaurant is _____ when it first opened. (busy)
5 Come in the summer. The weather is _____ in the spring. (good)
6 I love science. I find it _____ history. (interesting)
7 Cuzco is _____ from the ocean _____ Lima. (far)
8 I'm _____ my brother. He's very tall. (short)
9 The situation is _____ it was last year. (bad)
10 Skiing is _____ I thought it was. (difficult)

◀ p.73

10

10A superlative adjectives

It's **the hottest** month of the year. 5 5
It's **the most dangerous** road in the world.
She's **the best** student in the class.
Monday is **the worst** day of the week.

- Use *the* + superlative adjective to say which is the (*biggest*, etc.) in a group.
- After superlatives, we use *in* (not *of*) + places, e.g., *the world*, *the class*.

adjective	comparative	superlative	spelling
cold high	colder higher	**the** coldest **the** highest	add *-est*
big hot	bigger hotter	**the** biggest **the** hottest	double consonant, add *-est*
dry sunny	drier sunnier	**the** driest **the** sunniest	> *-iest*
dangerous	**more** dangerous	**the most** dangerous	*the most* + adjective
good bad far	**better** **worse** **farther/further**	**the best** **the worst** **the farthest/ furthest**	irregular

10B *be going to* (plans)

I'**m going to take** a vacation next month. 5 11
I'**m not going to study** English.
Are you **going to take** a vacation, too?

	full form	contraction		
+	I **am** You **are** He / She / It **is** We **are** They **are**	I'**m** You'**re** He / She / It'**s** We'**re** They'**re**	**going to**	**take** a vacation next month. **study** English tonight.
−	I **am not** You **are not** He / She / It **is not** We **are not** They **are not**	I'**m not** You **aren't** He / She / It **isn't** We **aren't** They **aren't**	**going to**	**take** a vacation next month. **study** English tonight.

?		
Am I **Are** you **Is** he / she / it **Are** we **Are** they	**going to**	**take** a vacation next month. **study** English tonight.

✓		✗	
Yes,	I **am**. you **are**. he / she /it **is**. we **are**. they **are**.	No,	I'**m not**. you **aren't**. he / she / **it isn't**. we **aren't**. they **aren't**.

- We use *be going to* + verb (base form) to talk about future plans.
- We often use future time expressions with *going to*:
  tomorrow, *next week*, *next year*, etc.

10C *be going to* (predictions)

- We can use *be going to* + verb (base form) to make predictions (= to say what you think or can see is going to happen in the future).

I think it'**s going to** rain. 5 19
You'**re going to be** very happy.
I'm sure they'**re going to win**.

10A

a Write the opposite.

	the smallest	*the biggest*
1	the coldest	_____
2	the most expensive	_____
3	the best	_____
4	the most difficult	_____
5	the driest	_____
6	the shortest	_____
7	the nearest	_____
8	the cleanest	_____

b Complete the sentences with a superlative. Use the adjectives in parentheses.

The tigers are *the most dangerous* animals in the zoo. (dangerous)

1 Our house is _____ house on the street. (big)
2 For me, Saturday is _____ day of the week. (good)
3 My bedroom is _____ room in our house. (small)
4 July is _____ month in my country. (hot)
5 My neighbors upstairs are _____ people in the world. (noisy)
6 _____ driver in my family is my dad. (bad)
7 Sophie is _____ student in our English class. (young)
8 _____ building in my town is the museum. (beautiful)

◀ p.76

10B

a Complete the sentences with the correct form of *be going to* and the verb in parentheses.

She doesn't have a car. *She's going to travel by train.* (travel)

1 We need a vacation. We _____ a hotel near the beach. (book)
2 Tomorrow is Saturday. I _____ in bed. (stay)
3 My sister wants to be a doctor. She _____ medicine. (study)
4 Laura and David are in love. They _____ married. (get)
5 Ian is busy. He _____ late tonight. (work)
6 Their house isn't very neat. They _____ housework this afternoon. (do)
7 It's raining. We _____ an umbrella. (take)
8 I have a problem at work. I _____ to my boss. (speak)

b Complete the sentences with *be going to* + a verb.

not buy call not come eat
go not see sleep watch

I'm staying with a friend. I'*m going to sleep* on the couch.

1 I need to talk to my mom. I _____ her tonight.
2 There isn't any food. What _____ we _____?
3 My friend is sick. She _____ to the party.
4 They don't have any money. They _____ any new clothes.
5 The Yankees are playing the Red Sox. _____ you _____ the game?
6 Our friends are away. We _____ them this week.
7 The children are tired. They _____ to bed.

◀ p.78

10C

a Write predictions for the pictures.

A be catch make play send

B the bus an email a nice day an omelet ~~tennis~~

He's going to play tennis.

1 _____.
2 _____.
3 _____.
4 _____.

b Complete the predictions with *be going to* and a verb.

be break not finish forget have
not like not pass tell win

I'm a fortune-teller. *I'm going to tell* you about your future.

1 You're driving very fast! I'm sure we _____ an accident!
2 She's a very bad student. She _____ the exam.
3 Be careful with that glass! You _____ it!
4 We have a lot of homework. I'm sure we _____ it.
5 They're playing well. I think they _____ the game.
6 Look at the time. We _____ late.
7 Oh, no, it's a horror movie. I'm sure I _____ it.
8 He didn't put her number in his phone. He _____ it.

◀ p.81

11

11A adverbs (manner and modifiers)

adverbs of manner

They drive **dangerously**. 5 25
He dresses **fashionably**.
She eats very **quickly**.
I work **hard**.
We speak English **well**.

- We use adverbs of manner to say how people do things.
- Adverbs usually go after the verb.
  I speak English ***very well***.
  NOT ~~*I speak very well English.*~~

adjective	adverb	spelling
slow quick bad careful	slow**ly** quick**ly** bad**ly** careful**ly**	+ *-ly*
happy easy	happ**ily** eas**ily**	consonant + *y* > *-ily*
possible	possib**ly**	*le* > *-ly*
good fast hard	**well** **fast** **hard**	irregular

- Remember the difference between adjectives and adverbs:
  I'm a ***careful*** *driver.* (*careful* is an adjective. It describes the noun, *driver*.)
  I drive ***carefully***. (*carefully* is an adverb. It describes the verb, *drive*.)

modifying adverbs: *very*, *really*, etc.

It isn't **very** expensive. 5 26
She drives **incredibly** fast.
They speak **really** slowly.

- We use modifying adverbs with adjectives or other adverbs.
- They always go before the adjective or adverb.

words ending in *-ly*
Not all words that end in *-ly* are adverbs, e.g., *friendly* = adjective.
He's a ***friendly*** *person.*

11B verbs + infinitive: *want to, need to*, etc.

I **want to find** a new job. 5 31
You **need to practice** every day.
When did you **learn to play** the guitar?
Would you like to be famous?

- Many verbs are followed by the infinitive.
- These include: *want, need, learn, promise, decide, plan*, and *hope*.

would like to

- *I would like to* = *I want to* (now or in the future).
- **Contractions**: *'d* = *would*; *wouldn't* = *would not*.
- Use the infinitive after *would like*. *I* ***would like to learn***.
  NOT ~~*I would like learn.*~~
- Remember you can also use *Would you like…?* to offer:
  Would you like *a drink?*
- *would like* is the same for all persons.

would like* and *like
I'd like *to dance.* = I want to dance.
I like *dancing.* = I enjoy it; I like it in general.

11C articles

1 *a / an*

A What's this? **B** It's **a** photo of my daughter. 5 37
A What do they do? **B** Jim's **a** doctor. Sally's **an** engineer.
A How often do they have classes? **B** Three times **a** week.

2 *the*

Can you close **the window**, please?
Can you check their address on **the Internet**?
It's **the best** restaurant I know.

3 *a* or *the*?

Let's have **a** pizza. **The** pizzas are very good here.

4 no article

Men are usually more interested in sports than **women**.
She's **my mother's cousin**. That's **Tom's chair**!
Jim goes to **school** by **bus**.

1 We use *a / an*
- to say what something is or what job people do.
- in expressions of frequency.

2 We use *the*
- when the speaker and hearer know the thing we are talking about: *Close* ***the window***. = the one that is open.
- when there is only one of something: *the Internet, the sun*, etc.
- before superlative adjectives: *the biggest, the best*, etc.

3 We often use *a* the first time we mention a person or thing and then *the* the next time because it is now clear who or what we are talking about.

4 We don't usually use *the*
- when we talk about people or things in general:
  Men *are more interested in sports than* ***women***. (general)
  The women *in this class work harder than* ***the men***. (specific)
- before possessive *'s*. *She's my mother's cousin.* **NOT** ~~*She's the my mother's cousin.*~~
- with the following:
  meals: *breakfast, lunch, dinner*, etc.
  places: *work, school, college, bed, home*, etc.
  ***by* + transportation**: *go by car, travel by train*, etc.

11A

a Adjective or adverb? Circle the correct form.

People drive really *dangerous* / *dangerously*.

1 He wrote down the phone number *careful* / *carefully*.
2 My neighbor's children aren't very *polite* / *politely*.
3 My niece plays the piano *beautiful* / *beautifully*.
4 Fast food is incredibly *unhealthy* / *unhealthily*.
5 Old people often walk very *slow* / *slowly*.
6 I bought a *real* / *really* cheap bag at the sale.
7 My friend sings very *good* / *well*.
8 My sister speaks Spanish *perfect* / *perfectly*.
9 We wear *casual* / *casually* clothes to work.
10 The view from the top is *incredible* / *incredibly* beautiful.

b Complete with adverbs from these adjectives.

bad	careful	easy	fast	good
hard	fashionable	perfect	quiet	

The buses and trains in Malmö run *perfectly* when it snows.

1 Can you talk _____, please? I'm trying to sleep.
2 Don't drive _____ when it's raining.
3 I don't like the ocean because I can't swim very _____.
4 She picked up the baby _____ and put him in the bathtub.
5 We're working _____ because we have an exam.
6 I always dress _____ when I go to a party.
7 We played _____ in the semifinal game and we lost 5–1.
8 She was the best athlete so she won the race _____.

◀ p.85

11B

a Complete the sentences with the infinitive form of a verb from the list.

be	buy	call	climb	drive	get married
go	leave	pass	see	stay	

Sam loves Africa. He wants *to climb* Mount Kilimanjaro.

1 I learned _____ a car when I was 17. I passed my test the first time!
2 Our refrigerator is broken. We need _____ a new one.
3 I wouldn't like _____ famous. I'm happy the way I am now.
4 He promised _____ his girlfriend after work.
5 The weather was terrible. We decided _____ at home.
6 My friend would like _____ Radiohead live. She loves them.
7 They're planning _____. Their wedding is on July 12th.
8 I studied hard last week. I hope _____ the exam.
9 Do you like animals? Would you like _____ on a safari?
10 She's enjoying the party. She doesn't want _____.

b Circle the correct form.

I hate *fly* / *flying* so I usually travel by train.

1 Would you like *have* / *to have* dinner with me tonight?
2 My grandmother learned *to drive* / *driving* when she was 62.
3 I'd like *to travel* / *traveling* around Asia.
4 I like *relax* / *relaxing* on weekends.
5 Do you want *to play* / *playing* soccer?
6 He's hoping *to have* / *having* more time when he retires.
7 Most people hate *to go* / *going* to the dentist.
8 I love *to read* / *reading* detective stories.
9 It's cold. You need *wear* / *to wear* a coat.
10 My mom doesn't like *to cook* / *cooking*.

◀ p.86

11C

a Circle the correct word or phrase.

How much time do you spend on *Internet* / *the Internet*?

1 My brother is *at college* / *at the college* studying math.
2 I'd like *cup of tea* / *a cup of tea*, please.
3 We're going to visit my aunt *on weekend* / *on the weekend*.
4 We have English classes *twice a week* / *twice week*.
5 I love reading *novels* / *the novels*.
6 Yolanda is *best* / *the best* student in our class.
7 My mom's *lawyer* / *a lawyer*.
8 He's *the man* / *a man* that I told you about yesterday.
9 Can you open *a door* / *the door* for me, please?
10 He had *breakfast* / *the breakfast* late this morning.

b Complete with *the*, *a* / *an*, or –.

I'm going to buy *a* new laptop next week.

1 What time do you finish ____ work?
2 We usually go to the movies once ____ month.
3 ____ children behaved very badly yesterday.
4 Lorena doesn't like ____ dogs.
5 I want to be ____ engineer when I finish studying.
6 ____ sun came out so we went for a walk.
7 Can you pass ____ salt, please?
8 My mom chose ____ most expensive dessert.
9 Last year, we went on vacation by ____ train.
10 This is Joanne. She's ____ very good friend.

◀ p.89

12

12A present perfect

1 **A** **Have you seen** his new movie? 5 45
B Yes, **I've seen** all his movies.
She hasn't read any Harry Potter books.
2 **Have you ever read** a Russian novel?
Sarah's never worked in a big company.
3 **Have you finished** the exercise?
Your parents **have arrived**. They're in the living room.

1 We use the present perfect when we talk or ask about things that have happened in the past, but when we don't say when.
2 We often use the present perfect with *ever* (= at any time in your life) and *never* (= at no time in your life).
3 We also use the present perfect to talk about something that has recently happened.

	full form of *have*	contraction	past participle of main verb
+	I **have** You **have** He / She / It **has** We **have** They **have**	I'**ve** You'**ve** He / She / It'**s** We'**ve** They'**ve**	**seen** that movie.
−	I **have not** You **have not** He / She / It **has not** We **have not** They **have not**	I **haven't** You **haven't** He / She / It **hasn't** We **haven't** They **haven't**	

?		
Have **Has**	I / you / we / they he / she / it	**seen** that movie?

✓		
Yes,	I / you / we / they he / she / it	**have.** **has.**

✗		
No,	I / you / we / they he / she / it	**haven't.** **hasn't.**

- To make the present perfect use *have* / *has* + the past participle of the verb.
- *'s* = *has* in present perfect.
- Past participles of regular verbs are the same as the simple past.

base form	simple past	past participle
like	liked	liked
want	wanted	wanted

- Past participles of irregular verbs are sometimes the same as the simple past, e.g., *read*, but sometimes different, e.g., *seen*.

base form	simple past	past participle
read /rid/	read /red/	read /red/
see	saw	seen

(There is a list of irregular past participles on p.165)

12B present perfect or simple past?

A **Have you been** to Luigi's? **B** Yes, **I have**. 5 52
A When **did you go** there? **B** **I went** last weekend.
A Who **did you go** with? **B** **I went** with some people from work.
I've been to New York twice. **I went** to visit my sister – she's married to an American.

- We often use the **present perfect** to ask about or tell somebody about a past action for the first time. We don't ask / say when the action happened: ***Have you been*** *to Luigi's?* ***I've been*** *to New York twice.*
- We then use the **simple past** to ask / talk about specific past details: *When* ***did you go*** *there? I* ***went*** *to visit my sister.*
- We use the simple past **NOT** the present perfect with *when* and past time expressions, e.g., *yesterday, last week*:
  When did *you see it?* **NOT** ~~*When have you seen it?*~~
  I ***saw*** *it* ***last week****.* **NOT** ~~*I've seen it last week.*~~

been or *gone*?

I've **been** to Brazil. 5 53
My sister's **gone** to Brazil to study Portuguese.

- *Been to* and *gone to* have different meanings. *Been* is the past participle of *be*, and *gone* is the past participle of *go*.
- In the present perfect, we use *been to* (**NOT** ~~*gone to*~~ or ~~*been in*~~) to say that somebody has visited a place.
  I've ***been to*** *the US three times. Have you* ***been to*** *the new Vietnamese restaurant on George Street?*
- We use *gone to* when somebody goes to a place and is still there:
  My parents ***have gone*** *to the US for their vacation. They don't come back until Saturday.*
- Compare: *Nick has* ***been to*** *Paris* = He visited Paris and came back at some time in the past.
  Nick has ***gone to*** *Paris,* = He went to Paris, and he is in Paris now.

12A

a Write the sentences with contractions.

I have seen the movie. *I've seen the movie.*

1 She has not read the book.
2 You have not washed the dishes.
3 We have done the housework.
4 He has been sick.
5 They have not eaten Japanese food before.

b Write [+], [-], and [?] sentences in the present perfect.

[+] I / meet a famous actor.
I've met a famous actor.

1 [+] I / forget your name
2 [-] my boyfriend / wear his new shirt
3 [?] you / speak to your boss
4 [-] they / do their homework
5 [?] your brother / work in New York
6 [+] the train / leave the train station
7 [-] we / take any photos
8 [?] the children / eat all the cookies
9 [-] my girlfriend / call me today
10 [+] Janet / leave her book at home

◀ p.92

c Write a sentence in the present perfect for each picture. Use the verbs in the box.

break buy fall go read win

They've won the cup.

1 _____ his leg.
2 _____ to the beach.
3 _____ off his motorcycle.
4 _____ the newspaper.
5 _____ a new car.

12B

a Circle the correct form.

Have you ever eaten / Did you ever eat at Appetito?

1 I *haven't bought / didn't buy* any new clothes recently.
2 My boyfriend *has given / gave* me a ring for my last birthday.
3 They*'ve spent / spent* a lot of money yesterday.
4 *Have you ever won / Did you ever win* a competition?
5 My friends *have had / had* a party last weekend.

b Circle the correct form.

Let's go to the Peking Duck. I've never *been / gone* there.

1 The secretary isn't here. She's *gone / been* to the bank.
2 I've never *gone / been* to the US.
3 My neighbors aren't at home. They've *gone / been* on vacation.
4 Have you ever *gone / been* abroad?
5 We have lots of food. We've *gone / been* to the supermarket.

c Put the verbs in parentheses in the present perfect or simple past.

A *Have you ever traveled* abroad? (travel)
B Yes, I *went* to Peru last year. (go)
A [1]_____ you ever _____ any countries in Asia? (visit)
B Yes, I have. I [2]_____ to South Korea a few years ago. (go)
A Who [3]_____ you _____ with? (go)
B My husband. It was a work trip and his company [4]_____ for everything. (pay)
A How wonderful! How [5]_____ you _____ there? (get)
B We [6]_____. (fly)
A Where [7]_____ you _____? (stay)
B We [8]_____ a suite in a five-star hotel. It was beautiful! (have)
A [9]_____ the company _____ you on any other trips recently? (take)
B No. My husband [10]_____ working there a year later, so that was our only trip. (stop)
A Too bad!

◀ p.94

Days and numbers

1 DAYS OF THE WEEK

a Complete the days of the week with the letters.

W Fr S S Th T M

*M*onday /ˈmʌndeɪ/
__uesday /ˈtuzdeɪ/
__ednesday /ˈwɛnzdeɪ/
__ursday /ˈθərzdeɪ/
__iday /ˈfraɪdeɪ/
__aturday /ˈsætərdeɪ/
__unday /ˈsʌndeɪ/

b 1 10 Listen and check.

c Cover the days of the week. Say them in order.

Useful phrases
the weekend (= Saturday and Sunday)
a weekday (= Monday–Friday)
What day is it today? It's Friday.
Have a good weekend. You too.
See you on Monday.

Capital letters
Days of the week begin with a capital letter.
Tuesday NOT *tuesday*

2 NUMBERS 0–20

a Match the words with the numbers.

twelve twenty eleven three
eighteen five fifteen seven

0 zero /ˈzɪroʊ/
1 one /wʌn/
2 two /tu/
3 *three* /θri/
4 four /fɔr/
5 _____ /faɪv/
6 six /sɪks/
7 _____ /ˈsɛvn/
8 eight /eɪt/
9 nine /naɪn/
10 ten /tɛn/
11 _____ /ɪˈlɛvn/
12 _____ /twɛlv/
13 thirteen /θərˈtin/
14 fourteen /fɔrˈtin/
15 _____ /fɪfˈtin/
16 sixteen /sɪksˈtin/
17 seventeen /sɛvnˈtin/
18 _____ /eɪˈtin/
19 nineteen /naɪnˈtin/
20 _____ /ˈtwɛnti/

b 1 11 Listen and check.

c Cover the words. Say the numbers.

Phone numbers
We say the digits separately.
794-1938 = seven nine four, one nine three eight

◀ p.5

3 NUMBERS 21–100

a Write the numbers.

21 twenty-one /ˈtwɛnti wʌn/
_____ thirty /ˈθərti/
_____ thirty-five /ˈθərti faɪv/
_____ forty /ˈfɔrti/
_____ forty-three /ˈfɔrti θri/
_____ fifty /ˈfɪfti/
_____ fifty-nine /ˈfɪfti naɪn/
_____ sixty /ˈsɪksti/
_____ sixty-seven /ˈsɪksti ˈsɛvn/
_____ seventy /ˈsɛvnti/
_____ seventy-two /ˈsɛvnti tu/
_____ eighty /ˈeɪti/
_____ eighty-eight /ˈeɪti eɪt/
_____ ninety /ˈnaɪnti/
_____ ninety-four /ˈnaɪnti fɔr/
_____ a / one hundred /ˈhʌndrəd/

b 1 26 Listen and repeat.

Pronunciation
13 and *30*, *14* and *40*, etc., are similar, but the stress is different, e.g., thirteen, thirty, fourteen, forty, etc.

◀ p.7

4 HIGH NUMBERS

a Write the missing words or numbers.

105 a / one hundred and five
_____ two hundred
350 three hundred and _____
875 eight hundred _____ seventy-five
1,000 a / one thousand /ˈθaʊznd/
_____ one thousand five hundred
2,012 two thousand and _____
5,420 five thousand four _____ and twenty
_____ twenty-five thousand
100,000 a / one hundred _____
1,000,000 a / one million /ˈmɪlyən/
2,300,000 two million _____ hundred thousand

b 4 43 Listen and check.

◀ p.72

The world

1 CONTINENTS

a Match the words and continents.

Continent	Adjective
Africa /ˈæfrɪkə/	African /ˈæfrɪkən/
Asia /ˈeɪʒə/	Asian /ˈeɪʒn/
Australia /ɔˈstreɪlyə/	Australian /ɔˈstreɪlyən/
Europe /ˈyʊrəp/	European /yʊrəˈpiən/
1 North America	North American
South America	South American

b 1 15 Listen and check.

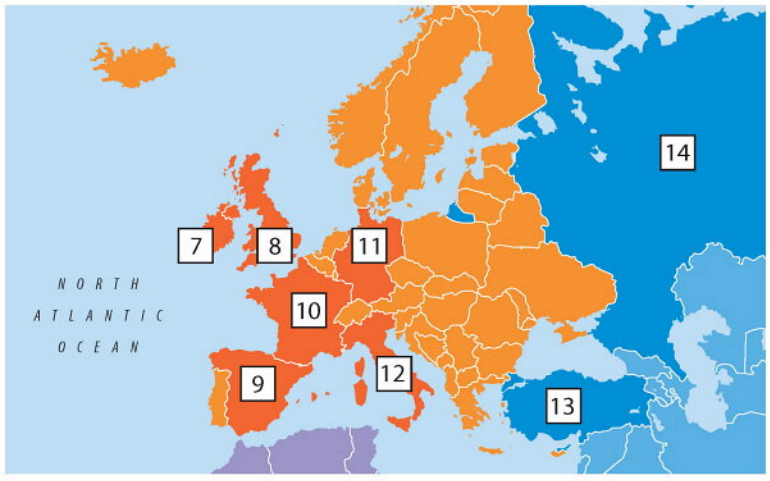
c Cover the words and look at the map. Can you remember the continents and their adjectives?

2 COUNTRIES AND NATIONALITIES

a 1 16 Match the words and countries. Then listen and check.

Country /ˈkʌntri/	Nationality adjective
	-ish
England /ˈɪŋgləndˈ/	English /ˈɪŋglɪʃ/
Ireland /ˈaɪərlənd/	Irish /ˈaɪrɪʃ/
Spain /speɪn/	Spanish /ˈspænɪʃ/
Turkey /ˈtərki/	Turkish /ˈtərkɪʃ/
	-an
Chile /ˈtʃɪli/	Chilean /tʃɪˈleɪən/
Germany /ˈdʒərməni/	German /ˈdʒərmən/
Mexico /ˈmɛksɪkoʊ/	Mexican /ˈmɛksɪkən/
South Korea /saʊθ kəˈriə/	South Korean /saʊθ kəˈriən/
The (United) States / the US(A)	American /əˈmɛrɪkən/
	-ian
Brazil /brəˈzɪl/	Brazilian /brəˈzɪlyən/
1 Canada /ˈkænədə/	Canadian /kəˈneɪdiən/
Iran /ɪˈræn/	Iranian /ɪˈrɑniən/
Italy /ˈɪtæli/	Italian /ɪˈtælyən/
Peru /pəˈru/	Peruvian /pəˈruviən/
Russia /ˈrʌʃə/	Russian /ˈrʌʃn/
	-ese
China /ˈtʃaɪnə/	Chinese /tʃaɪˈniz/
Japan /dʒəˈpæn/	Japanese /dʒæpəˈniz/
Vietnam /viɛtˈnæm/	Vietnamese /viətnəˈmiz/
France /fræns/	French /frɛntʃ/
Thailand /ˈtaɪlænd/	Thai /taɪ/

b Cover the words and look at the maps. Can you remember the countries and nationalities?



Capital letters
Use CAPITAL letters for countries, continents, nationalities, and languages, e.g., Japan NOT japan; Spanish NOT spanish.

◀ p.6

Classroom language

The teacher says

a Match the phrases and pictures 1–13.

- Open your books, please.
- Go to page 84.
- Do exercise a.
- Read the text.
- Look at the board.
- Close the door.
- *1* Work in pairs / groups.
- Answer the questions.
- Listen and repeat.
- Stand up.
- Sit down.
- Turn off your cell phone.
- Please stop talking!

b 1 32 Listen and check.

You say

a Match the phrases and pictures 14–22.

- Sorry, can you repeat that, please?
- *14* Sorry I'm late.
- I don't understand.
- Can I have a copy, please?
- How do you spell it?
- I don't know.
- Excuse me, what's _____ in English?
- Can you help me, please?
- What page is it?

b 1 33 Listen and check.

c Cover the sentences and look at the pictures. Say the sentences.

the

Look at ***the*** *board.*
Answer ***the*** *questions.*

- Use *the* when we know which (board, questions, etc.).
  Look at the board. NOT ~~*Look at a board.*~~
- Use *the* with singular and plural nouns (the board, the questions).

◀ *p.8*

Things

a Match the words and pictures.

- a book /bʊk/
- a calendar /ˈkæləndər/
- a cell phone /sɛl foʊn/
- a change purse /tʃeɪndʒ pərs/
- 1 a coin /kɔɪn/
- a credit card /ˈkrɛdət kɑrd/
- a dictionary /ˈdɪkʃəneri/
- a file/a binder /faɪl/ /ˈbaɪndər/
- glasses /ˈglæsəz/
- headphones /ˈhɛdfoʊnz/
- an ID card / aɪˈdi kɑrd/
- an iPod /ˈaɪpɑd/
- a key /ki/
- a laptop /ˈlæptɑp/
- a magazine /mægəˈzin/
- a newspaper /ˈnuzpeɪpər/
- a pen /pɛn/
- a pencil /ˈpɛnsl/
- a photo /ˈfoʊtoʊ/
- a piece of paper /pis əv ˈpeɪpər/
- scissors /ˈsɪzərz/
- a stamp /stæmp/
- sunglasses /ˈsʌnglæsəz/
- a ticket /ˈtɪkət/
- a tissue /ˈtɪʃu/
- an umbrella /ʌmˈbrɛlə/
- a wallet /ˈwɑlət/
- a watch /wɑtʃ/

b 1 51 Listen and check.

> **Plural nouns**
> Some words for things are plural, e.g., *glasses, headphones, pants.*
> Don't use *a / an* with plural nouns.
> NOT ~~*a glasses, a headphones.*~~

c Cover the words and look at the pictures. In pairs, ask and answer.

What is it? *It's a watch.*

What are they? *They're glasses.*

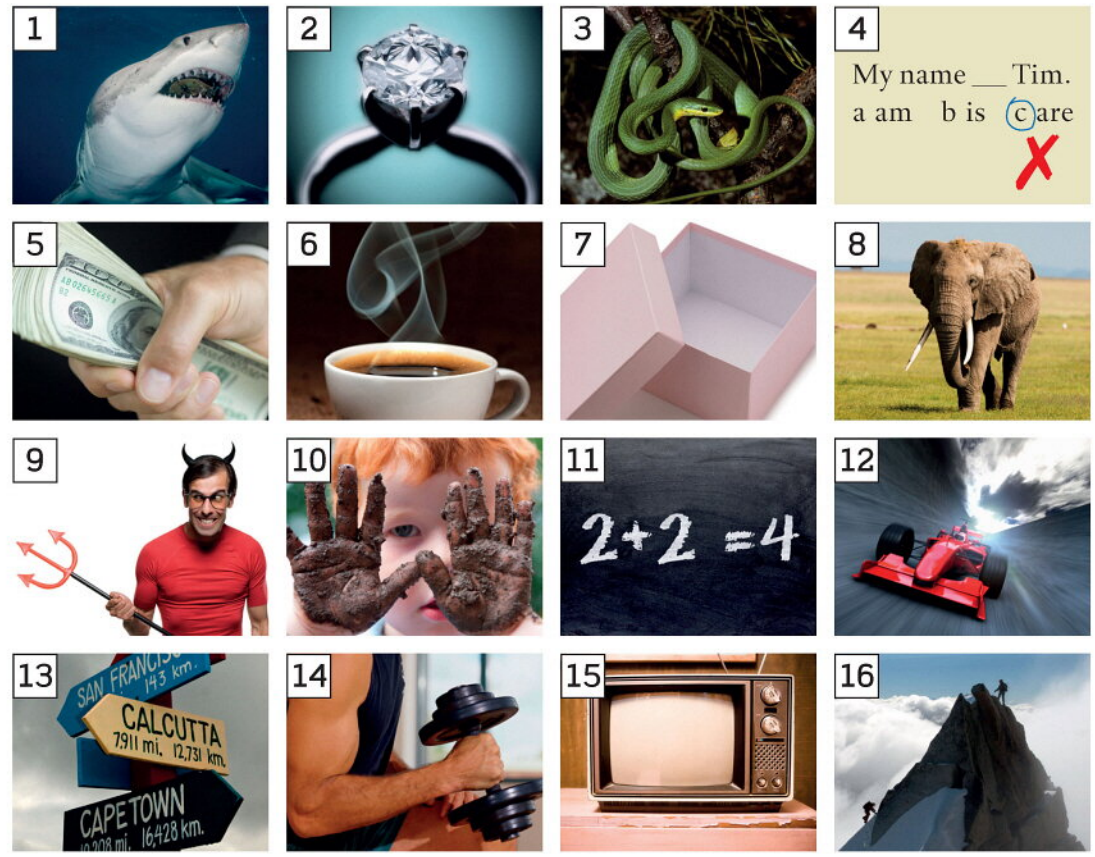
◀ *p.12*

Adjectives

1 COMMON ADJECTIVES

a Match the words and pictures 1–16.

- bad /bæd/ _____
- big /bɪg/ _____
- 1 dangerous /ˈdeɪndʒərəs/ *safe*
- dirty /ˈdərti/ _____
- easy /ˈizi/ _____
- empty /ˈɛmpti/ _____
- expensive /ɪkˈspɛnsɪv/ _____
- far /far/ _____
- fast /fæst/ _____
- high /haɪ/ _____
- hot /hɑt/ _____
- long /lɔŋ/ _____
- old /oʊld/ _____
- rich /rɪtʃ/ _____
- strong /strɔŋ/ _____
- wrong /rɔŋ/ _____



b 1 60 Listen and check.

c Match these adjectives with their opposites in **a**.

cheap /tʃip/	low /loʊ/	short /ʃɔrt/
clean /klin/	near /nɪr/	slow /sloʊ/
cold /koʊld/	new /nu/	small /smɔl/
difficult /ˈdɪfɪkʌlt/	poor /pɔr/	weak /wik/
full /fʊl/	right /raɪt/	
good /gʊd/	safe /seɪf/	

d 1 61 Listen and check. Then test your partner. **A** say an adjective and **B** say the opposite.

Modifiers: *very / really*
We often use these words before adjectives.
*A Ferrari is **very / really fast**.*

e Look at the things in the list. Say two adjectives for each one. Use modifiers.

A Ferrari Mount Everest Bill Gates
The Pyramids Africa Your town / city

A Ferrari – It's really fast and very expensive.

p.14

2 APPEARANCE

a Match the opposite adjectives and the pictures.

- blond /bland/ dark /dɑrk/
- beautiful /ˈbyutəfl/ ugly /ˈʌgli/
- fat /fæt/ thin /θɪn/
- old /oʊld/ young /yʌŋ/
- tall /tɔl/ short /ʃɔrt/

b 1 67 Listen and check.

c Cover the adjectives and look at the pictures. Test yourself or a partner.

Positive adjectives for appearance
Beautiful, ***good-looking***, ***pretty***, and ***attractive*** can all be used for women, but for men we only use ***good-looking*** or ***attractive***.

p.15

Verb phrases

a Match the verbs and pictures.

- cook /kʊk/
- do /du/
- drink /drɪŋk/
- eat /it/
- go /goʊ/
- have /hæv/
- like /laɪk/
- listen /ˈlɪsn/
- 1 live /lɪv/
- play /pleɪ/
- read /rid/
- say /seɪ/
- speak /spik/
- study /ˈstʌdi/
- take /teɪk/
- want /wɑnt/
- watch /wɑtʃ/
- wear /wɛr/
- work /wərk/

b 2 2 Listen and check.

> ***work***
> *Work* has two meanings.
> 1 *She works in a museum.*
> = it's her job
> 2 *The phone doesn't work.*
> = it's broken
>
> ***have* or *eat*?**
> *Have* can be used with both food and drink, and is common with meals, e.g., *have a sandwich, have a coffee, have lunch.*
> *Eat* can only be used with food, e.g., *eat fast food.*

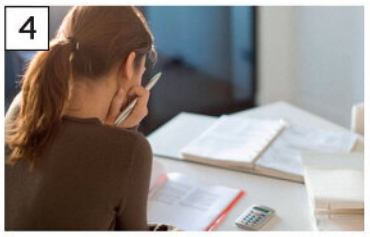
c Cover the verbs and look at the pictures. Test yourself or a partner.

◀ p.20

1 in an apartment

2 in an office

3 children


4 economics

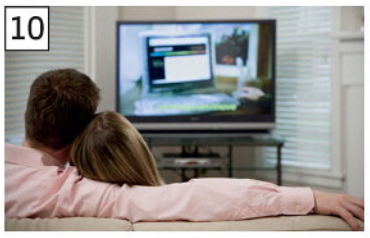
5 German

6 a new car

7 a newspaper

8 animals

9 to the movies


10 TV

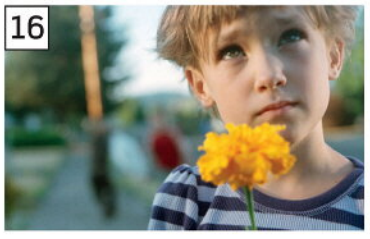
11 to music

12 tennis

13 an umbrella

14 homework / housework

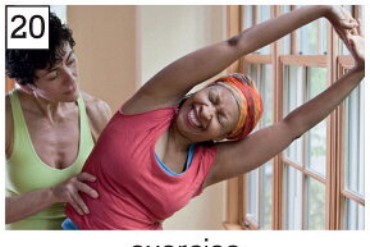
15 the guitar


16 sorry

17 water

18 fast food

19 dinner


20 exercise

21 glasses

Jobs

a Match the words and pictures.

- an administrative assistant /ədˈmɪnəstreɪtɪv əˈsɪstənt/
- 1 an architect /ˈɑrkətɛkt/
- a chef / a cook /ʃɛf/ /kʊk/
- a construction worker /kənˈstrʌkʃn ˈwərkər/
- a dentist /ˈdɛntɪst/
- a doctor /ˈdɑktər/
- an engineer /ɛndʒəˈnɪr/
- a factory worker /ˈfæktəri ˈwərkər/
- a flight attendant /flaɪt əˈtɛndənt/
- a front desk clerk / a receptionist /frʌnt dɛsk klərk/ /rɪˈsɛpʃənɪst/
- a hair stylist /hɛr ˈstaɪlɪst/
- a journalist /ˈdʒərnəlɪst/
- a lawyer /ˈlɔɪər/
- a (bank) manager /(bæŋk) ˈmænɪdʒər/
- a model /ˈmɑdl/
- a musician /myuˈzɪʃn/
- a nurse /nərs/
- a pilot /ˈpaɪlət/
- a police officer /pəˈlis ˈɑfəsər/
- a salesperson /ˈseɪlzpərsn/
- a soccer player /ˈsɑkər ˈpleɪər/
- a soldier /ˈsoʊldʒər/
- a teacher /ˈtitʃər/
- a veterinarian /vɛtərəˈnɛriən/
- a waiter / a waitress /ˈweɪtər/ /ˈweɪtrəs/

a / an + jobs
We use *a / an* + job words.
She's a model. NOT ~~*She's model.*~~

b 2 8 Listen and check.

c Cover the jobs. In pairs, say what the people do.

She's a veterinarian. He's an engineer.

d 2 9 Listen and repeat the sentences. What do *you* do?

What do you do?

- I'm **a** musician. I'm **an** engineer.
- I work **for** a French company. I work **in** a store.
- I'm **a** student. I'm **in** college. I'm **at** school.
- I'm unemployed. I'm retired.

◀ p.22

The family

a Look at the two family trees. Number the people in relation to Richard.

1 aunt /ænt/
2 brother /ˈbrʌðər/
3 cousin /ˈkʌzn/
4 daughter /ˈdɔtər/
5 father /ˈfɑðər/
6 grandfather /ˈgrænfɑðər/
7 grandmother /ˈgrænmʌðər/
8 mother /ˈmʌðər/
9 nephew /ˈnɛfyu/
10 niece /nis/
11 sister /ˈsɪstər/
12 son /sʌn/
13 uncle /ˈʌŋkl/
14 wife /waɪf/

b Complete 1–3 with *children*, *grandparents*, *parents*.

1 my father and my mother = my _____ /ˈpɛrənts/
2 my grandfather and my grandmother = my _____ /ˈgrænpɛrənts/
3 my son and my daughter = my _____ /ˈtʃɪldrən/

c 2 32 Listen and check your answers to **a** and **b**.

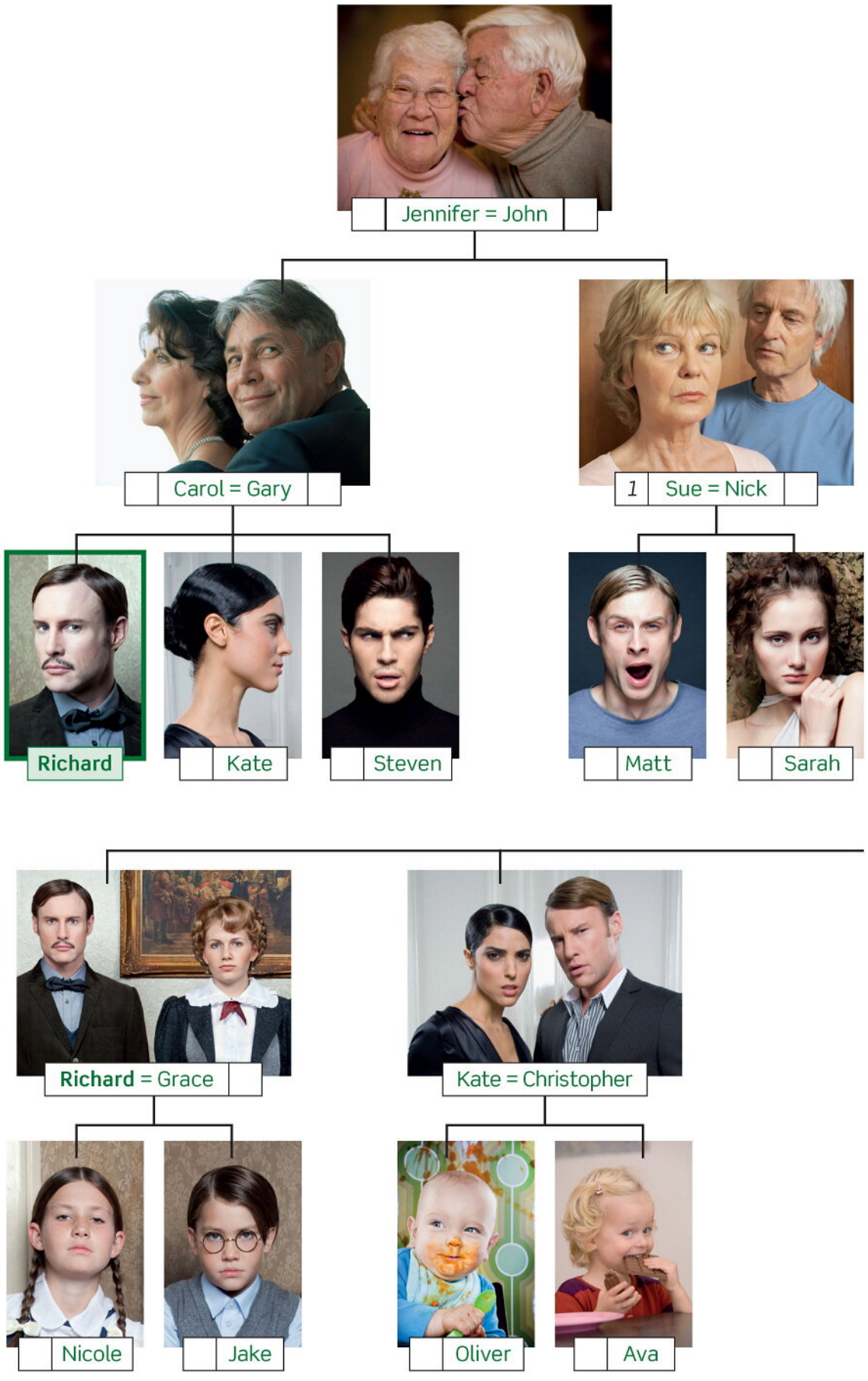
More family words
My wife's mother = my **mother-in-law**; My sister's husband = my **brother-in-law**, etc.
My mother's second husband = my **stepfather**
My father's daughter from another wife = my **stepsister**

d Cover the words. In pairs, ask and answer.

Who's Jennifer? *She's Richard's grandmother.*

Who are Sue and Nick? *They're Richard's aunt and uncle.*

◀ p.28



Everyday activities

a Match the verbs and pictures.

Suzy Stressed

- take a shower
- have a coffee
- do housework
- start work at 8:30
- finish work at 6:30
- get dressed
- 1 wake up at 7:00
- have lunch at work
- go shopping
- go to bed late
- have pizza for dinner
- get home late
- go to work by bus
- watch TV and check emails

Henry Healthy

- go to Italian classes
- do Italian homework
- 1 get up at 8:00
- have breakfast
- exercise
- go home early
- walk to work
- relax
- take the dog for a walk
- sleep for eight hours
- make dinner
- take a bath

b 2 37 Listen and check.

c In pairs, cover the phrases and look at the pictures. **A** describe Suzy's day. **B** describe Henry's day. Then change roles.

> *have*
> *Have* has two meanings.
> 1 For family and possessions, e.g., *I have three children. He has a big house.*
> 2 For activities, e.g., *I have lunch at 1:30. She has a coffee in the afternoon.*

◀ p.30

Suzy Stressed

Henry Healthy

Time

1 TELLING THE TIME

a Match the watches and phrases.

- It's It's six fifteen. / (a) quarter after six.
- It's six o'clock.
- 1 It's It's six forty-five. / (a) quarter to seven.
- It's It's six ten. / ten after six.
- It's It's six fifty-five. / five to seven.
- It's It's six thirty five. / twenty-five to seven.
- It's It's six-thirty. / half past six.
- It's three minutes after six.
- It's It's six twenty. / twenty after six.

b 2 24 Listen and check.

> **Time**
> You can ask for the time in two different ways:
> *What time is it?* OR *What's the time?*
> For times that are not multiples of five we use *minutes*, e.g., 6:03 = It's three minutes after six.

c Cover the phrases. Ask and answer with a partner.

What time is it? / *It's...*

◀ p.26

2 EXPRESSIONS OF FREQUENCY

a Complete the expressions.

How often do you see your friends?

1	every /ˈɛvri/ *day*	M, T, W, Th, F, S, S
2	every w_____	week 1, week 2, week 3, etc.
3	every m_____	January, February, March, etc.
4	every y_____	2001, 2002, 2003, etc.
5	once /wʌns/ a _____	only on Mondays
6	twice /twaɪs/ a _____	on Mondays and Wednesdays
7	three times a _____	on Mondays, Wednesdays, and Fridays
8	four times a _____	in January, April, July, and October

b 2 46 Listen and check.

c Cover the left-hand column. Test yourself.

3 ADVERBS OF FREQUENCY

a Match sentences 1–6 with a–f. What do the highlighted words mean?

1 [ ] I always /ˈɔlweɪz/ get up at 7:00 during the week.
2 [a] I often /ˈɑfn/ go to the movies after work.
3 [ ] I usually /ˈyuʒəli/ finish work at 6:00.
4 [ ] I sometimes /ˈsʌmtaɪmz/ meet a friend for lunch.
5 [ ] I hardly ever /ˈhɑrdli ˈɛvər/ go to the theater.
6 [ ] I never /ˈnɛvər/ have coffee.

a About seven or eight times a month.
b I start work at 8:00 every day.
c But on Fridays we stop at 3:00.
d I don't like it.
e Only once or twice a year.
f About once or twice a month.

b 2 47 Listen and check.

> *normally*
> *Normally* is the same as *usually*. I normally get up early = I usually get up early.

c Cover sentences 1–6 and look at a–f. Can you remember the sentences?

d 2 48 Listen and repeat the highlighted adverbs of frequency.

◀ p.32

More verb phrases

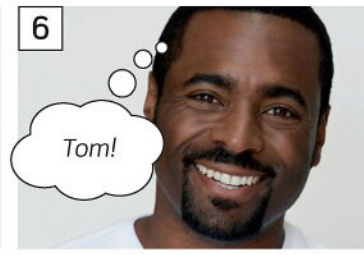
a Match the verbs and pictures.

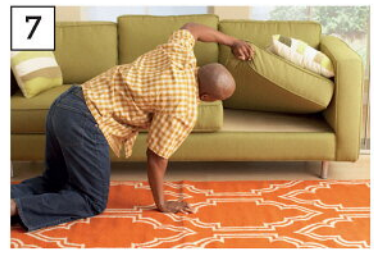
1 buy (*a ticket*) /baɪ/
- call (*your mom*) /kɔl/
- dance (*the tango*) /dæns/
- draw (*a picture*) /drɔ/
- drive (*a car*) /draɪv/
- find (*a parking space*) /faɪnd/
- forget (*somebody's name*) /fər'gɛt/
- give (*somebody flowers*) /gɪv/
- hear (*a noise*) /hɪr/
- help (*somebody*) /hɛlp/
- look for (*your keys*) /lʊk fɔr/
- meet (*for a coffee*) /mit/
- paint (*a picture*) /peɪnt/
- play (*chess*) /pleɪ/
- remember (*somebody's name*) /rɪ'mɛmbər/
- run (*a race*) /rʌn/
- see (*a movie*) /si/
- sing (*a song*) /sɪŋ/
- swim (*in the ocean*) /swɪm/
- take (*photos*) /teɪk/
- talk (*to your teacher*) /tɔk/
- tell (*somebody a secret*) /tɛl/
- use (*a computer*) /yuz/
- wait for (*a bus*) /weɪt fɔr/

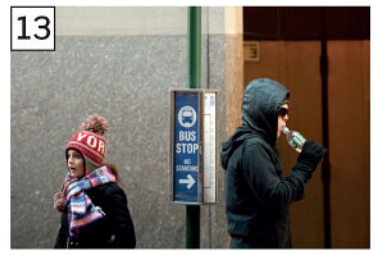
b 2 54 Listen and check.

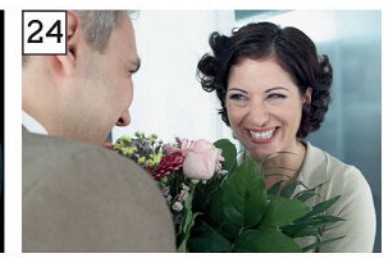
c Cover the verbs and look at the pictures. Test yourself or a partner.

◀ p.36







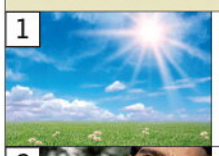
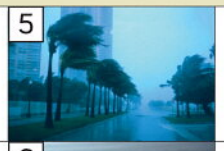
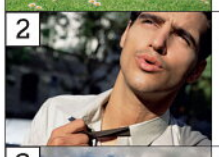
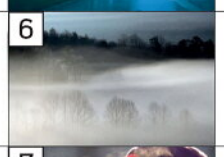
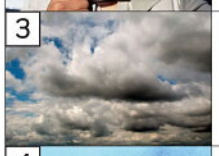
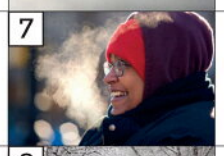
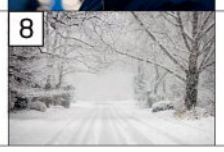


The weather and dates

1 THE WEATHER

a Complete the chart with words from the list.

cloudy /ˈklaʊdi/ hot /hɑt/ raining /ˈreɪnɪŋ/
cold /koʊld/ snowing /ˈsnoʊɪŋ/ windy /ˈwɪndi/
foggy /ˈfɑgi/ ~~sunny~~ /ˈsʌni/

What's the weather like?			
1 	It's *sunny*.	5 	It's _____.
2 	It's _____.	6 	It's _____.
3 	It's _____.	7 	It's _____.
4	It's _____.	8 	It's _____.

b 3 8 Listen and check.

Other adjectives for temperature
warm /wɔrm/ = a nice temperature, not very hot
(opposite = *cool* /kul/)

c Cover the chart and look at the pictures. Ask and answer with a partner.

What's the weather like? *It's sunny.*

The four seasons

d 3 9 Match the words and pictures. Listen and check.

spring /sprɪŋ/ fall /fɔl/
summer /ˈsʌmər/ winter /ˈwɪntər/

e What's the weather like today? What season is it where you are?

p.40

2 THE DATE

a Complete the months. Remember to use CAPITAL letters!

January __pril __uly __ctober
__ebruary __ay __ugust __ovember
__arch __une __eptember __ecember

b 3 29 Listen and check.

c Complete the numbers and words.

1st	first /fərst/
2nd	second /ˈsɛkənd/
3rd	third /θərd/
4th	fourth /fɔrθ/
5th	fifth /fɪfθ/
6th	_____ /sɪksθ/
7th	_____ /ˈsɛvnθ/
_____	eighth /eɪtθ/
_____	ninth /naɪnθ/
10th	_____ /tɛnθ/
11th	_____ /ɪˈlɛvənθ/
_____	twelfth /twɛlfθ/
13th	_____ /θərˈtinθ/
14th	_____ /fɔrˈtinθ/
_____	twentieth /ˈtwɛntiəθ/
21st	_____ /twɛnti ˈfərst/
_____	twenty-second /twɛnti ˈsɛkənd/
23rd	_____ /twɛnti ˈθərd/
_____	twenty-fourth /twɛnti ˈfɔrθ/
30th	_____ /ˈθərtiəθ/
_____	thirty-first /θərti ˈfərst/

d 3 30 Listen and check.

Writing and saying the date

We write	We say
March 12th	*March twelfth or **the** twelfth **of** March*
1/22	*January twenty-second or **the** twenty-second **of** January*

Prepositions with years, months, and dates
Use *in* + years, e.g., *The Rio Olympics are **in** 2016.*
Use *in* + months, e.g., *My birthday's **in** February.*
Use *on* + dates, e.g., *The meeting is **on** Friday, September 5th.*

Saying years
1807 eighteen "oh" seven
1936 nineteen thirty-six
2008 two thousand and eight (for years 2000–2010)
2011 two thousand and eleven OR twenty eleven

e What's the date today? What's the date tomorrow? What year is it?

p.46

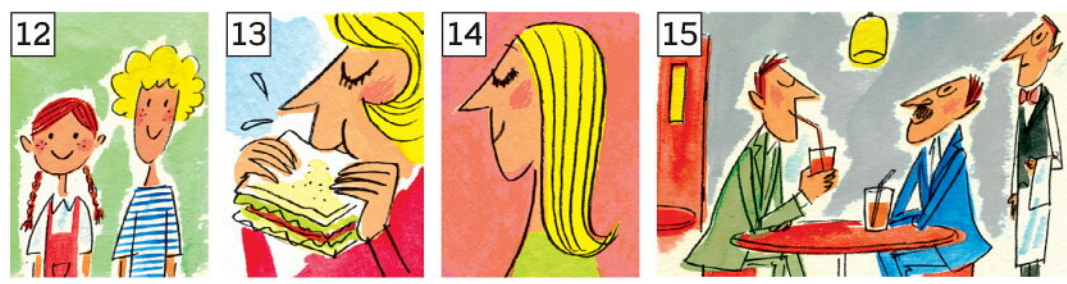
go, have, get

a Match the verbs and pictures.

- by bus / by car / by plane /bʌs/ /kɑr/ /pleɪn/
- 1 for a walk /wɔk/
- home (*from school*) /hoʊm/
- out (*on Friday night*) /aʊt/
- shopping /ˈʃɑpɪŋ/
- to a restaurant /ˈrɛstərɑnt/
- to bed (*late*) /bɛd/
- to church / to mosque / to temple /tʃərtʃ/ /mɑsk/ /ˈtɛmpl/
- to the beach /bitʃ/
- back (*to work*) /bæk/
- on vacation /veɪˈkeɪʃn/

- a car / a bike /kɑr/ /baɪk/
- long hair /lɔŋ ˈhɛr/
- breakfast / lunch / dinner /ˈbrɛkfəst/ /lʌntʃ/ /ˈdɪnər/
- a drink /drɪŋk/
- a good time /gʊd taɪm/
- a sandwich /ˈsændwɪtʃ/
- a sister / a brother /ˈsɪstər/ /ˈbrʌðər/

- a newspaper (= buy) /ˈnuzpeɪpər/
- a taxi / a bus / a train (= take) /ˈtæksi/ /bʌs/ /treɪn/
- an email / a letter (= receive) /ˈimeɪl/ /ˈlɛtər/
- dressed /drɛst/
- home (= arrive) /hoʊm/
- to the airport (= arrive) /ˈɛrpɔrt/
- up (*early*) /ʌp/



b 3 61 Listen and check.

c Cover the expressions and look at the pictures. Test yourself or a partner.

d Take turns saying three things you did yesterday and three you did last week with *went*, *had*, or *got*.

Yesterday, I got up early. I had breakfast in a cafe. I went shopping...

◀ p.57

The house

1 ROOMS

Match the words and pictures 1–9.

- a bathroom /ˈbæθrum/
- a bedroom /ˈbɛdrum/
- a dining room /ˈdaɪnɪŋ rum/
- a garage /gəˈrɑdʒ/
- a hall /hɔl/
- a kitchen /ˈkɪtʃən/
- a living room /ˈlɪvɪŋ rum/
- 1 a study / an office /ˈstʌdi/ /ˈɔfəs/
- a yard /yɑrd/

2 PARTS OF A ROOM

Match the words and pictures 10–14.

- a balcony /ˈbælkəni/
- the ceiling /ˈsilɪŋ/
- the floor /flɔr/
- the stairs /stɛrz/
- the wall /wɔl/

3 THINGS IN A ROOM

a Match the words and pictures 15–31.

- an armchair /ˈɑrmtʃɛr/
- a bathtub /ˈbæθtʌb/
- a bed /bɛd/
- a cupboard /ˈkʌbərd/
- a fireplace /ˈfaɪərpleɪs/
- a lamp /læmp/
- a light /laɪt/
- a mirror /ˈmɪrər/
- a plant /plænt/
- a refrigerator / a fridge /rɪˈfrɪdʒəreɪtər/ /frɪdʒ/
- a rug /rʌg/
- a shelf (shelves) /ʃɛlf/
- a shower /ˈʃaʊər/
- a sofa / a couch /ˈsoʊfə/ /kaʊtʃ/
- a stove /stoʊv/
- a toilet /ˈtɔɪlət/
- a washing machine /ˈwɑʃɪŋ məˈʃin/

Heat and central air conditioning
Heat is a system that makes a house warm, usually using an oil, gas, or electric furnace. Central air conditioning is a system that makes a house cool.

b 4 12 Listen and check **1–3**.

c Cover the words and look at the pictures. Test yourself or a partner.

◀ p.62

Prepositions: place and movement

1 PLACE

a Match the words and pictures.

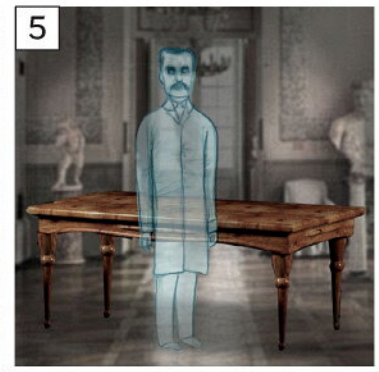
- in /ɪn/
- in front of /ɪn frʌnt əv/
- on /ɑn/
- under /ˈʌndər/
- 1 behind /bɪˈhaɪnd/
- between /bɪˈtwin/
- across from /əˈkrɔs frəm/
- next to /nɛkst tu/
- over /ˈoʊvər/

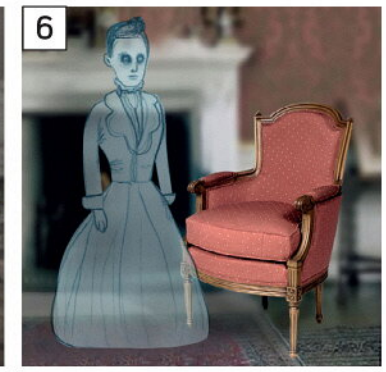
b 4 21 Listen and check.

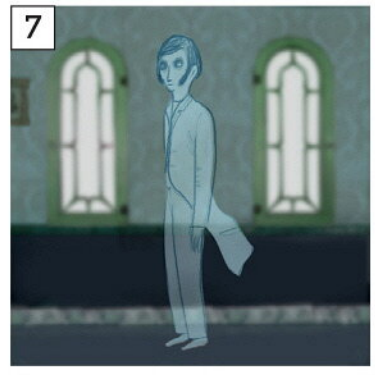
c In pairs, ask and answer about the pictures.

Where's the ghost?

It's under the bed.







2 MOVEMENT

a Match the words and pictures.

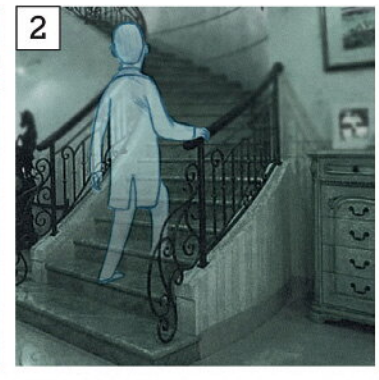
- from…to /frəm/ /tu/
- into /ˈɪntu/
- out of /ˈaʊt əv/
- up /ʌp/
- down /daʊn/
- 1 toward /tɔrd/

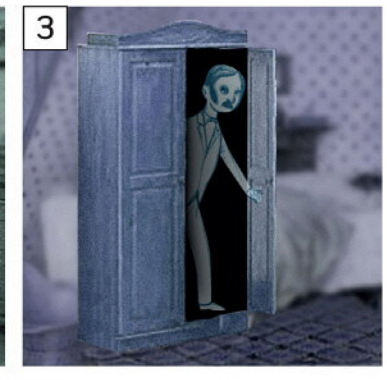
b 4 22 Listen and check.

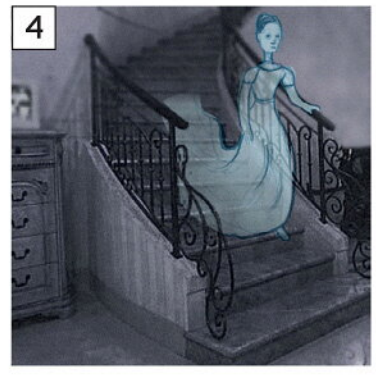
c In pairs, ask and answer about the pictures.

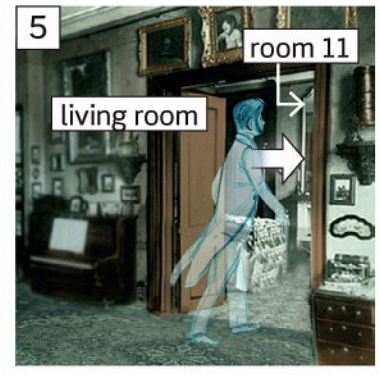
Where's the ghost going?

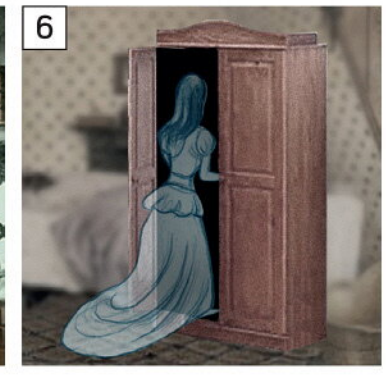
It's going from the living room to room 11





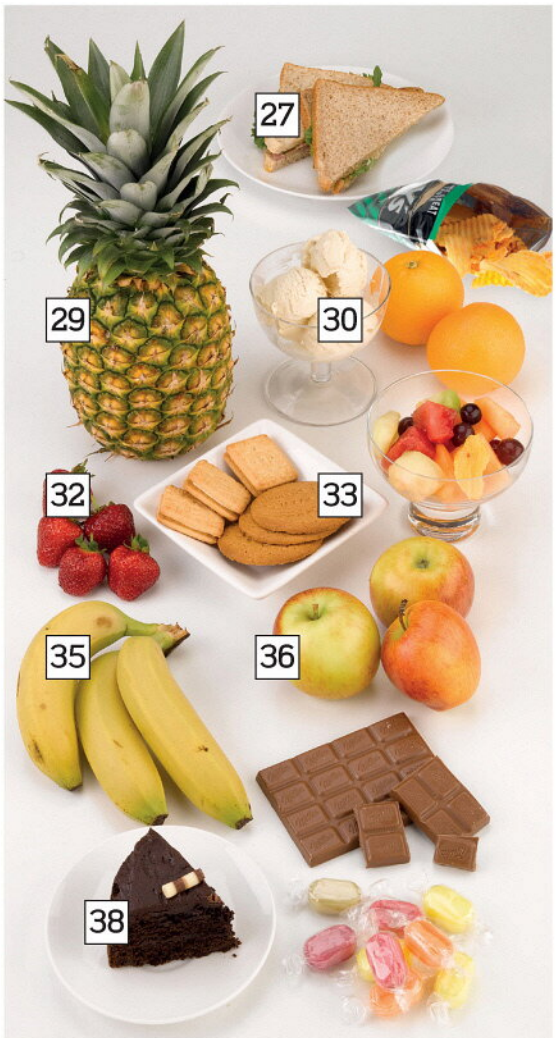






◀ p.65

Food



a Match the words and pictures.

Breakfast /ˈbrɛkfəst/

- bread /brɛd/
- butter /ˈbʌtər/
- cereal /ˈsɪriəl/
- cheese /tʃiz/
- coffee /ˈkɑfi/
- eggs /ɛgz/
- jam /dʒæm/
- (orange) juice /dʒus/
- milk /mɪlk/
- sugar /ˈʃʊgər/
- 1 tea /ti/
- toast /toʊst/

Lunch / dinner /lʌntʃ/ /ˈdɪnər/

- fish /fɪʃ/
- meat (steak, chicken, sausages) /mit/
- (olive) oil /ɔɪl/
- pasta /ˈpɑstə/
- rice /raɪs/
- salad /ˈsæləd/

Vegetables /ˈvɛdʒtəblz/

- carrots /ˈkærəts/
- French fries /frɛntʃ fraɪs/
- lettuce /ˈlɛtəs/
- mushrooms /ˈmʌʃrʊmz/
- onions /ˈʌnyənz/
- peas /piz/
- potatoes /pəˈteɪtoʊz/
- tomatoes /təˈmeɪtoʊz/

Fruit /frut/

- apples /ˈæplz/
- bananas /bəˈnænəz/
- oranges /ˈɔrɪndʒɪz/
- a pineapple /ˈpaɪnæpl/
- strawberries /ˈstrɔbɛriz/

Desserts /dɪˈzərts/

- cake /keɪk/
- fruit salad /frut ˈsæləd/
- ice cream /aɪs ˈkrim/

Snacks /snæks/

- candy /ˈkændi/
- chocolate /ˈtʃɑklət/
- cookies /ˈkʊkiz/
- potato chips /pəˈteɪtoʊ tʃɪps/
- sandwiches /ˈsændwɪtʃɪz/

b 4 29 Listen and check.

c Cover the words and look at the pictures. Test yourself or a partner.

◀ p.68

Places and buildings

a Match the words and pictures.

- an art gallery /ˈɑrt gæləri/
- a bridge /brɪdʒ/
- a bus station /ˈbʌs steɪʃn/
- a castle /ˈkæsl/
- a church /tʃərtʃ/
- a department store /dɪˈpɑrtmənt stɔr/
- a hospital /ˈhɑspɪtl/
- a market /ˈmɑrkət/
- a mosque /mɑsk/
- a museum /myuˈziəm/
- a parking lot /ˈpɑrkɪŋ lɑt/
- a pharmacy /ˈfɑrməsi/
- a police station /pəˈlis steɪʃn/
- a post office /ˈpoʊst ɑfəs/
- a river /ˈrɪvər/
- a road /roʊd/
- a shopping mall /ˈʃɑpɪŋ mɔl/
- a square /skwɛr/
- a street /strit/
- a supermarket /ˈsupərmɑrkət/
- a temple /ˈtɛmpl/
- a theater /ˈθɪətər/
- 1 a town hall /taʊn ˈhɔl/
- a train station /ˈtreɪn steɪʃn/

b 5 3 Listen and check.

c Cover the words and look at the pictures. Test yourself or a partner.

◀ p.76

Writing

5 58

Present	Simple past	Past participle
be /bi/	was /wəz/ were /wər/	been /bɪn/
become /bɪˈkʌm/	became /bɪˈkeɪm/	become
begin /bɪˈgɪn/	began /bɪˈgæn/	begun /bɪˈgʌn/
break /breɪk/	broke /broʊk/	broken /ˈbroʊkən/
bring /brɪŋ/	brought /brɔt/	brought
build /bɪld/	built /bɪlt/	built
buy /baɪ/	bought /bɔt/	bought
can /kæn/	could /kʊd/	—
catch /kætʃ/	caught /kɔt/	caught
come /kʌm/	came /keɪm/	come
cost /kɔst/	cost	cost
do /du/	did /dɪd/	done /dʌn/
drink /drɪŋk/	drank /dræŋk/	drunk /drʌŋk/
drive /draɪv/	drove /droʊv/	driven /ˈdrɪvn/
eat /it/	ate /eɪt/	eaten /ˈitn/
fall /fɔl/	fell /fɛl/	fallen /ˈfɔlən/
feel /fil/	felt /fɛlt/	felt
find /faɪnd/	found /faʊnd/	found
fly /flaɪ/	flew /flu/	flown /floʊn/
forget /fərˈgɛt/	forgot /fərˈgɑt/	forgotten /fərˈgɑtn/
get /gɛt/	got /gɑt/	got
give /gɪv/	gave /geɪv/	given /ˈgɪvn/
go /goʊ/	went /wɛnt/	gone /gɑn/
have /hæv/	had /hæd/	had
hear /hɪr/	heard /hərd/	heard
know /noʊ/	knew /nu/	known /noʊn/

Present	Simple past	Past participle
leave /liv/	left /lɛft/	left
lose /luz/	lost /lɔst/	lost
make /meɪk/	made /meɪd/	made
meet /mit/	met /mɛt/	met
pay /peɪ/	paid /peɪd/	paid
put /pʊt/	put	put
read /rid/	read /rɛd/	read /rɛd/
run /rʌn/	ran /ræn/	run
say /seɪ/	said /sɛd/	said
see /si/	saw /sɔ/	seen /sin/
send /sɛnd/	sent /sɛnt/	sent
sing /sɪŋ/	sang /sæŋ/	sung /sʌŋ/
sit /sɪt/	sat /sæt/	sat
sleep /slip/	slept /slɛpt/	slept
speak /spik/	spoke /spoʊk/	spoken /ˈspoʊkən/
spend /spɛnd/	spent /spɛnt/	spent
stand /stænd/	stood /stʊd/	stood
swim /swɪm/	swam /swæm/	swum /swʌm/
teach /titʃ/	taught /tɔt/	taught
take /teɪk/	took /tʊk/	taken /ˈteɪkən/
tell /tɛl/	told /toʊld/	told
think /θɪŋk/	thought /θɔt/	thought
understand /ʌndərˈstænd/	understood /ʌndərˈstʊd/	understood
wake /weɪk/	woke /woʊk/	woken /ˈwoʊkən/
wear /wɛr/	wore /wɔr/	worn /wɔrn/
win /wɪn/	won /wʌn/	won
write /raɪt/	wrote /roʊt/	written /ˈrɪtn/

Vowel sounds

	usual spelling	! but also
tree	**ee** meet three **ea** speak eat **e** me we	people police key niece
fish	**i** his this win six big swim	English women busy
ear	**eer** cheer engineer **ere** here we're **ear** year hear	
cat	**a** thanks dance black Japan have stamp	
egg	**e** yes help ten pet red very	friend bread breakfast any said
chair	**air** airport stairs fair hair **are** square careful	their there wear
clock	**o** hot stop doctor job not box	father watch want
saw	**al** talk walk **aw** saw draw	water wrong bought
horse	**or** sport door short	four board
boot	**oo** school food **u*** June use **ew** new flew	do fruit juice shoe

* especially before consonant + *e*

	usual spelling	! but also
bull	**u** full put **oo** good book look room	could would woman
tourist	A very unusual sound. euro Europe sure plural	
up	**u** bus lunch ugly run lucky cut	come brother son does young
computer	Many different spellings. /ə/ is always unstressed. umbrella America famous second ago	
bird	**er** her verb **ir** first third **ur** nurse turn	learn work world word
owl	**ou** out thousand house count **ow** how brown	
phone	**o*** home close old don't **oa** road toast	slow low
car	**ar** are party start far	
train	**a*** name make **ai** rain paint **ay** play day gray	break steak great eight they
boy	**oi** coin noise toilet **oy** toy enjoy	
bike	**i*** nine twice **y** my why **igh** high night	buy

vowels vowels followed by /r/ diphthongs

Consonant sounds

	usual spelling		! but also
p parrot	**p**	paper pilot Portuguese sleep	
	pp	apple happy	
b bag	**b**	be table job builder number	
	bb	rubber	
k key	**c**	credit card actor	architect
	k	kitchen like	
	ck	black back	
g girl	**g**	green get angry big	
	gg	eggs bigger	
f flower	**f**	Friday fifteen wife	
	ph	photo elephant	
	ff	office coffee	
v vase	**v**	very eleven live travel river love	of
t tie	**t**	tea take student sit	liked dressed
	tt	letter bottle	
d dog	**d**	dance understand bad read	played tired
	dd	address middle	
s snake	**s**	sister stops	nice city
	ss	stress actress	police
z zebra	**z**	zero Brazil	
	s	music please dogs watches	
ʃ shower	**sh**	shopping shoes Spanish fish	sugar sure
	ti (+ **vowel**)	station information	
ʒ television	**si** (+**on**)	decision confusion	usually garage

	usual spelling		! but also
θ thumb	**th**	think thirty throw bathroom fourth tenth	
ð mother	**th**	the these then other that with	
tʃ chess	**ch**	cheap children church	
	tch	watch match	
	t (+**ure**)	picture adventure	
dʒ jazz	**j**	January juice July enjoy	German manager
	dge	bridge fridge	
l leg	**l**	like little plane girl	
	ll	small spelling	
r right	**r**	red rich problem try	write wrong
	rr	sorry terrible	
w witch	**w**	window twenty Wednesday win	one once
	wh	why when	
y yacht	**y**	yellow yesterday young yes	
	before **u**	use university music	
m monkey	**m**	man Monday money swim	
	mm	summer swimming	
n nose	**n**	no never nine ran	know
	nn	dinner thinner	
ŋ singer	**ng**	song England language thing long going	think bank
h house	**h**	happy hungry hotel behind hall head	who whose

voiced unvoiced

OXFORD
UNIVERSITY PRESS

198 Madison Avenue
New York, NY 10016 USA

Great Clarendon Street, Oxford, OX2 6DP,
United Kingdom

Oxford University Press is a department of the University of Oxford. It furthers the University's objective of excellence in research, scholarship, and education by publishing worldwide. Oxford is a registered trade mark of Oxford University Press in the UK and in certain other countries

© Oxford University Press 2013

The moral rights of the author have
been asserted

First published in 2013

2017 2016 2015 2014 2013
10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

No unauthorized photocopying

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, without the prior permission in writing of Oxford University Press, or as expressly permitted by law, by licence or under terms agreed with the appropriate reprographics rights organization. Enquiries concerning reproduction outside the scope of the above should be sent to the ELT Rights Department, Oxford University Press, at the address above

You must not circulate this work in any other form and you must impose this same condition on any acquirer

Links to third party websites are provided by Oxford in good faith and for information only. Oxford disclaims any responsibility for the materials contained in any third party website referenced in this work

General Manager: Laura Pearson
Executive Publishing Manager: Erik Gundersen
Senior Managing Editor: Louisa van Houten
Associate Editor: Yasuko Morisaki
Associate Editor: Hana Yoo
Design Director: Susan Sanguily
Executive Design Manager: Maj-Britt Hagsted
Associate Design Manager: Michael Steinhofer
Senior Designer: Yin Ling Wong
Electronic Production Manager: Julie Armstrong
Production Artists: Elissa Santos,
Julie Sussman-Perez
Image Manager: Trisha Masterson
Image Editors: Liaht Pashayan, Joe Kassner
Production Coordinator: Brad Tucker

ISBN: 978 0 19 477623 3
MULTI-PACK B (PACK)

ISBN: 978 0 19 477587 8
STUDENT BOOK/WORKBOOK B (PACK COMPONENT)

ISBN: 978 0 19 477670 7
ICHECKER CD-ROM (PACK COMPONENT)

Printed in China

This book is printed on paper from certified and well-managed sources

STUDENT BOOK ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

Cover Design: Yin Ling Wong

The authors and publisher are grateful to those who have given permission to reproduce the following extracts and adaptations of copyright material:

Illustrations by: Cover: Chellie Carroll; Peter Bull Studios: p.10, 58, 90, 103, 149; Annelie Carlstrom/AgencyRush: p.100; Echo Chernik/Illustration Ltd: p.80 - 81; Jonathan Burton: p.65, 66, 161, 162; Mark Duffin: p.17, 68; Dermot Flynn: p.8, 47, 95, 102, 107; Alex Green/Folio Art: p.62; Atushi Hara/Dutch Uncle agency: pp.4, 5, 55, 126, 127, 133, 134, 135, 142, 143, 156, 160; Satoshi Hashimoto/Dutch Uncle Agency: p. 131, 140, 141, 147, 150; Sophie Joyce: p.7, 12, 13, 70; Tim Marrs: pp.6, 72, 87; Jerome Mireault/Colagene: p.16 - 17; Gaku Nakagawa/Dutch Uncle Agency: p.38; Gavin Reece: p.45; James Taylor/Debut Art: pp.22. Pronunciation chart artwork: by Ellis Nadler

We would also like to thank the following for permission to reproduce the following photographs: Cover: Gemenacom/shutterstock.com; Andrey_Popov/shutterstock.com; Wavebreakmedia/shutterstock.com; Image Source/Getty Images; Lane Oatey/Blue Jean Images/Getty Images; BJI/Blue Jean Images/Getty Images; Image Source/Corbis; Yuri Arcurs/Tetra Images/Corbis; Wavebreak Media Ltd./Corbis; p6 Graphi-Ogre/Oxford University Press; p7 Frederic Lucano/Getty Images (woman); p7 Nick Dolding/Getty Images (couple); p7 Blend Images/Alamy (man); p9 Leigh Schindler/Getty Images (man); p9 Lucas Lenci/Corbis UK Ltd. (woman); p12 RDNL.Courtesy of The Roald Dahl Museum/The Roald Dahl Museum and Story Centre (Roald Dahl); p12 MM Studios (books); p12 Eamonn McCabe/Eamonn McCabe - photographer (armchair); p14 Graphi-Ogre/Oxford University Press (iran); p14 Cameron Davidson/Corbis UK Ltd. (liberty); p14 Richard Michael Pruitt/Dallas/Alamy (airplane); p14 Jean-Pierre Lescourret/Corbis UK Ltd. (Empire State); p14 Corbis/Oxford University Press (sky); p14 D.Hurst/Alamy (baloon); p14 James and James/Photodsic/Getty Images (cheeseburger); p14 Photodisc/Oxford University Press (WhiteHouse); p14 Design Pics Inc/Photolibrary Group (lockers); p14 ignazuri/Alamy (jeans); p14 Buena Vista Images/Getty Images (taxi); p15 WireImage/Getty Images (Depp); p15 Alberto E.Rodriguez/Getty Images (Cruz); p17 Dimitrios Kaisaris/Shutterstock; p19 Image Farm/Oxford University Press (American); p19 EyeWire/Oxford University Press (British); p20 Richard Broadwell/Alamy; p21 EtiAmmos/Shutterstock (background); p21 Tim Boyle/Getty Images (car); p21 Gary Saxe/Shutterstock (tree); p21 Jon Hicks/Corbis UK Ltd. (traffic); p21 Alamy (burger); p21 VisionsofAmerica/Joe Sohm/Getty Images (rollercoaster); p22 Clarence Holmes Photography/Alamy (police car); p22 Geraint Lewis/Alamy (taxi); p23 Cultura/Photolibrary Group (pharmacist); p23 Ron Levine/Getty Images (girl); p25 Mika/Corbis UK Ltd.; p28 Larry Busacca/Getty Images (Bieber); p28 AFP/Getty Images (wristband); p28 Hubert Boesl/dpa/Corbis UK Ltd. (bowtie); p28 Corbis UK Ltd. (unicef); p28 Sipa Press/Rex Features (sunglasses); p28 Larry Busacca/Getty Images (tie); p29 Sipa Press/Rex Features (Bruni); p29 AFP/Getty Images (Clooney); p29 Hubert Boesl/dpa/Corbis UK Ltd. (Nicholson); p29 Corbis UK Ltd. (Messi); p29 moodboard/Alamy (man purple shirt); p29 Bloomberg via Getty Images/Getty Images (iphone a); p29 Corbis Bridge/Alamy (family); p29 Bloomberg via Getty Images/Getty Images (iphone b); p30 Oxford University Press (man); p30 Glow Images/Photolibrary Group (girl); p31 Image Source/Photolibrary Group (basketball); p31 Oxford University Press (chef); p32 Peter Cade/Getty Images; p33 Chris Willson/Alamy (boat); p33 John Warburton-Lee Photography/Alamy (lake); p33 CuboImages srl/Alamy (woman); p35 luchschen/Shutterstock (pizza); p35 Drive Images/Alamy (truck); p37 Brian Ach/WireImage for Clear Channel/Getty Images (Kelly); p37 Startraks Photo/Rex Features (Lee); p37 pdesign/Shutterstock (silhouette); p37 Startraks Photo/Rex Features (Carrie); p37 Arnold Turner/WireImage for BET Network/Getty Images (Ruben); p39 Patrick Syww/Alamy; p40 Alan Schmidt/iStockphoto; p41 P.Spiro/Alamy (ice skating); p41 iStockphoto/Thinkstock (columns); p41 Richard Green/Alamy (walkway); p41 Hemis/Corbis UK Ltd. (skyline); p42 D.Hurst/Alamy (jeans); p42 Jonathan Kantor/Lifesize/Getty Images (denim shirt); p42 Thomas Northcut/Photodisc/Getty Images (shoes); p42 Leonid Nyshko/Alamy (jacket); p42 Jonathan Kantor/Lifesize/Getty Images (grey trousers); p42 Tom Schierlitz/Getty Images (t-shirt); p42 Howard Shooter/Getty Images (skirt); p43 D.Hurst/Alamy (jeans); p43 Tom Schierlitz/Getty Images (t-shirt); p43 Tom Schierlitz/Getty Images (jacket); p46 Barry Lewis/In Pictures/Corbis UK Ltd.; p47 Tig Photo/Alamy (asparagus); p47 National Geographic Image Collection/Alamy (fireworks); p47 Design Pics Inc/Photolibrary Group (autumn); p48 Jonathan Kitchen/Photodisc/Getty Images (guitar); p48 Fernando Aceves/epa/Corbis UK Ltd. (Domingo); p48 Stockbyte/Getty Images (drum); p48 Popperfoto/Getty Images (Armstrong); p48 James Palmer/Retna Ltd./Corbis UK Ltd. (beyonce); p48 Dorling Kindersley/Getty Images (violin); p49 Sigi Tischler/epa/Corbis UK Ltd. (conductor); p49 Jennifer Taylor/Corbis UK Ltd. (orchestra); p51 Michael Blann/Getty Images; p52 Nat. Portrait Gall. Smithsonian/Art Resource/Photo Scala, Florence; p53 Bruce Davidson/Magnum Photos (Supremes); p53 Nat. Portrait Gall. Smithsonian/Art Resource/Photo Scala, Florence (Edison); p53 Nat. Portrait Gall. Smithsonian/Art Resource/Photo Scala, Florence (Marilyn); p54 Trinity Mirror/Alamy (house); p54 Dave Thompson/Getty Images (women); p54 Neil Tingle/Alamy (stadium); p56 Stockbyte/Getty Images (sunset); p56 Greg Allen/Rex Features (actors); p56 Justin Lane/epa/Corbis UK Ltd. (fans); p56 David Osuna/Demotix/Corbis UK Ltd (fans); p57 Radius Images/Photolibrary Group; p60 Westend61 GmbH/Alamy (woman); p60 Jason Hetherington/Getty Images (man); p60 Brownstock/Alamy (red book); p60/61 Philippa Lewis/Edifice/Arcaid/Corbis UK Ltd. (house); p60/61 Eric van den Brulle/Getty Images (open book); p61 Robert Recker/Corbis UK Ltd. (old woman); p61 Image Source/Photolibrary Group (young woman); p61 Awilli/Corbis UK Ltd. (man); p62 Philippa Lewis/Edifice/Arcaid/Corbis UK Ltd.; p64 John Robertson/Alamy (background); p64 John Robertson/Alamy (solid); p65 Comlongon Castle (female ghost); p65 Gosforth Hall Hotel (male ghost); p65 Gosforth Hall Hotel (bed); p67 Hulton-Deutsch Collection/Corbis UK Ltd.; p68 Todd Williamson/WireImage/Getty Images (Jennifer); p68 Noel Vasquez/Getty Images for Extra/Getty Images (Selita); p68 Martin Roe ./Retna Ltd./Corbi/Corbis UK Ltd. (Nacho); p69 Brownstock/Alamy (strawberry); p69 Michael Blann/Digital Vision/Getty Images (tomato); p69 Glow Asia/Photolibrary Group (chopsticks); p69 mediablitzimages (uk) Limited/Alamy (cookies); p69 Masterfile UK Ltd. (onion); p71 Stockbyte/Getty Images (scales); p71 Photocuisine/Masterfile UK Ltd. (sugar); p73 Ben Hider/Getty Images (Ken); p73 Sony Pictures Film Clips (Jeopardy); p73 c.20thC.Fox/Everett/Rex Features (Smarter); p73 c.ABC Inc/Everett/Rex Features (Millionaire); p76 Iain Masterton/Alamy (Mona Lisa); p76 Paulo Ferreira/Getty Images (bridge); p76 Sergio Ballivian/Getty Images (mountain); p76 Victor Fraile/Corbis UK Ltd. (Tiananmen); p76 Chad Ehlers/Getty Images (Buenos Aires); p76 Robert Holmes/Corbis UK Ltd. (station); p77 Travelscape Images/Alamy; p78 NetPhotos/Alamy (coach); p78 GlowImages/Alamy (map); p78 ImageState/Alamy (coach); p79 Iria Gonzalez-Liaño (woman); p79 SNEHIT/Shutterstock (desert); p79 Zooid Pictures (safa); p83 Eye Ubiquitous/Rex Features; p84 Visions LLC/Photolibrary Group (Atlanta); p84 Birger Lallo/Nordic Photos/Photolibrary Group (malmo); p84 Lonely Planet Images/Alamy (Valencia);

p84 Westend61/Getty Images (woman); p84 Photodisc/Oxford University Press (man); p85 Kevin Foy/Alamy; p86 GLOW ASIA/Oxford University Press (woman); p86 Digital Vision/Oxford University Press (manga); p86 Radius Images/Oxford University Press (man); p86 Photodisc/Oxford University Press (silhouette); p86 Digital Vision/Oxford University Press (illustration); p88 Ian Dagnall/Alamy (google); p88 Ian Dagnall/Alamy (itunes); p88 CBS News (CBS); p88 NetPics/Alamy (amazon); p88 zetastock/Alamy (twitter); p88 StfW/Alamy (flickr); p88 NetPhotos/Alamy (slim secrets); p88 pixelbully/Alamy (barclays); p88 Ian Dagnall/Alamy (facebook); p88 Ian Dagnall/Alamy (warcraft); p88 Ian Dagnall/Alamy (google maps); p89 David Malan/Getty Images; p92 New Line/Kobal Collection (Lord of the Rings); p92 c.W.Disney/Everett/Rex Features (Alice in Wonderland); p92 Moviestore/Rex Features (Hunger Games); p92 Moviestore Collection Ltd. (Twilight); p93 Corbis UK Ltd.; p94 Digital Vision/Getty Images; p96 Moviestore Collection Ltd./Alamy (x-men); p96 Moviestore Collection Ltd./Alamy (Gods and Monsters); p96 WireImage/Getty Images (McKellan); p96/97 Ronald Grant Archive; p97 Moviestore collection Ltd/Alamy; p99 Andersen Ross/Stockbyte/Getty Images (waitress); p99 Andersen Ross/Getty Images (waiter); p100 MARKA/Alamy (Law); p100 Frederick M. Brown/Getty Images (Turner); p100 Larry Busacca/Getty Images For The Recording Academy/Getty Images (Eminem); p100 Allstar Photo Library/Alamy (Johansson); p100 John A. Angelillo/Corbis UK Ltd. (Hanks); p100 Startraks Photo/Rex Features (Marc Anthony); p100 Ron Sachs/CNP/Corbis UK Ltd. (Jolie); p100 Jared Milgrim/Corbis UK Ltd. (Perry); p100 Image Source/Photolibrary Group (Masako); p100 ableimages/Alamy (Carlo); p100 Dorota Szpil/Alamy (woman); p100 Adrian Muttitt/Alamy (Ali); p100 David Young-Wolff/Alamy (Antonia); p100 i love images/Alamy (Oliver); p103 Britain on View/Photolibrary Group; p104 Ballygally Castle; p106 John A. Angelillo/Corbis UK Ltd. (Hanks); p106 Startraks Photo/Rex Features (Marc Anthony); p106 Ron Sachs/CNP/Corbis UK Ltd. (Jolie); p106 Jared Milgrim/Corbis UK Ltd. (Perry); p106 MARKA/Alamy (Law); p106 Frederick M. Brown/Getty Images (Turner); p106 Larry Busacca/Getty Images For The Recording Academy/Getty Images (Eminem); p106 Allstar Photo Library/Alamy (Johansson); p106 Image Source/Photolibrary Group (masako); p106 ableimages/Alamy (Carlo); p106 Dorota Szpil/Alamy (woman); p106 Adrian Muttitt/Alamy (Ali); p106 David Young-Wolff/Alamy (Antonia); p106 i love images/Alamy (Oliver); p109 Ballygally Castle; p111 Westend61/Corbis UK Ltd.; p112 Fancy/Oxford University Press; p113 CountryCollection - Homer Sykes/Alamy (cricket); p113 Mark A.Johnson/Alamy (Niagara); p113 Keren Su/Getty Images (train); p113 PhotoStock-Israel/Alamy (Fountain); p113 Alexander Hubrich/Corbis UK Ltd. (volleyball); p114 Camilo Morales/Glowimages/Corb/Corbis UK Ltd; p115 Andre Jenny/Alamy; p151 Chimpinski/Shutterstock (coin); p151 Photographers Direct/Lana Sundman Photography (ID); p151 Martin Shields/Alamy (paper); p151 Richard Heyes/Alamy (folder); p151 David Alberto Reyes/Oxford University Press (dictionary); p151 B.A.E. Inc./Alamy (stamps); p151 contact Photographers Direct/Marco Simola (ticket); p151 Digifoto Sapphire/Alamy (diary); p151 L A Heusinkveld/Alamy (wallet); p151 PhotoAlto/Alamy (tissue); p151 Creatas/JupiterImages (photo); p151 D. Hurst/Alamy (ipod); p152 Catchlight Visual Services/Alamy (women); p152 BE&W agencja fotograficzna Sp. z/Alamy (couple); p152 Photo and Co/Getty Images (grandmother); p152 Patrik Giardino/Corbis UK Ltd. (basketball); p152 Elena Korenbaum/Vetta/Getty Images (dog); p152 Stephen Frink Collection/Alamy (shark); p152 Craig Holmes Premium/Alamy (boy); p152 incamerastock/Alamy (maths); p152 Colin Anderson/Getty Images (car); p152 Stefano Politi Markovina/Alamy (signpost); p152 Photodisc/Alamy (dumbbell); p152 Motofish Images/Corbis UK Ltd. (tv); p152 Mario Colonel/Getty Images (climbers); p152 James Noble/Corbis UK Ltd. (ring); p152 R. Andrew Odum/Peter Arnold Images/Photolibrary Group (snake); p152 Jamie Grill/Corbis UK Ltd. (money); p152 Leigh Prather/Alamy (coffee); p152 Mode Images Limited/Alamy (box); p152 Mike Hill/Alamy (elephant); p152 Vincent Besnault/Getty Images (devil); p153 UpperCut Images/Alamy (sofa); p153 Corbis/Photolibrary Group (TV); p153 Kactus/Getty Images (radio); p153 David J Spurdens/Digital Vision/Getty Images (tennis); p153 Chris Ryan/OJO Images/Getty Images (umbrella); p153 Jupiterimages/Getty Images (homework); p153 Newton Daly/Getty Images (guitar); p153 Cheyenne Glasgow/Getty Images (flower); p153 Westend61/Photolibrary Group (snake); p153 Max Wanger/Corbis UK Ltd. (burger); p153 Karina Mansfield/Getty Images (cooking); p153 Image Source/Photolibrary Group (office woman); p153 Jetta Productions/Walter Hodges/Blend/Corbis UK Ltd. (yoga); p153 Fyza Hashim/Getty Images (smiling); p153 TongRo Images/JupiterImages (children); p153 moodboard/Alamy (woman files); p153 Image Source/Photolibrary Group (german); p153 Cultura Creative/Alamy (man car); p153 izmostock/Alamy (Car); p153 Moxie Productions/Blend Images/Corbis UK Ltd. (newspaper); p153 Dan Tardif/LWA/Corbis UK Ltd. (dogs); p153 Image100/Photolibrary Group (queue); p154 Tetra Images/Photolibrary Group (architect); p154 imac/Alamy (reporter); p154 Monty Rakusen/cultura/Corbis UK Ltd. (factory worker); p154 Ron Chapple/Getty Images (lawyer); p154 AhmadFaizal Yahya/Alamy (footballer); p154 Stephen Hoeck/Getty Images (businessman); p154 Ace Stock Limited/Alamy (retailer); p154 Stefan Gosatti/Getty Images (model); p154 Ariel Skelley/Getty Images (doctor); p154 Tim Pannell/Corbis UK Ltd. (musician); p154 Frank Gaglione/Stockbyte/Getty Images (hairdresser); p154 David Young-Wolff/Alamy (businesswoman); p154 Corbis/Oxford University Press (waiter); p154 AAGAMIA/Iconica/Getty Images (pilot); p154 Image100/Photolibrary Group (stewardess); p154 David Grossman/Alamy (policewoman); p154 ACE STOCK LTD/Alamy (receptionist); p154 Taxi/Getty Images (teacher); p154 Malcolm MacGregor/Getty Images (vet); p154 Tetra Images/Alamy (dentist); p154 Custom Medical Stock Photo/Alamy (nurse); p154 Comstock/Oxford University Press (builder); p154 Tetra Images/Oxford University Press (chef); p154 Andrew Brookes/Corbis UK Ltd. (engineer); p154 Garry Wade/Photodisc/Getty Images (soldier); p155 Robert Recker/Corbis UK Ltd. (Richard); p155 Robert Recker/Corbis UK Ltd. (Richard/wife); p155 Bernd Vogel/Corbis UK Ltd. (Carol/Gary); p155 Robert Recker/Corbis UK Ltd. (Steven); p155 Robert Recker/Corbis UK Ltd. (Sarah); p155 Annie Engel/Corbis UK Ltd. (chocolate); p155 Robert Recker/Corbis UK Ltd. (Kate/Christopher); p155 Christopher Weidlich/Corbis UK Ltd. (Sue/Nick); p155 Rick Chapman/Corbis UK Ltd. (Jennifer/John); p155 Robert Recker/Corbis UK Ltd. (Kate); p155 Robert Recker/Corbis UK Ltd. (yawn); p155 Bernd Vogel/Corbis UK Ltd. (Oliver); p155 Robert Recker/Corbis UK Ltd. (sister/Jake); p157 musk/Alamy (silver1); p157 Mark Harwood/Getty Images (grey2); p157 Corbis/Photolibrary Group (blue3); p157 Mark Harwood/Getty Images (grey4); p157 Corbis/Photolibrary Group (blue5); p157 musk/Alamy (silver6); p157 Corbis/Photolibrary Group (blue7); p157 musk/Alamy (silver8); p157 Mark Harwood/Getty Images (grey9); p158 Sami Sarkis/Alamy (ticket); p158 Blend Images/Alamy (college); p158 Jim Naughten/Corbis UK Ltd. (dancing); p158 Image Source/Oxford University Press (couple); p158 DON EMMERT/AFP/Getty Images (busstop); p158 Imagebroker.net/Photolibrary Group (chess); p158 Image Source/Photolibrary Group (ear); p158 Frank and Helena/Cultura/Corbis UK Ltd. (swimming); p158 Mark Romanelli/Getty Images (painting); p158 JLP/Jose L. Pelaez/Corbis UK Ltd. (running); p158 Oliver Rossi/Getty Images (camera); p158 Tara Moore/Getty Images (getting up); p158 Tim Boyle/Getty Images (carpark); p158 Corbis UK Ltd. (whispering); p158 Image Source/Alamy (singing); p158 Fancy/Photolibrary Group (flowers); p158 White/Oxford University Press (boy mobile); p158 Photodisc/Oxford University Press (woman mobile); p158 Shepic/Alamy (drawing); p158 Fancy/Photolibrary Group (man thinking); p158 Fancy/Photolibrary Group (man smiling); p158 Randy Faris/Corbis UK Ltd. (sofa); p158 sot/Digital Vision/Getty Images (computer); p158 Blend Images/Photolibrary Group (driving); p159 Paolo Gislimberti/Alamy (ice); p159 redbrickstock.com/Alamy (sun(b)); p159 Organics Image Library/Alamy (flowers); p159 Jon Arnold Images Ltd/Alamy (leaves); p159 Katrina Brown/Oxford University Press (sun(a)); p159 White/Photolibrary Group (tie); p159 HAWKEYE/Alamy (clouds); p159 Robert Dowling/Corbis UK Ltd. (rain); p159 Stockbyte/Oxford University Press (windy); p159 Gary W. Carter/Corbis UK Ltd. (fog); p159 Enigma/Alamy (hat); p159 David Sacks/Getty Images (snow); p163 Nordling/Shutterstock; p164 Andre Jenny/Alamy (town hall); p164 philipus/Alamy (carpark); p164 Allister Clark/Alamy (street); p164 Digital Vision/Oxford University Press (road); p164 Photographer's Choice/Oxford University Press (basket); p164 ephotocorp/Alamy (temple); p164 Motoring Picture Library/Alamy (bridge); p164 John Guillemin/Bloomberg/Getty Images (ambulance); p164 dk/Alamy (river); p164 BananaStock/Oxford University Press (dinosaur); p164 Kirsty McLaren/Alamy (theatre); p164 David L. Moore/Alamy (pharmacy); p164 Patrick Batchelder/Alamy (gallery); p164 incamerastock/Alamy (church); p164 Homer Sykes/Alamy (market); p164 BL Images Ltd/Alamy (castle); p164 incamerastock/Alamy (train station); p164 Sipa Press/Rex Features (bus); p164 image100/Alamy (post office); p164 Wiskerke/Alamy (mall); p164 AA World Travel Library/Alamy (police station); p164 Peter Crome/Alamy (Paternoster); p164 Paul Doyle/Alamy (mosque); p164 Robert Stainforth/Alamy (shop).

Practical English DVD: photography by: Richard Hutchings

Stills photography by: Rob Judges: pp.10, 11, 26, 42, 43, 58, 59, 74, 75, 90, 91